



2014

# Pine Commodity- based Survey Reference

## CAPS

Cooperative Agricultural Pest Survey



On the cover: Loblolly pine (*Pinus palustris*) in Randolph County, Alabama. The image was modified from a photograph taken by David Stephens. This photograph was provided by Forestry Images ([www.forestryimages.org](http://www.forestryimages.org)).

Edited by: R.C. Venette  
Northern Research Station, USDA Forest Service, St. Paul, MN

The authors gratefully acknowledge partial funding provided by USDA Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service, Plant Protection and Quarantine, Center for Plant Health Science and Technology. Contributing authors E.M. Albrecht, E.E. Davis, and A.J. Walter are with the Department of Entomology, University of Minnesota, St. Paul, MN.

## Table of Contents

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Draft Log .....                              | 2          |
| Introduction .....                           | 3          |
| <b>ARTHROPODS: BEETLES.....</b>              | <b>6</b>   |
| <i>Chlorophorus strobilicola</i> .....       | 7          |
| <i>Dendroctonus micans</i> .....             | 14         |
| <i>Hylobius abietis</i> .....                | 26         |
| <i>Ips subelongatus</i> .....                | 41         |
| <i>Monochamus alternatus</i> .....           | 50         |
| <i>Monochamus saltuarius</i> .....           | 62         |
| <i>Monochamus sutor</i> .....                | 71         |
| <i>Orthotomicus erosus</i> .....             | 79         |
| <i>Tetropium fuscum</i> .....                | 91         |
| <i>Tomicus destruens</i> .....               | 101        |
| <b>ARTHROPODS: MOTHS .....</b>               | <b>113</b> |
| <i>Dendrolimus pini</i> .....                | 114        |
| <i>Dendrolimus punctatus</i> .....           | 124        |
| <i>Dendrolimus sibiricus</i> .....           | 133        |
| <i>Dendrolimus superans</i> .....            | 134        |
| <i>Lymantria mathura</i> .....               | 135        |
| <i>Panolis flammea</i> .....                 | 140        |
| <b>ARTHROPODS: SAWFLIES.....</b>             | <b>150</b> |
| <i>Diprion pini</i> .....                    | 151        |
| <b>FUNGI.....</b>                            | <b>162</b> |
| <i>Cronartium flaccidum</i> .....            | 163        |
| <i>Leptographium truncatum</i> .....         | 178        |
| <i>Mycosphaerella gibsonii</i> .....         | 190        |
| <i>Phellinus noxius</i> .....                | 199        |
| <b>PHYTOPLASMAS .....</b>                    | <b>212</b> |
| ‘ <i>Candidatus Phytoplasma pini</i> ’ ..... | 213        |

## Draft Log

July 2010:

- 1) Addition of CAPS-Approved Method for Survey and Key Diagnostics for all pests from the CAPS Approved Methods table (Appendix M in CAPS National Survey Guidelines).
- 2) Updated information in “Reason for Inclusion” and “Easily Confused Pests” sections from information listed in Appendix M.
- 3) Addition of *Mycosphaerella gibsonii* (Needle blight of pine), a pest on the FY2011 AHP Prioritized Pest List.
- 4) Addition of most current host/risk maps.

February 2011:

- 1) Addition of *Cronartium flaccidum* (Scots pine blister rust), a pest on the FY2011 AHP Prioritized Pest List.

March 2012:

- 1) Addition of datasheets for *Dendrolimus punctatus* and *Panolis flammea*.
- 2) Updated available maps and survey information.
- 3) Addition of *Dendrolimus sibiricus* datasheet placeholder. Datasheet is under development.
- 4) Addition of *Diprion pini* datasheet placeholder. An attractant is not available at this time for *D. pini*.
- 5) Removal of datasheet for *Dendrolimus superans*. An attractant is not available at this time for *Dendrolimus superans*. *Dendrolimus superans* should not be listed as a survey target for 2012 or 2013.
- 6) 2012 version posted to the CAPS Resource and Collaboration website.

October 2012:

- 1) Removal of datasheet for *Hylurgops palliatus*. It is present in four states. It has been added to the 2013 Additional Pests of Concern List.
- 2) Removal of datasheet for *Hylurgus ligniperda*. In 2012, PPQ and the National Plant Board concurred on deregulating *Hylurgus ligniperda*.
- 3) Removal of datasheet for *Sirex noctilio*. It is present in several states and is no longer a PPQ Program Pest.
- 4) Removal of datasheet for *Urocercus gigas gigas*.

August 2013:

- 1) Addition of *Diprion pini* datasheet. An attractant is now available for *D. pini*. *Diprion pini* may be included as a survey target for 2013.
- 2) Addition of ‘*Candidatus Phytoplasma pini*’ datasheet, a pest on the FY2014 AHP Prioritized Pest List.

2010-2013 Revisions by Talitha Molet, USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST

August, 2016: Removed outdated maps (Dan Mackesy, PPQ-CPHST).

## Introduction

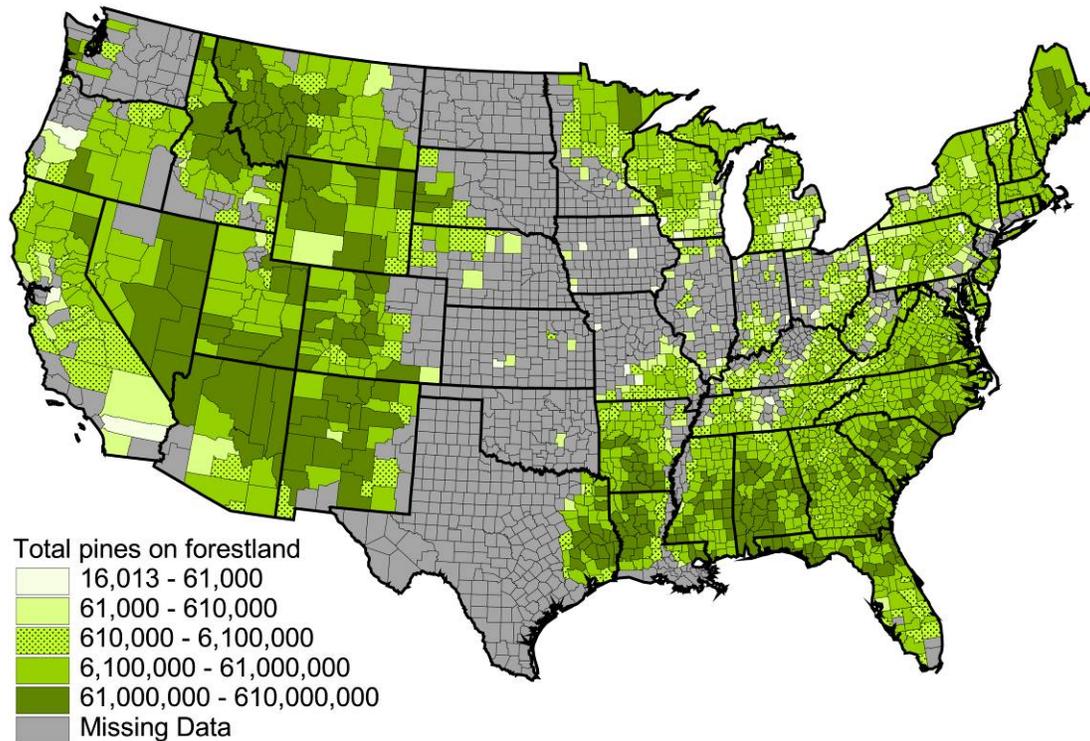


Fig. 1. Total pine trees (*Pinus* spp.) on forestland based on 2004-2006 surveys (USDA Forest Service, Forest Inventory and Analysis).

Pines (*Pinus* spp.) are remarkably diverse and abundant in the United States. At least 97 species occur in the country. Some are exotic to North America, but most are native. An estimated 54 billion pines occur in the contiguous United States on forestland acres. Pines dominate four forest type groups in the western United States: ponderosa pine, western white pine, lodgepole pine, and piñon pine-juniper. In 2002, these cover types accounted for 8.6%, 0.1%, 5.1%, and 1.0%, respectively, of total forestland area in the West including Alaskan forests (Smith et al. 2004). In the eastern United States, pines dominate four cover types: white-jack-red pine, longleaf-slash pine, loblolly-shortleaf pine, and oak-pine (mixed cover type). In 2002, these cover types accounted for 3.1%, 3.6%, 14.1%, and 8.8%, respectively, of total forestland area in the East (Smith et al. 2004). No *Pinus* spp. are listed as federally threatened or endangered, but five species (*P. banksiana*, *P. echinata*, *P. pungens*, *P. resinosa*, and *P. virginiana*) are considered threatened or endangered in at least one of six states.

This document addresses 21 non-native species of insects and fungi that have the potential to adversely affect pines. Most of these species do not occur in the United States. However, at least four of the species are known to be established in pockets of the United States as a result of recent introductions. Established

non-native pests continue to present risks to pine forests as they spread into previously unaffected areas. Additionally, new geographic variants of established species may arise and impact pines in ways not previously known. The 21 species addressed in this document were considered a serious threat by the Cooperative Agricultural Pest Survey or the North American Forestry Commission. This list was developed in consultation with the USDA Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service and is not intended to address all exotic pests that may attack pines.

In this document, we present biological details that are relevant to the survey and detection of each species. The following information can be found within each subsection:

**Pest Description** - a description of the morphology of the species. For technical accuracy, most descriptions are quoted directly from taxonomic authorities.

**Biology and Ecology** - a summary of the life history of each species in its native range. A particular emphasis is placed on when various life stages may be present and active.

**Pest Importance** - a description of the ecological and economic impact each species may have. Impacts are not always limited to pine. Some pests also may be problematic on other trees, shrubs, or crops.

**Symptoms** - a description of damage the species may cause on a host plant. This description may be useful for surveying pine stands.

**Known Hosts** - a complete listing of plants on which the pest has been reported to feed. Not all host associations have been thoroughly tested.

**Known Distribution** - a list of countries from where the species has been reported.

**Potential Distribution within the United States** - a summary of regions within the United States that may have suitable environmental conditions for the species.

**Survey** - available techniques that have been used to detect the species. This section includes the CAPS-approved method for surveying for the species.

**Key Diagnostics**- available techniques that have been used to identify the species. This section includes the CAPS-approved method for identifying the species.

**Easily Confused Pests**- a listing of other species that might be confused with the target pest.

### **Appendix M1:**

The survey methodology presented in Appendix M1 in the 2013 CAPS National Survey Guidelines lists the most up-to-date, CAPS-approved methods for survey and identification/diagnostics of CAPS target pests from the Priority Pest List, consisting of pests from the 1) commodity- and taxonomic-based surveys and 2) AHP Prioritized Pest List. The information in this table supersedes any survey and identification/diagnostic information found in any other CAPS document (i.e., Commodity-based Survey References and Guidelines, EWB/BB National Survey Manual, etc.). All other CAPS documents will be revised to include the information contained in this table; however, this table should always be the authoritative source for the most up-to-date, CAPS-approved methods.

# Arthropods: Beetles

## *Chlorophorus strobilicola*

E.E. Davis, E.M. Albrecht, and R.C. Venette

### Scientific Name

*Chlorophorus strobilicola* Champion

### Synonyms:

None known

### Common Names

Slender-banded pine cone longhorn beetle,  
pine cone cerambycid, chir pine cone beetle

### Type of Pest

Seed-feeder, long-horned beetle

### Taxonomic Position

**Kingdom:** Animalia, **Phylum:** Arthropoda,  
**Order:** Coleoptera, **Family:** Cerambycidae,  
**Subfamily:** Cerambycinae

### Reason for Inclusion in Manual

CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2013)

### Pest Description

#### Adult

“This species is a member of the large group of slender, colorful clytine longhorned beetles. This group is recognized by the long, narrow body, long legs, relatively short antennae (rarely longer than the body), and bright stripes and patterns on the outer wings. *Chlorophorus strobilicola* Champion is about 0.8-1.2 cm long. The relatively narrow bands of white pubescence in the pattern shown [in Fig. 2], is diagnostic for adults of this species” (Lingafelter 2003).

“Moderately elongate, subopaque, the elytra shining; rufous or reddish-brown, the eyes, scutellum, metasternum, and abdomen, the elytra with at least the apical portion, and sometimes the posterior femora towards the apex and the tips of the antennae, infuscate or black; the elytra each with a curved narrow fascia before the middle, extending forwards along the suture to the base and interrupted on the outer part of the disc, a short longitudinal streak within the humeral callus, a common narrow subapical fascia, and sometimes a small patch at the apex, cinereous or whitish, the rest of the pubescence of the upper surface sparser and darker, that of the under surface close, and in great part whitish or cinereous, the legs cinereo-pubescent and with a few projecting hairs; the head and prothorax closely, roughly punctate, the elytra densely, very finely punctate. Antennae rather more than half the length of the body, a little longer in ♂, joints 6-10 rapidly decreasing in length in ♀. Prothorax convex, transverse in ♀, nearly



Fig. 2. Adult *Chlorophorus strobilicola*.  
Photo by Steven Lingafelter (2003).

as long as broad in ♂, rounded at the sides. Elytra moderately elongate, somewhat flattened on the disc, truncate at the apex, the outer apical angle sharp. Basal joint of posterior tarsus about as long as the others united. Length 7½-9½ [mm], breadth 2-3 mm (♂♀)" (Champion 1919).

### Egg

"Sausage-shaped, slightly curved on long axis, semi-opaque white in colour, 0.75 x 0.25 mm" (Champion 1919).

### Larva (Fig. 3)

"Form cylindrical, broadest at the prothorax and tapering rapidly behind in the last 3 segments: white, except for the chitinised mouth-parts, and an ill-defined yellowish area in the front portion of the prothorax; rather smooth and shining, but thinly pubescent with rather long pale hairs especially anteriorly. Head strongly retracted into the prothorax; clypeus narrow; labrum broader than long, hairy; mandibles typical of subfamily, with gouge-shaped cutting edge; labial palpi 3-jointed, apical joint subconical, about 1½ times as long as broad;



Fig. 3. Larval *C. strobilicola* feeding in a cone of *Pinus roxburghii*. Image from Sven-Erik Spichiger, <http://www.bugwood.org>

maxillary palpi slightly larger than the labial, 3-jointed, apical joint subconical. Antennae rather conspicuous when fully exerted, 3-jointed, basal joint trapezoidal and rapidly tapered, second cylindrical, longer than broad, and bearing the narrow cylindrical 3<sup>rd</sup> joint and a small papilla. A large single ocellus irregularly pigmented near base of antenna. Prothorax as viewed from above about three times as broad as long, and equal to the 1<sup>st</sup> abdominal segment, quite smooth and shining. Legs minute, being only about 1/10 the length of the large thoracic spiracle, 3-jointed; fold bearing the prothoracic leg

extending up in front of the spiracle for a distance equalling the length of the latter. Abdomen parallel-sided, ampullae not pronounced, slightly rugose, but shining and smooth otherwise. Length fully grown 12.5 mm, width 2.5 mm, length of leg 0.04 mm" (Champion 1919).

### **Biology and Ecology**

Relatively little is known about the biology of *C. strobilicola*. Known biology has been described by Champion (1919), Beeson and Bhatia (1939), Duffy (1968), and Pande and Bhandari (2006).

In India, *C. strobilicola* completes its life cycle on 2-3 year old cones of *Pinus roxburghii* (Duffy 1968, Pande and Bhandari 2006). Under optimal conditions, *C. strobilicola* has 4 overlapping generations per year. First

generation adults emerge from cones in April and the first half of May (Beeson and Bhatia 1939, Duffy 1968). The first generation lasts 50-55 days. The second generation lasts 55-60 days from the end of June to the end of August, while the third generation lasts 60-65 days from mid-August to the end of October. The fourth generation overwinters as larvae and pupates in April or May of the following year. Champion (1919) notes the date of emergence may depend on altitude and other factors.

Mating occurs shortly after adults emerge from cones (Champion 1919, Pande and Bhandari 2006). There are about as many males as there are females. Adults live 11-14 days (Pande and Bhandari 2006).

Oviposition occurs toward the end of June to the beginning of July (Champion 1919, Beeson and Bhatia 1939). Females mate multiple times and deposit 4-6 eggs between scales of mature green cones after each mating (Pande and Bhandari 2006). They deposit a total of about 15-20 eggs (Champion 1919, Duffy 1968), which hatch after 4-5 days (Pande and Bhandari 2006).

Larvae bore into the cone, where they excavate galleries about 5 cm [2 in] long through the central axis and several scales. Between May and August, the larval stage lasts 30-35 days; during September and October, it lasts 40-45 days. *C. strobilicola* larvae have six instars (Pande and Bhandari 2006).

Pupation takes place in an oval-shaped chamber in the larval gallery and lasts about 8-10 days (Pande and Bhandari 2006). Adults emerge through elliptical emergence holes in the scale-head (Champion 1919, Beeson and Bhatia 1939, Duffy 1968, Pande and Bhandari 2006).

### **Pest Importance**

*Chlorophorus strobilicola* attacks cones of *Pinus roxburghii*, reducing the quality and yield of seeds (Pande and Bhandari 2003, 2004). *P. roxburghii* is endemic to south Asia and is currently established as a cultivated ornamental species in western North America (California). *P. roxburghii* is closely related to *P. rigida* (pitch pine) and *P. taeda* (loblolly pine), both of which are indigenous to the United States (Sinha 2002). It is unknown whether *C. strobilicola* could successfully infest cones of these or other native pines.

Damage to pine cones is proportional to the number of larvae feeding within, with larger cones being more susceptible to attack (Champion 1919, Pande and Bhandari 2004). Seed efficiency, which is the ratio of actual to potential seed production, is diminished in cones infested with *C. strobilicola* or other cone-boring insects. Pande and Bhandari (2003) found that in cones with twenty or more larvae, seed efficiency was reduced to 0%. Singh et al. (2007) found cones of *P. roxburghii* attacked by four *C. strobilicola* larvae experienced an average weight loss of 54-74%, with greater losses occurring in late summer. Over 81%

of seeds were lost and the average weight of seeds was reduced by 58% (Singh et al. 2007).

**Symptoms**

Infested cones may not mature normally, usually when a dozen or more larvae are present (Champion 1919, Duffy 1968). These stunted cones are fragile and filled with “very fine wood dust” (Champion 1919). Cones infested with a few larvae may appear normal but do not produce fertile seed (Champion 1919).

**Known Hosts**

*Chlorophorus strobilicola* feeds solely on 2-3 year old cones of *Pinus roxburghii* (Duffy 1968, Pande and Bhandari 2006). There is one record of *C. strobilicola* feeding on *Pinus kesiya* (USDA/APHIS 2004), but this is questionable.

| Host  | Reference  |
|---|--|
| <i>Pinus roxburghii</i> (= <i>Pinus longifolia</i> )<br>(chir pine) | (Champion 1919, Beeson and Bhatia 1939, Duffy 1968, Lingafelter 2003, Pande and Bhandari 2003, 2004, Singh et al. 2005, reviewed in CAB 2006, Pande and Bhandari 2006) |

**Known Vectors**

*Chlorophorus strobilicola* has not been reported as a vector of plant pathogens.

**Known Distribution**

*Chlorophorus strobilicola* is located throughout “open sunny stands” of *Pinus roxburghii* in India and is usually found at elevations of about 450-2000 m [1500-6500 ft] (Champion 1919, Beeson and Bhatia 1939, Duffy 1968, Pande and Bhandari 2006). Larval and adult *Chlorophorus strobilicola* were detected in 2003 in California, Connecticut, Florida, Massachusetts, New Jersey, New York, North Carolina, and West Virginia (Lingafelter 2003, USDA/APHIS 2004).

| Location                   | Reference   |
|----------------------------|---|
| <b>Asia</b>                |   |
| India                      | (Champion 1919, Beeson and Bhatia 1939, Lingafelter 2003) |
| <b>North America</b>       |   |
| United States <sup>1</sup> | (Lingafelter 2003)  |

1. Not established.

**Potential Distribution within the United States**

Very little information exists to support a reliable prediction of the potential distribution of *C. strobilicola* within the United States. We presume that *C. strobilicola* would require similar ecological conditions as in India to establish

and cause damage. Only five biomes occur within the elevations where this insect has been reported to occur. Of these biomes, only three also occur in the United States: temperate coniferous forests; temperate broadleaf and mixed forests; and tropical and subtropical coniferous forests. These biomes dominate the United States east of the Mississippi and are prevalent in the Intermountain West, the Pacific Northwest, and the Sierra-Nevada mountains.

A recent host analysis by USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST illustrates the abundance of host material in the southeast as well as portions of the western United States.

### Survey

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

The CAPS-approved method is visual survey.

#### **Literature-Based Methods:**

Visual inspection of trees and cones is the only practical way to survey for this insect. There are no known long-range aggregation pheromones, sex pheromones, or other attractants for this beetle.

Cones of *Pinus roxburghii* infested with *C. strobilicola* are easily broken off by wind and may appear glossy and immature (Champion 1919, Beeson and Bhatia 1939). The cones are light and filled with wood dust (Champion 1919).

Emergence holes are oval-shaped (Beeson and Bhatia 1939). Larvae, pupae, and adults may be present simultaneously in a cone (Champion 1919).

### Key Diagnostics

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

Confirmation of *C. strobilicola* is by morphological identification. The relatively narrow bands of white pubescence on the elytra are diagnostic for adults of this species.

#### **Literature-Based Methods:**

Identification depends on examination of morphological characters. Segments of antennae are particularly important to distinguish this species from close relatives. No molecular tools are available to help with diagnosis.

### Easily Confused Pests

*Chlorophorus strobilicola* may be confused with *C. annularis* (Fig. 4), which has been intercepted in the continental United States in stored bamboo products imported from China (Pierce 2006). *C. annularis* is established in Hawaii (NAPIS 2003). Duffy (1968) provides a key to distinguish between these two *Chlorophorus* spp. *C. strobilicola* has the second antennal segment "slightly longer than wide," while that of *C. annularis* is "about

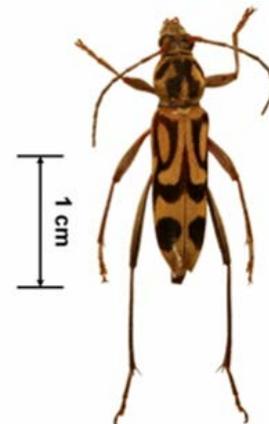


Fig. 4. Adult *C. annularis*.  
Image from Christopher Pierce,  
<http://www.bugwood.org>

one and one-half times as long as wide” (Duffy 1968). Additionally, *C. strobilicola* is confined to cones of *Pinus roxburghii*, while *C. annularis* is chiefly a pest of dry bamboo (Beeson and Bhatia 1939, Duffy 1968). *C. strobilicola* may also be confused with *C. varius*.

## References

- Beeson, C. F. C., and B. M. Bhatia. 1939.** On the biology of the Cerambycidae (Coleopt.). Indian Forest Records (new series) 5: 235 pp.
- CAB. 2006.** Crop Protection Compendium. CAB International. Available on-line at: <http://www.cabicompendium.org/cpc>. Accessed 20 October 2006.
- Champion, H. G. 1919.** A cerambycid infesting pine cones in India, *Chlorophorus strobilicola*, n. sp. Entomologist's Monthly Magazine 58: 219-224.
- Duffy, E. A. J. 1968.** A Monograph of the Immature Stages of Oriental Timber Beetles (Cerambycidae). Trustees of the British Museum (Natural History), London.
- Lingafelter, S. 2003.** The slender banded pinecone longhorn beetle (*Chlorophorus strobilicola* Champion) (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae: Clytini). USDA APHIS. Available on-line at: <http://www.cdfa.ca.gov/phpps/ppd/Entomology/Coleoptera/Pineconelonghorn.htm>. Accessed 20 October 2006.
- NAPIS. 2003.** Reported status of bamboo borer longhorned beetle, *Chlorophorus annularis* in U.S. and Puerto Rico. National Agricultural Pest Information System (NAPIS). Available on-line at: <http://ceris.purdue.edu/napis/pests/barkb/imap/boo-usa.html>. Accessed 6 April 2007.
- Pande, S., and R. S. Bhandari. 2003.** Effect of chir pine cone beetle, *Chlorophorus strobilicola* (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae) on the seed efficiency of *Pinus roxburghii*. Indian Forester 129: 1499-1503.
- Pande, S., and R. S. Bhandari. 2004.** Effect of cone morphology on its susceptibility to Chir pine cone beetle, *Chlorophorus strobilicola* Champion. Indian Forester 130: 1303-1306.
- Pande, S., and R. S. Bhandari. 2006.** Bio-ecology of a major cone and seed insect of Chir pine, *Chlorophorus strobilicola* Champ. (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). Indian Journal of Forestry 29: 253-256.
- Pierce, C. M. F. 2006.** Pest alert: bamboo longhorned beetle *Chlorophorus annularis* Fabricius. Purdue University Extension. Available on-line at: <http://www.entm.purdue.edu/CAPS/pestAlertsPDF/CAPS-1.pdf>. Accessed 6 April 2007.
- Singh, C., R. Singh, and V. P. Pandey. 2007.** Damage evaluation of *Chlorophorus strobilicola* Champion – a cone borer of *Pinus roxburghii* Sargent in Himalayan region. Indian Forester 133: 430-434.
- Singh, S., S. A. Belokobylskij, N. Chauhan, and S. Pande. 2005.** Description of a new species of the genus *Spasskia* Belokobylskij, 1989 (Hymenoptera: Braconidae) from India, with first record of the genus in the Oriental Region. Annales Zoologici (Warsaw) 55: 95-98.

- Sinha, B. 2002.** Introduction of the European pines in the Himalayas: a brief note. ENVIS Bulletin - Himalayan Ecology and Development 10: 3-5.
- USDA/APHIS. 2004.** Plant Protection and Quarantine Employees Uncover Pests in Imported Scented Pine Cones. Available on-line at:  
[http://www.aphis.usda.gov/lpa/pubs/sa\\_pinecones.html](http://www.aphis.usda.gov/lpa/pubs/sa_pinecones.html). Accessed 20 October 2006.

## ***Dendroctonus micans***

E.E. Davis, E.M. Albrecht, and R.C. Venette

### **Scientific Name**

*Dendroctonus micans* (Kugelann)

### **Synonyms:**

*Bostrichus micans* Kugelann  
*Hylesinus ligniperda* Gyllenhal  
(Grüne 1979)

### **Common Names**

Great spruce bark beetle, European spruce beetle

### **Type of Pest**

Bark and cambium-boring beetle

### **Taxonomic Position**

**Kingdom:** Animalia, **Phylum:** Arthropoda,  
**Order:** Coleoptera, **Family:** Curculionidae,  
**Subfamily:** Scolytinae

### **Reason for Inclusion in Manual**

CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2013)

### **Pest Description**

#### **Adult** (Fig. 6)

Description of the genus *Dendroctonus* Erichson 1836:

“Frons without a median groove or impression below upper level of eyes; lateral elevations of frons and transverse elevated callus of pronotum never present in either sex; epistomal process usually narrower and less prominent, lateral margins raised or not; ... Declivital interstriae smooth and shining, most punctures impressed, a few of them granulate in female; epistomal process rather narrow, distance between eyes three or more times its basal width; episternal area of prothorax punctate, granules minute or entirely absent; ... Declivital striae weakly if at all impressed, 2 apically curved toward sutural striae; declivital interstriae 1 feebly elevated, 2 as wide or wider than 1 or 3 (except near apex); discal striae less than half as wide as interstriae; epistomal process usually transversely concave (except *micans*), rather broad, lateral margins moderately oblique (less than 55 degrees from horizontal); ... frons smooth and polished, with deep close punctures, but almost entirely without granules between punctures; strial punctures on declivity rather large, three or more times as large as those of interstriae; ... epistomal process flat; body stouter, 2.3 times as long as wide; strial punctures more strongly impressed; northern Europe and Asia; 6.0-8.0 mm” (Wood 1982).



Fig. 6. Adult *Dendroctonus micans*.  
Photo by Maja Jurc,  
<http://www.forestryimages.org>

### Egg

No unique features of *D. micans* eggs have been described. Eggs resemble other bark beetle eggs, which are white, oval, and slightly more than 1 mm long (Haack 2001).

### Larva

“Spiracular tubercles present, sclerotized; sclerotized areas or plates present on dorsal surface of one or both abdominal segments 8 and 9 or 9 only ... a lightly sclerotized, inconspicuous dorsal plate usually present on segment 9 only” (Furniss and Johnson 1989).

### Pupa

No unique features of *D. micans* pupae have been described. Pupae resemble other bark beetle pupae, which are white, mummy-like, and have some adult features (Haack 2001).

## **Biology and Ecology**

*D. micans* completes a generation in one to three years, primarily depending on temperature (reviewed in CAB 2006). Grégoire (1984) observed five instars, pre-pupal, pupal, and adult stages. Under natural conditions, larval development can take a year or more. However, under laboratory conditions larvae may reach maturity in 50-60 days at temperatures between 19-23°C [66-73°F] (Grégoire and Merlin 1984). *Dendroctonus micans* overwinters in the larval or adult stage. Adult beetles freeze at -20°C [-4°F] (reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997). Adults are not known to survive freezing.

Adults mate before emerging. The male to female ratio ranges from about 1:10 to 1:45. Consequently, mating among siblings is common (reviewed in CAB 2006). Approximately 90% of adult females emerge after mating with a sibling male within the gallery system where they developed (Vouland et al. 1984). The beetles construct round exit holes, which may be used by several individuals. Emergence may occur over 5 months depending on temperature and climate conditions (Vouland and Schvester 1994, reviewed in CAB 2006). Females initiate attacks on trees. A single mated female either re-enters an existing host or moves to a new host (reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in CAB 2006). Females ordinarily attack standing, live trees, but may attack stressed trees as well (reviewed in Haack 2001).

Flight occurs during warm temperatures in summer months (reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997). Vouland et al. (1984) reported a temperature threshold for adult flight between 21-23°C [70-73°F]. In Britain, initial and sustained flights were observed at 20°C [68°F] and 14°C [57°F], respectively (reviewed in CAB 2006). Adults are considered strong fliers and may disperse several km in search of suitable hosts. They may also be transported by wind. However, adults tend to repeatedly attack the tree from which they originally emerged or

infest others nearby (reviewed in Haack 2001). Flight may not be a common means of dispersal in shaded canopies (Fielding et al. 1991).

The female bores one or more horizontal galleries and deposits eggs in clusters of 100-150 inside a brood chamber containing a protective mixture of bark pieces, sawdust, and frass (Storer et al. 1997, Lieutier 2004, reviewed in CAB 2006). Eggs are deposited on one side of the chamber (Fig. 7). Under laboratory conditions, a single female deposited 240 ( $\pm 30.83$ ) eggs on average within approximately one to three weeks. Approximately 52% of these individuals developed to adulthood (Grégoire and Merlin 1984). When population density is high and multiple females deposit eggs within a single host, larval gallery systems can converge (reviewed in CAB 2006).

Immediately following egg hatch, larvae aggregate in response to (-)- $\alpha$ -pinene and *trans*-verbenol and feed side-by-side in large groups (Grégoire et al. 1982, Deneubourg et al. 1990, Storer et al. 1997). Larvae primarily feed on phloem and periodically bore holes to the bark surface for air. Large amounts of frass become packed in the gallery behind the feeding larvae. Weakened, diseased, and dead insects become encased in the hardened frass. The feeding tunnel widens as an increasing number of larvae aggregate and advance (Grégoire and Merlin 1984, reviewed in CAB 2006).

### Pest Importance

The economic and environmental importance of *Dendroctonus micans* has been reviewed by CABI/EPPO (1997), CAB (2006), and Haack (2001). *D. micans* is chiefly a secondary pest of conifers, particularly spruce (*Picea* spp.), in its native range. However, *D. micans* is capable of causing major damage and killing entire stands during periodic outbreaks that typically occur on the edges of its geographic range (reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Gilbert et al. 2001, reviewed in Haack 2001). Outbreaks in stands are thought to be associated primarily with weakened or stressed trees and poor site conditions (Voolma and Luik 1999, Gilbert et al. 2001, Gilbert et al. 2003, Gilbert and Grégoire 2003, Rolland and Lempérière 2004). Historical outbreaks have affected over 200,000 ha [494,000 A], causing significant damage to spruce forests in Europe and Asia (reviewed in Haack 2001). Outbreaks have also been reported in Scots pine (*Pinus sylvestris*) plantations of varying ages in Russia and northern Europe

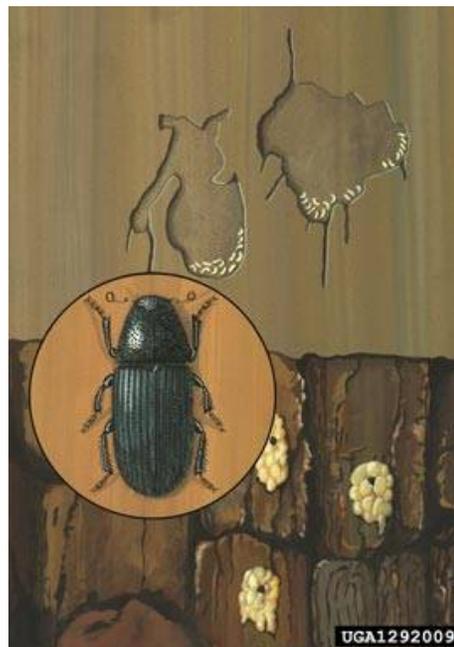


Fig. 7. Diagram of adult, eggs, pitch tubes, and gallery of *Dendroctonus micans*. Image by Robert Dzwonkowski, <http://www.bugwood.org>

(reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997, Voolma and Luik 1999, reviewed in Haack 2001). In an area of pine-dominated mixed boreal forest, *D. micans* was identified as a cause of mortality in spruce but not in pine (Rouvinen et al. 2002).

*Dendroctonus micans* primarily attacks healthy, standing trees, but may also attack wounded or stressed trees (Deneubourg et al. 1990, reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997, Gilbert et al. 2001, reviewed in Haack 2001, Gilbert and Grégoire 2003). Galleries and brood chambers constructed by *D. micans* transect and drain resin ducts, leading to reduced resin pressure (Gilbert et al. 2001). Wounding also stimulates an accumulation of nitrogen and starch in host tissue as an induced defense reaction (Wainhouse et al. 1998). However, the increased amount of nitrogen makes the bark more nutritionally valuable to *D. micans*. This phenomenon may explain why beetles attack hosts near areas of previous attack (Gilbert et al. 2001). Gregarious feeding by larvae in the cambial region results in girdling and eventual tree death (reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997). Trees that have not been heavily attacked by *D. micans* tend to survive and several generations may be completed while the tree retains green foliage (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006). Indeed, Voolma and Luik (1999) make mention of a live, 50 cm [20 in] dbh Russian pine infested by 2,500 adults. *D. micans* is considered a “solitary” species and will only attack a host infested with other insects when *D. micans* population density is high (reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997).

In the United Kingdom the introduction and establishment of *D. micans* since the early 1980s has necessitated the implementation of an integrated pest management program including biological, chemical, and silvicultural control measures (Evans and Fielding 1994, reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997). The ability of *D. micans* to kill conifers in North America is not known. Establishment of this pest in the United States would present a significant threat to forests and the forest products industry. Insect-damaged trees are also vulnerable to subsequent attack by other insects and pathogens. Reduction or loss of mature conifers would negatively affect forest composition and displace native species.

### Symptoms

In standing, living trees, external symptoms of attacked trees may be easily confused with damage caused by closely related species of bark beetles, longhorn beetles, and other agents causing tree decline. External symptoms include yellow, brown, or reddish-brown foliage or crown; purple-brown (when wet) or white and crusty (when dry) pitch tubes originating from entrance holes on the lower trunk; streams of resin (resinosis); patches of necrotic (discolored or black) and peeling bark; and round exit holes. These signs are caused by females boring through the bark to form a brood chamber. Internally, the hallmark sign of *D. micans* infestation is the fan-shaped larval gallery, which is unique to this species. Galleries can be as large as 60 cm long and 20 cm wide (reviewed in CAB 2006). Insects in all life stages may be present within the tree

(Bevan and King 1983, reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006).

Stressed Scots pine (*Pinus sylvestris*) that are 18-25 years old are preferred over other age classes of the same species (Voolma and Luik 1994). Attacks are consistently in the lower bole of a tree.

### Known Hosts

*Dendroctonus micans* is primarily a pest of spruce, *Picea* spp. It may also attack other conifer species, particularly pine, *Pinus* spp. (Wainhouse and Beech-Garwood 1994). It prefers *Picea abies*, *P. sitchensis*, and *P. orientalis* (Wainhouse et al. 1990, Voolma and Luik 1999).

| Host  | Reference  |
|---|--|
| <i>Abies</i> spp. (fir) <sup>1</sup>                                    | (CIE 1983, Evans and Fielding 1994)  |
| <i>Abies alba</i> (= <i>Abies pectinata</i> ) (silver fir) <sup>2</sup> | (Grüne 1979, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <i>Abies nordmanniana</i> (Nordmann fir)                                | (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <i>Abies sibirica</i> (Siberian fir)                                    | (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <i>Larix</i> spp. (larch) <sup>1</sup>                                  | (Evans and Fielding 1994, Wainhouse and Beech-Garwood 1994, Kolk and Starzyk 1996)   |
| <i>Larix decidua</i> (common larch) <sup>2</sup>                        | (Grüne 1979, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <i>Picea</i> spp. (spruce)  | (Grüne 1979, CIE 1983, Grégoire and Merlin 1984, Evans and Fielding 1994, reviewed in Haack 2001, Gilbert et al. 2003, Gilbert and Grégoire 2003)  |
| <i>Picea abies</i> (= <i>Picea excelsa</i> ) (Norway spruce)            | (Bevan and King 1983, Grégoire and Merlin 1984, Wainhouse et al. 1990, Evans and Fielding 1994, Wainhouse and Beech-Garwood 1994, Furniss 1996, Kolk and Starzyk 1996, Storer et al. 1997, Wainhouse et al. 1998, Voolma and Luik 1999, reviewed in Haack 2001, Rolland and Lempérière 2004, reviewed in CAB 2006) |
| <i>Picea asperata</i> (= <i>Pinus crassifolia</i> ) (dragon spruce)     | (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <i>Picea breweriana</i> (Brewer spruce)                                 | (reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <i>Picea engelmannii</i> (Engelmann spruce)                             | (reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <i>Picea glauca</i> (white spruce)                                      | (reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <i>Picea jezoensis</i> (Yeddo spruce)                                   | (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in   |

| Host  | Reference  |
|---|--|
|   | CAB 2006)  |
| <i>Picea mariana</i> (black spruce)                                     | (reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <i>Picea obovata</i> (Siberian spruce)                                  | (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <i>Picea omorika</i> (Pancic spruce)                                    | (Evans and Fielding 1994, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| <i>Picea orientalis</i> (oriental spruce)                               | (Wainhouse et al. 1990, Evans and Fielding 1994, Wainhouse and Beech-Garwood 1994, Storer et al. 1997, Voolma and Luik 1999, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <i>Picea pungens</i> (blue spruce)                                      | (Evans and Fielding 1994, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| <i>Picea sitchensis</i> (Sitka spruce)                                  | (Bevan and King 1983, Wainhouse et al. 1990, Fielding et al. 1991, Evans and Fielding 1994, Wainhouse and Beech-Garwood 1994, Furniss 1996, Storer et al. 1997, Wainhouse et al. 1998, Voolma and Luik 1999, reviewed in CAB 2006) |
| <i>Pinus</i> spp. (pine)  | (CIE 1983, Evans and Fielding 1994, reviewed in Haack 2001)  |
| <i>Pinus contorta</i> (lodgepole pine)                                  | (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <i>Pinus mugo</i> (= <i>Pinus montana</i> ) (mugo pine) <sup>2</sup>    | (Grüne 1979)   |
| <i>Pinus nigra</i> (black pine)   | (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <i>Pinus strobus</i> (eastern white pine)                               | (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> (Scots pine) <sup>2</sup>                       | (Grüne 1979, Fielding et al. 1991, Wainhouse and Beech-Garwood 1994, Kolk and Starzyk 1996, Voolma and Luik 1999, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> var. <i>hamata</i> (= <i>Pinus sosnowskyi</i> ) | (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <i>Pinus uncinata</i> (mountain pine)                                   | (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> (Douglas-fir) <sup>1</sup>                 | (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |

1. *Abies* spp., *Larix* spp., and *Pseudotsuga menziesii* are infrequently attacked (Wainhouse and Beech-Garwood 1994, Kolk and Starzyk 1996).

2. Minor hosts (Grüne 1979).

### Known Vectors

*Dendroctonus micans* is not known to be associated with pathogenic fungi (Deneubourg et al. 1990). Leveux and Cassier (1994) suggested that *D. micans* was “free of pathogenic fungi,” including the bluestain fungi, *Ophiostoma* spp. However, secondary invaders including root disease fungi such as *Heterobasidion annosum* and *Armillaria* spp. have been observed in trees attacked by *D. micans* (Deneubourg et al. 1990, reviewed in Gilbert et al. 2001, reviewed in Haack 2001).

### Known Distribution

| Location               | Reference  |
|------------------------|--|
| <b>Asia</b>            |  |
| China                  | (Furniss 1996, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| Georgia (Republic)     | (CIE 1983, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| Japan                  | (Kolk and Starzyk 1996, Voolma and Luik 1999, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Mongolia               | (reviewed in Haack 2001)   |
| Turkey                 | (CIE 1983, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| <b>Europe</b>          |  |
| Austria                | (CIE 1983, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| Belgium                | (Grégoire et al. 1982, CIE 1983, Grégoire and Merlin 1984, Furniss 1996, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)                   |
| Bosnia and Herzegovina | (CIE 1983, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| Bulgaria               | (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| Croatia                | (CIE 1983, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| Czech Republic         | (CIE 1983, Furniss 1996, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| Denmark                | (CIE 1983, Furniss 1996, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| Estonia                | (CIE 1983, Voolma and Luik 1999, reviewed in Haack 2001)   |
| Finland                | (CIE 1983, Furniss 1996, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)   |
| France                 | (CIE 1983, Grégoire and Merlin 1984, Vouland et al. 1984, Vouland and Schvester 1994, Furniss 1996, Voolma and Luik 1999, Gilbert et al. |

| <b>Location</b> | <b>Reference</b>  |
|-----------------|---|
|                 | 2001, reviewed in Haack 2001, Rolland and Lempérière 2004, reviewed in CAB 2006)                                    |
| Germany         | (CIE 1983, Furniss 1996, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Greece          | (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Hungary         | (CIE 1983, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Ireland         | (reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Italy           | (CIE 1983, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Latvia          | (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Lithuania       | (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Luxembourg      | (CIE 1983, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Montenegro      | (CIE 1983, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Netherlands     | (CIE 1983, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Norway          | (CIE 1983, Furniss 1996, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Poland          | (CIE 1983, Kolk and Starzyk 1996, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)                                     |
| Portugal        | (reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Romania         | (CIE 1983, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Russia          | (CIE 1983, Furniss 1996, Kolk and Starzyk 1996, Voolma and Luik 1999, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006) |
| Serbia          | (CIE 1983, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Slovakia        | (CIE 1983, Furniss 1996, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Spain           | (reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Sweden          | (CIE 1983, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Switzerland     | (CIE 1983, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| Ukraine         | (CIE 1983, reviewed in Haack 2001, reviewed in CAB 2006)  |
| United Kingdom  | (Bevan and King 1983, Wainhouse et  |

| Location | Reference  |
|----------|--|
|          | al. 1990, Fielding et al. 1991, Evans and Fielding 1994, Furniss 1996, Storer et al. 1997, Wainhouse et al. 1998, Voolma and Luik 1999, reviewed in Haack 2001, Gilbert et al. 2003, reviewed in CAB 2006) |

### Potential Distribution within the United States

In general, *D. micans* occurs in cool, temperate to warm climates with variable seasonal rainfall and dry periods. The currently reported distribution of *D. micans* suggests that the insect may be most closely associated with biomes characterized as: temperate broadleaf and mixed forests; and temperate coniferous forests. Both biomes occur in the United States. Consequently, approximately 47% of the contiguous United States may have a suitable climate for *D. micans*.

In a recent risk analysis by USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST, areas of the southeast and west coast have the highest risk for establishment of *D. micans*. Other areas of the United States have a moderate to low risk of establishment.

### Survey

#### CAPS-Approved Method:

The CAPS-approved method is visual survey.

#### Literature-Based Methods:

Surveys for *D. micans* should rely on visual inspections of trees. No chemical attractants have been identified to bait traps (Storer et al. 1997). Unbaited interception traps have not been evaluated. In areas where the beetle is established, visual surveys have been used extensively. For example, in the United Kingdom, regional surveys were conducted by looking for spruce trees with death in the crown (Fielding et al. 1991). These trees were then examined more closely for other signs of infestation, including pitch tubes, loose bark or old galleries.

It may be possible to stratify the landscape into areas where beetle attacks are relatively more likely and where survey efforts should be concentrated. Damaged or forked trees are more likely to be infested than undamaged or straight trees (Fielding et al. 1991). Infestations are also considered likely in stands that meet one or more of the following criteria: “close” to known infestations (distance not specified); thinned within 5 years, more than 19 years-old; close to roads; near new wooden fences that had bark; or within 3 km of a sawmill (Fielding et al. 1991).

### Key Diagnostics

#### CAPS-Approved Method:

Confirmation of *D. micans* is by morphological identification. Examine specimens under a good quality, high powered (preferably with up to 90X) dissecting microscope, with the help of a reference collection.

### **Literature-Based Methods:**

Identification depends on examination of adult morphological characters. No molecular tools are available to help with diagnosis.

### **Easily Confused Pests**

Of the 19 species of *Dendroctonus* worldwide, seventeen are indigenous to the United States (Wood 1982, Furniss 1996). The galleries of *D. micans* are similar to those of the North American species *D. rhizophagus*, *D. terebrans*, and *D. valens*. These beetles primarily infest *Pinus* spp., which is a minor host for *D. micans* (reviewed in CAB 2006). *D. micans* may be confused with *D. punctatus*, with which it is “almost identical” (Wood 1982, Bevan and King 1983, Furniss and Johnson 1989, Furniss 1996). Furniss (1996) identified 9 characteristics to differentiate adults of each species. *D. micans* may also be confused with *D. murrayanae* and *D. rufipennis*.

### **References**

- Bevan, D., and C. J. King. 1983.** *Dendroctonus micans* Kug. - a new pest of spruce in U.K. Commonwealth Forestry Review 62: 41-51.
- CAB. 2006.** Crop Protection Compendium. CAB International. Available on-line at: <http://www.cabicompendium.org/cpc>. Accessed 14 March 2007.
- CABI/EPPO. 1997.** Quarantine Pests for Europe, 2nd Ed. CAB International, Wallingford, UK.
- CIE. 1983.** *Dendroctonus micans* (Kug.). Distribution Maps of Pests, Series A, Map No. 449. Commonwealth Institute of Entomology/Commonwealth Agricultural Bureau, Wallingford, UK.
- Deneubourg, J. L., J. C. Grégoire, and E. Le Fort. 1990.** Kinetics of larval gregarious behavior in the bark beetle *Dendroctonus micans* (Coleoptera: Scolytidae). Journal of Insect Behavior 3: 169-182.
- Evans, H. F., and N. J. Fielding. 1994.** Integrated management of *Dendroctonus micans* in the UK. Forest Ecology and Management 65: 17-30.
- Fielding, N. J., H. F. Evans, J. M. Williams, and B. Evans. 1991.** Distribution and spread of the Great European Spruce Bark Beetle, *Dendroctonus micans*, in Britain - 1982 to 1989. Forestry 64: 345-358.
- Furniss, M. 1996.** Taxonomic status of *Dendroctonus punctatus* and *D. micans* (Coleoptera: Scolytidae). Annals of the Entomological Society of America 89: 328-333.
- Furniss, M., and J. B. Johnson. 1989.** Description of the gallery and larva of *Dendroctonus punctatus* LeConte (Coleoptera: Scolytidae). Canadian Entomologist 121: 757-762.

- Gilbert, M., and J. C. Grégoire. 2003.** Site condition and predation influence a bark beetle's success: a spatially realistic approach. *Agricultural and Forest Entomology* 5: 87-96.
- Gilbert, M., G. Vouland, and J. C. Grégoire. 2001.** Past attacks influence host selection by the solitary bark beetle *Dendroctonus micans*. *Ecological Entomology* 26: 133-142.
- Gilbert, M., N. J. Fielding, H. F. Evans, and J. C. Grégoire. 2003.** Spatial pattern of invading *Dendroctonus micans* (Coleoptera: Scolytidae) populations in the United Kingdom. *Canadian Journal of Forestry Research* 33: 712-725.
- Grégoire, J. C., and J. Merlin. 1984.** *Dendroctonus micans*: the evolution of a brood system, pp. 80-86, *Biological Control of Bark Beetles*.
- Grégoire, J. C., J. C. Braekman, and A. Tondeur. 1982.** Chemical communication between the larvae of *Dendroctonus* [sic] *micans* Kug. (Coleoptera, Scolytidae), pp. 253-257, *Les Mediateurs chimiques*. INRA Publ., Versailles.
- Grüne, S. 1979.** Brief Illustrated Key to European Bark Beetles. M. & H. Schaper, Hannover.
- Haack, R. 2001.** EXFOR Database Pest Report: *Dendroctonus micans*. USDA Forest Service. Available on-line at: <http://spfnic.fs.fed.us/exfor/data/pestreports.cfm?pestidval=35&langdisplay=english>. Accessed 18 October 2006.
- Kolk, A., and J. R. Starzyk. 1996.** Great spruce bark beetle - *Dendroctonus micans* Kugel., *Atlas skodliwych owadów lesnych* (The atlas of forest insect pests). Multico Warszawa, Warsaw.
- Levieux, J., and P. Cassier. 1994.** The transportation of conifers pathogenous fungi by the European xylophagous-beetler [sic]. *Annee Biologique* 33: 19-37.
- Lieutier, F. 2004.** Host Resistance to Bark Beetle and its Variations, pp. 135-180. *In* F. Lieutier, K. R. Day, A. Battisti, J. C. Grégoire and H. F. Evans [eds.], *Bark and Wood Boring Insects in Living Trees in Europe*, a Synthesis. Kluwer Academic Publishers, London.
- Rolland, C., and G. Lempérière. 2004.** Effects of climate on radial growth of Norway spruce and interactions with attacks by the bark beetle *Dendroctonus micans* (Kug., Coleoptera: Scolytidae): a dendroecological study in the French Massif Central. *Forest Ecology and Management* 201: 89-104.
- Rouvinen, S., T. Kuuluvainen, and J. Siitonen. 2002.** Tree mortality in a *Pinus sylvestris* dominated boreal forest landscape in Vienansalo Wilderness, Eastern Fennoscandia. *Silva Fennica* 36: 127-145.
- Storer, A. J., D. Wainhouse, and M. R. Speight. 1997.** The effect of larval aggregation behaviour on larval growth of the spruce bark beetle *Dendroctonus micans*. *Ecological Entomology* 22: 109-115.
- Voolma, K., and A. Luik. 1999.** *Dendroctonus micans* (Kug.) as a pest of Scots pine, *Pinus sylvestris* L. *In* B. Forster, M. Knížek and W. Grodzki [eds.], *Methodology of Forest Insect and Disease Survey in Central Europe*.

- Swiss Federal Institute for Forest, Snow and Landscape Research, Sion-Châtauneuf, Switzerland.
- Vouland, G., and D. Schvester. 1994.** Bionomie et developpement de *Dendroctonus micans* Kug (Col Scolytidae) dans le Massif central. Annales des Sciences Forestières 51: 505-519.
- Vouland, G., M. Giraud, and D. Schvester. 1984.** La periode tenerale et l'envol chez *Dendroctonus micans* Kug. (Coleoptera; Scolytidae), pp. 68-79, Biological Control of Bark Beetles.
- Wainhouse, D., and P. Beech-Garwood. 1994.** Growth and survival of *Dendroctonus micans* larvae on six species of conifer. Journal of Applied Entomology 117: 393-399.
- Wainhouse, D., D. J. Cross, and R. S. Howell. 1990.** The role of lignin as a defence against the spruce bark beetle *Dendroctonus micans*: effect on larvae and adults. Oecologia 85: 257-265.
- Wainhouse, D., R. Ashburner, E. Ward, and R. Bowell. 1998.** The effect of lignin and bark wounding on susceptibility of spruce trees to *Dendroctonus micans*. Journal of Chemical Ecology 24: 1551-1561.
- Wood, S. L. 1982.** The Bark and Ambrosia Beetles of North and Central America (Coleoptera: Scolytidae), a Taxonomic Monograph. Great Basin Naturalist Memoirs 6: 1359 pp.

## *Hylobius abietis*

E.E. Davis, E.M. Albrecht, and R.C. Venette

### Scientific Name

*Hylobius abietis* (L.)

### Synonyms:

*Hylobitelus abietis* (L.)

*Curculio abietis* (L.)

*Curculio pini* (L.)

(reviewed in CAB 2005)

### Common Names

Large pine weevil, large brown pine weevil,  
fir-tree weevil

### Type of Pest

Weevil; stem boring, girdling

### Taxonomic Position

**Kingdom:** Animalia, **Phylum:** Arthropoda, **Order:** Coleoptera,

**Family:** Curculionidae, **Subfamily:** Molytinae

### Reason for Inclusion in Manual

CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2013)

### Pest Description

Adult (Fig. 9)

"9-16 mm long, elytra are purple-brown in new adults, turning reddish brown to dark brown. Elytra have patches of long narrow yellow scales (ensiform) arranged in small groups in short irregular lines; surface is finely punctured. Pronotum has irregular patches of yellow ensiform scales, surface is punctured and wrinkled with a raised central line; shape is broader than long, strongly convex and constricted at the front. Head has 2 small patches of yellow scales, is extended to form a long cylindrical snout with mandibles at the tip. Antennae are elbowed and attached to the snout near the end. Legs have sharp claws with a strong tooth on the inner edge of each femur" (PaDIL 2005).



Fig. 10. Larva and pupa of *H. abietis*.  
Images from Gyorgy Csoka,  
<http://www.bugwood.org>



Fig. 9. Adult *Hylobius abietis*. Image from  
Gyorgy Csoka, <http://www.bugwood.org>

### Egg

No unique features of *H. abietis* eggs have  
been described.

### Larva (Fig. 10)

“Fully grown larvae may be 9.5-16 mm in length” (Day et al. 2004). Larvae are typical of the genus *Hylobius*. Lekander (1977) provides a description.

### Pupa (Fig. 10)

No unique features of *H. abietis* pupae have been described.

## **Biology and Ecology**

The biology of *H. abietis* is most recently reviewed by Leather et al. (1999) and Day et al. (2004).

*H. abietis* can live for 3-4 years or more (Guslits 1968). In Europe, the time from egg hatch to first reproduction is generally 2 years (reviewed in CAB 2005). However, development depends largely on host quality, temperature, and time of oviposition. Populations vary in size depending largely on the availability, age, and condition of host trees (Guslits 1968). In Europe, population density estimates for *H. abietis* adults in clear-cuttings have ranged from 14,000 to 220,000 ha<sup>-1</sup> (Day et al. 2004).

Adult activity is strongly influenced by temperature, light and humidity. Adults are most active at early dawn and dusk when air temperatures are between 17-21°C [63-70°F] and relative humidity is high (85-95%). Activity decreases with air temperatures above 25°C [77°F]. Females are considered more “hygronegative” than males and avoid humidity extremes. Adult weevils emerge at the end of summer or in spring when temperatures rise above 8-9°C [46-48°F].

Flight occurs at temperatures above 18-19°C [64-66°F] and wind velocity of 3-4 m s<sup>-1</sup> [7-9 miles per h] (Day et al. 2004). Adults disperse in search of new hosts to feed until maturation in tree crowns (Guslits 1968, Bylund et al. 2004, Day et al. 2004, Wainhouse et al. 2004). Weevil flight muscles degenerate 2-3 weeks following dispersal. Adults are considered “photopositive” at the beginning of their dispersive period and “photonegative” at the end (Day et al. 2004). In Europe, adult weevils migrate by flight for about two weeks during late May and early June (Solbreck and Gyldberg 1979, Solbreck 1980). Weevils have been reported to migrate anywhere from tens of meters to hundreds of kilometers (Rose et al. 2005) at wind speeds up to 3 m/s (Day et al. 2004). This depends mainly on host availability and wind-assisted flight (Day et al. 2004). Adults of *H. abietis* are capable of flight up to 30-50 m above the forest canopy (Day et al. 2004).

Adults mate multiple times. Oviposition by weevils depends largely on temperature but generally occurs throughout the entire adult life span of about 1-3 years (Lekander et al. 1985). In spring, oviposition begins about 2 weeks after emergence. Reproduction is terminated in late summer, presumably triggered by shortened day length and cooler temperatures (Guslits 1968, Lekander et al. 1985, Wainhouse et al. 2001, Day et al. 2004). According to Guslits (1968),

sexual maturity is achieved at the expense of fat body (energy) reserves, and oviposition ceases when energy reserves are exhausted. Fecundity depends on weevil age, size and host quality (Guslits 1968, Wainhouse et al. 2001, Day et al. 2004). Weevils oviposit during the summer months in the first year following clear-cutting. Oviposition peaks in June at a temperature of 22°C [72°F] (Lekander et al. 1985, Day et al. 2004). Adults overwinter in pupal chambers, in litter, or below the soil surface when temperatures fall below 8°C [46°F] (Leather et al. 1999, Day et al. 2004). Adults completing development before fall may emerge and maturation feed before overwintering in litter (Day et al. 2004). The sex ratio for *H. abietis* is 1:1 but may vary depending on the season (Leather et al. 1999).

Eggs are deposited in any woody tissue in contact with soil, including roots, felled stems, or stumps (Wainhouse et al. 2001). Slits are made in the bark of the trunk below ground (often the root collar or root) and eggs are deposited singly or in small, irregular groups. Eggs may also be deposited in the soil a short distance away from host roots. Under experimental conditions, deposition depth varies by soil type and ranges from 25-150 cm [10-60 in], with the majority close to the soil surface (within 10 cm [4 in]) in moist sand (Pye and Claesson 1981, Day et al. 2004). Under field conditions, eggs were deposited in peat 20-30 cm [8-12 in] beneath host roots (Day et al. 2004). One female produces between 22-71 eggs (Wainhouse et al. 2001, Day et al. 2004).

Larval development is highly variable (1-5 years) depending on several factors including host quality (Day et al. 2004). There are 5 instars. If oviposition occurs in soil, newly hatched larvae will move toward host roots to begin feeding. If oviposition occurs at or above the soil surface, larvae will bore long irregularly-shaped tunnels in the cambial region and move toward the roots (Day et al. 2004). This insect overwinters in the third or fourth larval instar or adult stages (Day et al. 2004).

Overwintering larvae can generally survive temperatures of -12 to -19°C [-2-10°F] (Day et al. 2004). Larvae have an average supercooling point of -12.6°C [9°F] (Leather et al. 1999). First instar larvae experience facultative pre-pupal diapause when temperatures fall below a threshold of 21°C [70°F], and overwinter in a quiescent state. Late instar larvae overwinter in diapause. Under experimental conditions, diapause was terminated 6 months following oviposition for larvae developing at 12°C [10°F]; however, requirements for diapause are not well known for this insect (Day et al. 2004).

Pupation occurs within 1-2 years of egg deposition depending on host quality and microclimate. Larvae pupate within oval pupal chambers that are excavated inside the bark (Day et al. 2004).

## Pest Importance

*Hylobius abietis* can be an economically important pest of young conifer plantations in Europe and Asia, causing more than \$1 million in damage annually (reviewed in Leather et al. 1999). In the United Kingdom, estimated annual control costs to the public and private forest industry totaled the equivalent of nearly \$6.5 million USD in 1999, excluding replanting costs (reviewed in CAB 2005). *H. abietis* is especially problematic to newly-planted hosts near 2-3 year-old stumps or trees with downed or damaged branches (reviewed in Leather et al. 1999, reviewed in CAB 2005). Damaged tissue may release chemicals that attract emerging adults from infested trees to new hosts. Chemical control is routinely used to protect transplanted seedlings and is thought to significantly impact the environment and pose a health risk to forest workers (reviewed in Leather et al. 1999).

Seedling mortality caused by *H. abietis* and associated pathogens is lower in undisturbed natural areas than in forest plantations (Leather et al. 1999). In areas where *H. abietis* is established, control measures are recommended to prevent significant loss of newly planted seedlings (reviewed in Leather et al. 1999, reviewed in Ciesla 2001). Without control measures, plantations less than 2 years old have suffered 30-100% seedling mortality (reviewed in Ciesla 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005).

The extent of damage caused by this pest and associated pathogens is highly variable and not well understood (reviewed in Leather et al. 1999, reviewed in CAB 2005). Damage depends on numerous factors, including new host availability, age and health of transplanted seedlings, silvicultural practices (e.g., clear cutting), damage from other insect pests, and wind or lightning damage (Leather et al. 1999, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005). The amount of seedling mortality that can be attributed to associated fungi is not fully known, but mortality may increase when trees are subjected to fungal infection and damage from insect feeding (reviewed in Leather et al. 1999). Adults emerging from infected trees may transmit these fungi while feeding on new hosts. Feeding wounds create an opportunity for fungal infection, particularly by *Heterobasidion annosum* and *Leptographium procerum* (Kadlec et al. 1992, Viiri 2004). See 'Known Vectors.'

## Symptoms

Young trees may exhibit signs of decline resulting from feeding damage by *Hylobius abietis* and/or infection by associated fungi (Leather et al. 1999, Day et al. 2004). External symptoms include feeding damage, dieback of affected branches, and death. Adults feed at the base and roots of transplanted seedlings and in the crown of mature trees (Schlyter 2004). Feeding on the main stem or lateral shoots can cause a characteristic "shepherd's crook", which can be confused with damage caused by *Tomicus piniperda* (pine shoot beetle). Heavy infestations can result in stem girdling and subsequent death (reviewed in Leather et al. 1999, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005). Maturation

feeding occurs on small stems, twigs, and roots of standing trees and on remnant plant material from felled trees (reviewed in Leather et al. 1999, Wainhouse et al. 2004, Lof et al. 2005). If bark near the root collar is peeled back, long, irregularly-shaped tunnels that extend through the cambium toward the roots may be evident. Periodic fresh air “ducts” are also built between the excavated tunnel and bark surface (Day et al. 2004). The depth to which larvae tunnel depends on bark thickness and climate. In species with thin bark, pupal chambers may be constructed in wood and sealed with excavated wood chips (Day et al. 2004).

### Known Hosts

*Hylobius abietis* is polyphagous, though its preferred host genera are *Pinus* and *Picea* (Lindelöw and Björkman 2001, Toivonen and Viiri 2006). Lof et al. (2004, 2005) found *Hylobius abietis* strongly prefers Norway spruce (*Picea abies*) to deciduous tree species such as beech, oak, ash, cherry, lime, and maple. However, adults will feed on silver birch (*Betula pendula*) even when coniferous hosts are available (Toivonen and Viiri 2006). Borg-Karlson et al. (2006) list Scots pine (*Pinus sylvestris*) as the preferred host. When there is food of similar quality above and below ground, adult *H. abietis* prefer to feed underground (Wallertz et al. 2006).

| Host   | Reference  |
|--|--|
| <i>Acer platanoides</i> (Norway maple)                   | (Lof et al. 2005)  |
| <i>Acer pseudoplatanus</i> (sycamore maple) <sup>1</sup> | (Manlove et al. 1997, Toivonen and Viiri 2006)   |
| <i>Alnus glutinosa</i> (European alder)                  | (Lof et al. 2004, Lof et al. 2005, Toivonen and Viiri 2006)  |
| <i>Betula</i> spp. (birch)                               | (Toivonen and Viiri 2006)  |
| <i>Betula pendula</i> (common silver birch) <sup>1</sup> | (Manlove et al. 1997, Lof et al. 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, Toivonen and Viiri 2006)  |
| <i>Calluna vulgaris</i> (heather)                        | (Wallertz et al. 2006)   |
| <i>Fagus sylvatica</i> (common beech)                    | (Lof et al. 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, Toivonen and Viiri 2006)   |
| <i>Fraxinus excelsior</i> (European ash) <sup>1</sup>    | (Manlove et al. 1997, Lof et al. 2004, Lof et al. 2005, Toivonen and Viiri 2006)   |
| <i>Larix</i> spp. (larch)                                | (Lof et al. 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Larix decidua</i> (European larch)                    | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Picea</i> spp. (spruce)                               | (Zumr and Starý 1992, Ciesla 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Picea abies</i> (Norway spruce)                       | (Manlove et al. 1997, Orlander and Nordlander 2003, Petersson and Orlander 2003, Lof et al. 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, Lof et al. |

| Host  | Reference   |
|---|---|
|   | (2005, Zas et al. 2006)   |
| <i>Picea stichensis</i> (Sitka spruce)              | (Moore et al. 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, Rose et al. 2006)   |
| <i>Pinus</i> spp. (pine)                            | (Zumr and Starý 1992, Ciesla 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus contorta</i> (lodgepole pine)              | (Bratt et al. 2001, Lindelöw and Björkman 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005, Dillon et al. 2006)   |
| <i>Pinus pinaster</i> (maritime pine)               | (Ciesla 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005, Zas et al. 2005, Zas et al. 2006)   |
| <i>Pinus strobus</i> (eastern white pine)           | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> (Scots pine)                | (Leather et al. 1994, Manlove et al. 1997, Bratt et al. 2001, Ciesla 2001, Hannerz et al. 2002, Petersson and Orlander 2003, Lof et al. 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, Heijari et al. 2005, Rose et al. 2005, Borg-Karlson et al. 2006, Dillon et al. 2006, Zas et al. 2006) |
| <i>Populus tremula x tremuloides</i> (hybrid aspen) | (Toivonen and Viiri 2006)   |
| <i>Prunus avium</i> (sweet cherry)                  | (Lof et al. 2004, Lof et al. 2005)  |
| <i>Prunus padus</i> (bird cherry)                   | (Toivonen and Viiri 2006)   |
| <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> (Douglas-fir)          | (Ciesla 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Quercus robur</i> (common oak)                   | (Lof et al. 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, Lof et al. 2005, Toivonen and Viiri 2006)   |
| <i>Salix</i> spp. (willow)                          | (Toivonen and Viiri 2006)   |
| <i>Tilia cordata</i> (lime)                         | (Lof et al. 2004, Lof et al. 2005)  |
| <i>Vaccinium myrtillus</i> (bilberry)               | (Toivonen and Viiri 2006, Wallertz et al. 2006)   |

1. Mortality of adults feeding on these species is greater than 70% (Manlove et al. 1997).

### Known Vectors

*H. abietis* is associated with a number of potentially pathogenic fungi including *Graphium canum*, *Heterobasidion annosum*, *Leptographium alethinum*, *L. procerum*, *L. wingfieldii*, and *Ophiostoma piliferum* (Viiri 2004). See 'Pest Importance.'

*Heterobasidion annosum* is a fungal pathogen of conifers, particularly pines and firs (Viiri 2004). Kadlec et al. (1992) found live spores of *H. annosum* on the body surface and in the excrement of *Hylobius abietis*. Larvae have also been found in *Pinus sylvestris* roots infected with *H. annosum* (Viiri 2004).

*Leptographium procerum*, a fungus associated with bark beetles and weevils, causes root decline in *Pinus strobus* and other conifers (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001). Its pathogenicity has been debated (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001). Spores of *L. procerum* are carried on the pronotum of male and female *H. abietis* (Viiri 2004). Leather et al. (1999) suggest *L. procerum* is transmitted by adults during feeding, leading to increased seedling mortality.

*Leptographium alethinum* has been isolated from galleries of *H. abietis* in the UK (Viiri 2004). In France, *Leptographium wingfieldii*, *Graphium canum*, and *Ophiostoma piliferum* have been isolated from newly emerged weevils (Viiri 2004).

### Known Distribution

| Location                 | Reference  |
|--------------------------|--|
| <b>Australasia</b>       |  |
| New Zealand <sup>1</sup> | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                                     |
| <b>Asia</b>              |  |
| Armenia                  | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                                     |
| Azerbaijan               | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                                     |
| China                    | (Ciesla 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005)                        |
| Georgia (Republic)       | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                                     |
| Japan                    | (Schwenke 1974, reviewed in CAB 2005)                      |
| Kazakhstan               | (Schwenke 1974, reviewed in CAB 2005)                      |
| Tajikistan               | (Schwenke 1974)  |
| Turkey                   | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                                     |
| <b>Europe</b>            |  |
| Austria                  | (Schwenke 1974, reviewed in CAB 2005)                      |
| Belarus                  | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                                     |
| Belgium                  | (Schwenke 1974, reviewed in CAB 2005)                      |
| British Isles            | (Ciesla 2001)  |
| Bulgaria                 | (Schwenke 1974, reviewed in CAB 2005)                      |
| Czech Republic           | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                                     |
| Czechoslovakia (former)  | (Schwenke 1974, Zúmr and Starý 1992, reviewed in CAB 2005) |
| Denmark                  | (Schwenke 1974, reviewed in CAB 2005)                      |
| England                  | (Schwenke 1974)  |
| Estonia                  | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                                     |

| Location    | Reference  |
|-------------|--|
| Finland     | (Schwenke 1974, reviewed in CAB 2005, Pitkanen et al. 2005)  |
| France      | (Schwenke 1974, Ciesla 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Germany     | (Schwenke 1974, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Hungary     | (Schwenke 1974, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Ireland     | (Schwenke 1974, Dillon et al. 2006)  |
| Italy       | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Latvia      | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Lithuania   | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Moldova     | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Netherlands | (Schwenke 1974, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Norway      | (Schwenke 1974, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Poland      | (Schwenke 1974, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Romania     | (Schwenke 1974, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Russia      | (Schwenke 1974, Ciesla 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Scotland    | (Schwenke 1974)  |
| Slovakia    | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Slovenia    | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Spain       | (Schwenke 1974, Ciesla 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Sweden      | (Schwenke 1974, Lof et al. 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, Nordlander et al. 2005, Wallertz et al. 2006) |
| Switzerland | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Ukraine     | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |

1. Formerly present (reviewed in CAB 2005).

### Potential Distribution within the United States

The known distribution of *H. abietis* suggests that the insect may be most closely associated with two biomes: (1) temperate broadleaf and mixed forests; and (2) temperate grasslands, savannahs, and shrublands. Both biomes occur in the contiguous United States and account for approximately 60% of the area, particularly in the East.

In a recent host analysis by USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST, most of the continental United States has a moderate to high density of hosts for *H. abietis*.

### Survey

**CAPS-Approved Method:**

The CAPS-approved method is a trap and lure combination. The trap is a multi-funnel trap. The lures are effective for 56 days (8 weeks).

Any of the following Trap Product Names in the IPHIS Survey Supply Ordering System may be used for this target:

Multi-funnel Trap, 12 Funnel, Wet

Multi-funnel Trap, 8 Funnel, Wet

The Lure Product Names are “Alpha Pinene UHR Lure” and “Ethanol Lure”

Beginning in 2012, the wet collection cup method will be the only method approved for use with multi-funnel (Lindgren) traps.

The release rate of this lure is highly temperature-dependent. However, CAPS has listed a conservative length of effectiveness that will be effective for even the warmest climates in the CAPS community.

**IMPORTANT:** Do not place lures for two or more target species in a trap unless otherwise recommended.

**Trap spacing:** When trapping for exotic wood-boring and bark beetles, separate traps with different lure combinations by at least 30 meters (98 feet).

**Literature-Based Method:**

Sampling for *Hylobius abietis* will be difficult, as newly emergent adults are proficient at avoiding traps (Moore 2001) and larvae are able to burrow into sandy soils (Nordenhem and Nordlander 1994, Nordlander et al. 2003b). Surveys should be undertaken in clear-cuttings where *Pinus sylvestris* or *Picea abies* have subsequently been planted, as the roots of conifer stumps provide a breeding ground for the weevils (Nordlander et al. 2003b). Adults will not leave a site once they have entered it (Rose et al. 2005). Nordlander et al. (2003a) found *H. abietis* is more likely to feed on trees toward the center of a clear-cutting, rather than on the edges.

**Pitfall traps:** Pitfall traps baited with  $\alpha$ -pinene and ethanol are often used to monitor populations of *H. abietis* (Mustaparta 1975, Zúmr and Starý 1992, Nordenhem and Nordlander 1994, Lof 2000, Schlyter 2004). These compounds are more attractive to larvae when used together, though ethanol alone will also attract *H. abietis* (Nordenhem and Nordlander 1994, Schlyter 2004). However,  $\alpha$ -pinene alone will not (Lindelöw et al. 1993). Larvae are able to migrate through sandy soils and orient themselves to host odors (Nordenhem and Nordlander 1994).

Bjorklund et al. (2003) used pitfall traps consisting of polyethylene terephthalate (PET) bottles with a wounded *Picea abies* seedling in the center. The bottles are filled to 6 cm from the top with water and a drop of detergent. Water and ethylene glycol are equally effective collecting fluids for *H. abietis* (Voolma and

Sibul 2006). Voolma and Sibul (2006) used a similar pitfall trap, but replaced the spruce seedling with a 6.5 ml vial of turpentine and ethanol (1:5 v/v).

Adults of *H. abietis* are attracted to volatiles from freshly-cut trees (Kindvall et al. 2000, Borg-Karlson et al. 2006) and are often seen swarming around sawmills where fresh conifer logs are processed (Schlyter 2004). *H. abietis* is also attracted to spruce turpentine, which contains  $\alpha$ -pinene,  $\beta$ -pinene, and 3-carene (Lindelöw et al. 1993).

No long-range aggregation or sex pheromones of *H. abietis* have been identified. Tilles et al. (1988) found a close-range mating stimulant in female and young male pine weevils, but it is unlikely that this sex attractant can be used for mass-trapping or mating disruption (Schlyter 2004).

Kalo and Nederstrom (1986) identified four female-specific compounds in the ovaries of adult *H. abietis*, but they appear to play a minor role in attracting males. To date, no work has been done to develop a pheromone-based trap for *H. abietis*.

**Emergence traps:** Moore (2001) developed a trap (Fig. 11) to collect newly emergent adults of *H. abietis* in clear-cuttings. The trap consists of a pyramid formed by four metal poles covered in fiberglass netting, which is placed over a cut stump. The net and poles are buried 15 cm deep in the soil. A drainpipe with two loops of copper foil is placed at the top and the foil loops are connected to two 9-V batteries in series. A funnel and a 3-L PET bottle are suspended by chains inside the trap. Additional details for the construction of a trap are provided by Moore (2001). When an adult emerges from the soil, it crawls up the netting and contacts the electrified copper loops. This causes the weevil to “feign death by becoming rigid” and fall into the collecting vessel (Moore 2001). This trap is effective at capturing all life stages of the weevil (Day et al. 2004).

**Suction traps:** Weevils can also be collected in suction traps (Solbreck and Gyldberg 1979) and trap logs (Manlove et al. 1997, Day et al. 2004). Day et al. (2004) recommend against the use of trap logs in favor of covered pitfall traps.

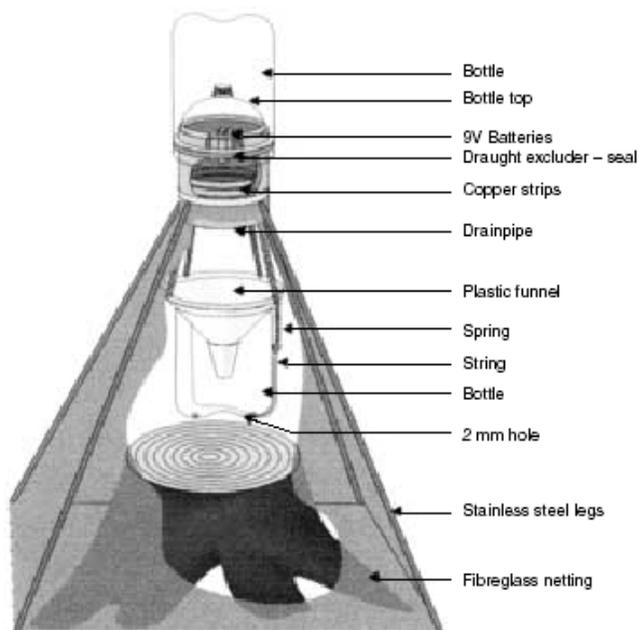


Fig. 11. Diagram of *H. abietis* emergence trap. Image reproduced from Moore (2001).

**Not Recommended:** Soil sampling can be performed in clear-cuttings. Larvae can be sampled within 10 cm of the soil surface and within 70 cm of host tree trunks (Day et al. 2004).

### Key Diagnostics

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

Confirmation of *H. abietis* is by morphological identification. *H. abietis* is a fairly large and very distinct pest. It will not likely be confused with any native weevils.

#### **Literature-Based Method:**

Identification depends on examination of adult morphological characters. No molecular tools are available to help with diagnosis.

### Easily Confused Pests

*Hylobius abietis* could be confused with the congeneric species *H. congener* and *H. pales*, which “fill a similar niche” (Drooz 1985, Leather et al. 1999, Petersson and Orlander 2003, Rose et al. 2005). Both *H. congener* and *H. pales* exist in the United States (Dixon and Foltz 1990, Nordlander et al. 2003b). *H. abietis* also closely resembles all *Pissodes* sp., particularly *P. castaneus* and *P. pini* (reviewed in CAB 2005). *H. abietis* may also be confused with *Pissodes* species, specifically *P. castaneus* and *P. pini*.

### References

- Bjorklund, N., G. Nordlander, and H. Bylund. 2003.** Host-plant acceptance on mineral soil and humus by the pine weevil *Hylobius abietis* (L.). *Agricultural and Forest Entomology* 5: 61-65.
- Borg-Karlson, A. K., R. Nordlander, A. Mudalige, H. Nordenhem, and C. R. Unelius. 2006.** Antifeedants in the feces of the pine weevil *Hylobius abietis*: Identification and biological activity. *Journal of Chemical Ecology* 32: 943-957.
- Bratt, K., K. Sunnerheim, H. Nordenhem, G. Nordlander, and B. Langstrom. 2001.** Pine weevil (*Hylobius abietis*) antifeedants from lodgepole pine (*Pinus contorta*). *Journal of Chemical Ecology* 27: 2253-2262.
- Bylund, H., G. Nordlander, and H. Nordenhem. 2004.** Feeding and oviposition rates in the pine weevil *Hylobius abietis* (Coleoptera: Curculionidae). *Bulletin of Entomological Research* 94: 307-317.
- CAB. 2005.** Crop Protection Compendium. CAB International. Available on-line at: <http://www.cabicompendium.org/cpc>. Accessed 18 October 2006.
- Ciesla, W. 2001.** EXFOR Database Pest Report: *Hylobius abietis*. USDA Forest Service. Available on-line at: <http://spfnic.fs.fed.us/exfor/data/pestreports.cfm?pestidval=85&langdisplay=english>. Accessed 18 October 2006.
- Day, K. R., G. Nordlander, M. Kenis, and G. Halldorson. 2004.** Biology and life cycles of bark weevils, pp. 331-349. *In* F. Lieutier, K. R. Day, A. Battisti, J. C. Gregoire and H. F. Evans [eds.], *Bark and Wood Boring Insects in*

- Living Trees in Europe, a Synthesis. Kluwer Academic Publishers, London.
- Dillon, A. B., D. Ward, M. J. Downes, and C. T. Griffin. 2006.** Suppression of the large pine weevil *Hylobius abietis* (L.) (Coleoptera: Curculionidae) in pine stumps by entomopathogenic nematodes with different foraging strategies. *Biological Control* 38: 217-226.
- Dixon, W. N., and J. L. Foltz. 1990.** Pine reproduction weevils, *Hylobius pales* (Herbst) & *Pachylobius picivorus* (Germar) (Coleoptera: Curculionidae). Florida Department of Agriculture and Consumer Services, Division of Plant Industry.
- Drooz, A. T. 1985.** Insects of Eastern Forests. USDA Forest Service, Washington, D.C.
- Guslits, I. S. 1968.** Morphological and physiological description of the pine weevil, *Hylobius abietis* L. (Coleoptera, Curculionidae), during the period of maturation and oviposition. *Entomological Review* 47: 52-55.
- Hannerz, M., A. Thorsen, S. Mattsson, and J. Weslien. 2002.** Pine weevil (*Hylobius abietis*) damage to cuttings and seedlings of Norway spruce. *Forest Ecology and Management* 160: 11-17.
- Heijari, J., A. M. Nerg, P. Kainulainen, H. Viiri, M. Vuorinen, and J. K. Holopainen. 2005.** Application of methyl jasmonate reduces growth but increases chemical defence and resistance against *Hylobius abietis* in Scots pine seedlings. *Entomologia Experimentalis et Applicata* 115: 117-124.
- Jacobs, K., and M. J. Wingfield. 2001.** *Leptographium* species: tree pathogens, insect associates and agents of blue-stain. APS Press, St. Paul.
- Kadlec, Z., P. Stary, and V. Zumr. 1992.** Field evidence for the large pine weevil, *Hylobius abietis* as a vector of *Heterobasidion annosum*. *European Journal of Forest Pathology* 22: 316-318.
- Kalo, P., and A. Nederstrom. 1986.** Female-specific compounds in the ovaries of the large pine weevil, *Hylobius abietis* L (Coleoptera, Curculionidae). *Annales Entomologici Fennici* 52: 95-&.
- Kindvall, O., G. Nordlander, and H. Nordenhem. 2000.** Movement behaviour of the pine weevil *Hylobius abietis* in relation to soil type: an arena experiment. *Entomologia Experimentalis Et Applicata* 95: 53-61.
- Leather, S. R., S. I. Ahmed, and L. Hogan. 1994.** Adult feeding preferences of the large pine weevil, *Hylobius abietis* L (Coleoptera, Curculionidae). *European Journal of Entomology* 91: 385-389.
- Leather, S. R., K. R. Day, and A. N. Salisbury. 1999.** The biology and ecology of the large pine weevil, *Hylobius abietis* (Coleoptera: Curculionidae): a problem of dispersal? *Bulletin of Entomological Research* 89: 3-16.
- Lekander, B. 1977.** Larval characters of Scandinavian *Hylobius* species (Coleoptera: Curculionidae). *Entomologica Scandinavica* 9: 129-134.
- Lekander, B., H. H. Eidmann, B. Bejer, and E. Kangas. 1985.** Time of oviposition and its influence on the development of *Hylobius abietis* (L) (Col, Curculionidae). *Journal of Applied Entomology* 100: 417-421.

- Lindelöw, Å., and C. Björkman. 2001.** Insects on lodgepole pine in Sweden - current knowledge and potential risks. *Forest Ecology and Management* 141: 107-116.
- Lindelöw, Å., H. H. Eidmann, and H. Nordenhem. 1993.** Response on the ground of bark beetle and weevil species colonizing conifer stumps and roots to terpenes and ethanol. *Journal of Chemical Ecology* 19: 1393-1403.
- Lof, M. 2000.** Influence of patch scarification and insect herbivory on growth and survival in *Fagus sylvatica* L., *Picea abies* L. Karst. and *Quercus robur* L. seedlings following a Norway spruce forest. *Forest Ecology and Management* 134: 111-123.
- Lof, M., G. Isacson, D. Rydberg, and N. T. Welander. 2004.** Herbivory by the pine weevil (*Hylobius abietis* L.) and short-snouted weevils (*Strophosoma melanogrammum* Forst. and *Otiorhynchus scaber* L.) during the conversion of a wind-thrown Norway spruce forest into a mixed-species plantation. *Forest Ecology and Management* 190: 281-290.
- Lof, M., R. Paulsson, D. Rydberg, and N. T. Welander. 2005.** The influence of different overstory removal on planted spruce and several broadleaved tree species: Survival, growth and pine weevil damage during three years. *Annals of Forest Science* 62: 237-244.
- Manlove, J. D., J. Styles, and S. R. Leather. 1997.** Feeding of the adults of the large pine weevil, *Hylobius abietis* (Coleoptera: Curculionidae). *European Journal of Entomology* 94: 153-156.
- Moore, R. 2001.** Emergence trap developed to capture adult large pine weevil *Hylobius abietis* (Coleoptera: Curculionidae) and its parasite *Bracon hylobii* (Hymenoptera: Braconidae). *Bulletin of Entomological Research* 91: 109-115.
- Moore, R., J. M. Brixey, and A. D. Milner. 2004.** Effect of time of year on the development of immature stages of the Large Pine Weevil (*Hylobius abietis* L.) in stumps of Sitka spruce (*Picea sitchensis* Carr.) and influence of felling date on their growth, density and distribution. *Journal of Applied Entomology* 128: 167-176.
- Mustaparta, H. 1975.** Behavioural responses of the pine weevil *Hylobius abietis* L. (Col.: Curculionidae) to odours activating different groups of receptor cells. *Journal of Comparative Physiology a-Neuroethology Sensory Neural and Behavioral Physiology* 102: 57-63.
- Nordenhem, H., and G. Nordlander. 1994.** Olfactory oriented migration through soil by root-living *Hylobius abietis* (L) larvae (Col, Curculionidae). *Journal of Applied Entomology* 117: 457-462.
- Nordlander, G., G. Orlander, and O. Langvall. 2003a.** Feeding by the pine weevil *Hylobius abietis* in relation to sun exposure and distance to forest edges. *Agricultural and Forest Entomology* 5: 191-198.
- Nordlander, G., H. Bylund, and N. Björklund. 2005.** Soil type and microtopography influencing feeding above and below ground by the pine weevil *Hylobius abietis*. *Agricultural and Forest Entomology* 7: 107-113.

- Nordlander, G., H. Bylund, G. Orlander, and K. Wallertz. 2003b.** Pine weevil population density and damage to coniferous seedlings in a regeneration area with and without shelterwood. *Scandinavian Journal of Forest Research* 18: 438-448.
- Orlander, G., and G. Nordlander. 2003.** Effects of field vegetation control on pine weevil (*Hylobius abietis*) damage to newly planted Norway spruce seedlings. *Annals of Forest Science* 60: 667-671.
- PaDIL. 2005.** Large Pine Weevil (*Hylobius abietis*). Pest and Disease Image Library (PaDIL). Available on-line at: <http://www.padil.gov.au/>. Accessed 12 February 2007.
- Petersson, M., and G. Orlander. 2003.** Effectiveness of combinations of shelterwood, scarification, and feeding barriers to reduce pine weevil damage. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 33: 64-73.
- Pitkanen, A., K. Tormanen, J. Kouki, E. Jarvinen, and H. Viiri. 2005.** Effects of green tree retention, prescribed burning and soil treatment on pine weevil (*Hylobius abietis* and *Hylobius pinastri*) damage to planted Scots pine seedlings. *Agricultural and Forest Entomology* 7: 319-331.
- Pye, A. E., and R. Claesson. 1981.** Oviposition of the large pine weevil, *Hylobius abietis* (Coleoptera, Curculionidae), in relation to the soil surface. *Annales Entomologici Fennici* 47: 21-24.
- Rose, D., S. R. Leather, and G. A. Matthews. 2005.** Recognition and avoidance of insecticide-treated Scots Pine (*Pinus sylvestris*) by *Hylobius abietis* (Coleoptera: Curculionidae): implications for pest management strategies. *Agricultural and Forest Entomology* 7: 187-191.
- Rose, D., G. A. Matthews, and S. R. Leather. 2006.** Sub-lethal responses of the large pine weevil, *Hylobius abietis*, to the pyrethroid insecticide lambda-cyhalothrin. *Physiological Entomology* 31: 316-327.
- Schlyter, F. 2004.** Semiochemicals in the life of bark feeding weevils, pp. 351-364. In F. Lieutier, K. R. Day, A. Battisti, J. C. Gregoire and H. F. Evans [eds.], *Bark and Wood Boring Insects in Living Trees in Europe*, a Synthesis. Kluwer Academic Publishers, London.
- Schwenke, W. 1974.** Die Forstschädlinge Europas: ein Handbuch in fünf Bänden. Paul Parey, Berlin.
- Solbreck, C. 1980.** Dispersal distances of migrating pine weevils, *Hylobius abietis*, Coleoptera - Curculionidae. *Entomologia Experimentalis Et Applicata* 28: 123-131.
- Solbreck, C., and B. Gyldberg. 1979.** Temporal flight pattern of the large pine weevil, *Hylobius abietis* L (Coleoptera, Curculionidae), with special reference to the influence of weather. *Journal of Applied Entomology* 88: 532-536.
- Tilles, D. A., H. H. Eidmann, and B. Solbreck. 1988.** Mating stimulant of the pine weevil *Hylobius abietis* (L). *Journal of Chemical Ecology* 14: 1495-1503.
- Toivonen, R., and H. Viiri. 2006.** Adult large pine weevils *Hylobius abietis* feed on silver birch *Betula pendula* even in the presence of conifer seedlings. *Agricultural and Forest Entomology* 8: 121-128.

- Viiri, H. 2004.** Fungi associated with *Hylobius abietis* and other weevils, pp. 381-393. In F. Lieutier, K. R. Day, A. Battisti, J. C. Gregoire and H. F. Evans [eds.], Bark and Wood Boring Insects in Living Trees in Europe, a Synthesis. Kluwer Academic Publishers, London.
- Wainhouse, D., R. Ashburner, and R. Boswell. 2001.** Reproductive development and maternal effects in the pine weevil *Hylobius abietis*. *Ecological Entomology* 26: 655-661.
- Wainhouse, D., R. Boswell, and R. Ashburner. 2004.** Maturation feeding and reproductive development in adult pine weevil, *Hylobius abietis* (Coleoptera: Curculionidae). *Bulletin of Entomological Research* 94: 81-87.
- Wallertz, K., G. Nordlander, and G. Orlander. 2006.** Feeding on roots in the humus layer by adult pine weevil, *Hylobius abietis*. *Agricultural and Forest Entomology* 8: 273-279.
- Zas, R., L. Sampedro, E. Prada, and J. Fernández-López. 2005.** Genetic variation of *Pinus pinaster* Ait. seedlings in susceptibility to the pine weevil *Hylobius abietis* L. *Annals of Forest Science* 62: 681-688.
- Zas, R., L. Sampedro, E. Prada, M. J. Lombardero, and J. Fernández-López. 2006.** Fertilization increases *Hylobius abietis* L. damage in *Pinus pinaster* Ait. seedlings. *Forest Ecology and Management* 222: 137-144.
- Zumr, V., and P. Starý. 1992.** The occurrence of the large pine weevil, *Hylobius abietis* (L), in individual forest zones. *Forest Ecology and Management* 51: 251-258.

## *Ips subelongatus*

E.E. Davis, E.M. Albrecht, and  
R.C. Venette

### Scientific Name

*Ips subelongatus* Motschulsky

### Synonyms:

*Ips fallax* Eggers  
(reviewed in CAB 2005)

### Common Names

Asian larch bark beetle, larch  
engraver beetle, larch bark beetle,  
oblong bark beetle

### Type of Pest

Bark- and cambium-boring beetle

### Taxonomic Position

**Kingdom:** Animalia, **Phylum:** Arthropoda, **Order:** Coleoptera,  
**Family:** Curculionidae, **Subfamily:** Scolytinae

### Reason for Inclusion in Manual

Previous CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2008)

### Pest Description

Adult (Fig. 13)

"The beetle has an elongated body, 4.5-6.0 mm long. It is brown or dark brown and covered with thick, long, yellow-grey hairs. Frons is covered with small grains, which change into dots on the vertex. Prothorax is not narrower than the elytra. The elytra are about one fifth longer than they are wide. The first half is covered with small denticles, the back half is covered with small dots. There are thick hairs on the front part and sides of the pronotum. The hairs are thin or absent in the middle of the back side. There is no middle strip along the back side of the pronotum. Elytra are characterized by parallel side edges. Their width is equal to the space between the base of the pronotum and the upper edge of the cavity situated on the slope of the elytra (area of thick hairs). Intervals between striae are wide and covered with a number of small thin dots and unclear cross-wrinkles. Sides of elytra and edges of the cavity on their posterior slope are covered with thick long hairs. Hairs of the front and middle parts of elytra are thinner and form small rows on intervals. The cavity is bright and covered with small dots and hairs. There are two hardly visible and isolated small rows formed by hairs close to the suture within the cavity. During the life of the beetles, hairs situated on the cavity break off. There are four well-developed

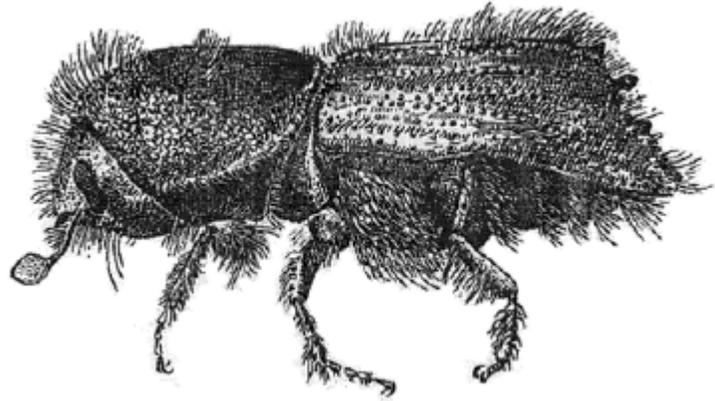


Fig. 13. Adult *Ips subelongatus*. Image from OEPP/EPPO (2005).

teeth on the edges of each side of the cavity. They are situated the same distance from each other. The third tooth is larger than the others.

*I. subelongatus* is variable morphologically. It is possible to find specimens in the same stand that differ in the length and width ratio of the elytra, in degree of hairiness, in size, and also in the location and number of teeth situated on cavity edges of elytra" (CAB 2005).

"The color of just emerged adult changes gradually from milky white to light yellow, yellow, dark brown and black-brown, and its elytrum have [sic] changes from soft to hard. Body length of adult is in range of 4.4-6.0 mm. Length of elytron is 1.5 times the pronotum and 1.6 times the two wings' width. There are four independent teeth along each side of wing covers, the first tooth is not very thin, and the distance between the 2nd tooth and 3rd tooth is maximum.

*Ips subelongatus* has no tumors [sic] in center of the lower part of forehead" (Gao et al. 2000).

### Egg

"Egg is in ellipse form, 1.1 mm in long diameter and 0.7 mm in short diameter, colored in milky white, a little transparent, and has luster" (Gao et al. 2000).

### Larva

"The aging larva is 4.2-6.5 mm in body length, with bending, more folds and bristles on back and presents in milky white. Its head shows gray yellow and yellow brown. Its forehead is in triangle type with a pair of antennas on it. There is a pair of aeropyles on prothorax and each abdominal segment from first to eighth" (Gao et al. 2000).

### Pupa

"Body length of pupa is 4.1-6.0 mm, colored in milky white. Feet and wings fold on abdomen. There are two spine-processus [sic] on the end of 9th abdomere" (Gao et al. 2000).

## **Biology and Ecology**

*Ips subelongatus* has 1-2 overlapping generations annually (Gao et al. 2000, reviewed in Orlinski 2004). Development from egg to adult requires 434 degree days (dd) above a temperature threshold of 8.9°C, while egg through pupa requires 310 dd above 8.6°C. Estimates for total development time are based on interpretation of data presented in Gao et al. (2000).

Little has been reported in Western literature about the biology and ecology of *I. subelongatus*. The following information has been compiled from reviews by Orlinski (2004, 2006), CAB (2005) and OEPP/EPPO (2005). *I. subelongatus* overwinters in the adult, pupal, and larval stages. Adults overwinter in pupal chambers, galleries, under the bark of fallen trees in contact with the ground, or in forest litter. Pupae and larvae overwinter inside the tree host. Adults may disperse in search of a new host or attack the same host repeatedly.

There are two flight periods, each lasting approximately 2-3 weeks depending on temperature. In its native range, the first and second flight periods occur in late spring to early summer (mid May to late June) and midsummer (late June to late July), respectively. Flight has been observed at daytime temperatures between 16-20°C. Adults are generally weak fliers and unlikely to disperse more than 1-2 km [ $\sim\frac{2}{3}$ –1½ mi]; however, their dispersal may be aided by wind (reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in OEPP/EPPO 2005).

Males initiate mating by boring a tunnel about 21 cm [8 in] (range, 9-35 cm [3½ - 14 in]) into the host tree (Gao et al. 2000). Attacks occur preferentially in deep crevices in the bark (Zhang et al. 1992). The male releases the aggregation pheromone ipsenol, which attracts 2-5 females (El-Sayed 2007, Zhang et al. 2007). Production of ipsenol and other volatile compounds varies across attack phases, peaking during the first 4 d following the start of boring. Concentrations of ipsenol reach a high of ~600 ng/male while the nuptial chamber is constructed (Zhang et al. 2000). Qiu et al. (1988) found male beetles start producing pheromone 4 hr after feeding on bark of *Larix dahurica* (= *L. gmelinii*). Ipsenol concentration decreases with multiple matings (Gao et al. 2000).

Adults mate multiple times in nuptial chambers. Females excavate 13-17 cm-long [5-6 in] galleries perpendicular to the nuptial chamber, usually with two galleries extending in one direction and one extending the opposite direction. The size and extent of galleries depends on tree health and population density (reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in OEPP/EPPO 2005). Females tend to make shorter galleries in more heavily-attacked trees (Zhang et al. 1992). Galleries of *Ips subelongatus* are similar to those excavated by *I. sexdentatus* (reviewed in CAB 2005). Eggs are deposited singly in notches along galleries extending from each side of the nuptial chamber. Females make up to 50 egg notches in each gallery, though eggs may not be deposited in each notch (reviewed in CAB 2005). Following mating and egg deposition, some adults will initiate a second flight and mate again. Oviposition lasts 3-4 days (Gao et al. 2000). Overwintered females deposit an average of 40 eggs (range, 30-120), while females in a subsequent generation within the same year deposit significantly fewer eggs (avg. 25). Some females die inside the gallery after oviposition (Gao et al. 2000).

Larvae create galleries perpendicular to maternal galleries and feed on cambial tissue (Gao et al. 2000, reviewed in Orlinski 2004). Larval galleries are filled with frass and wood fibers and are usually less than 5 cm [2 in] long (Gao et al. 2000, reviewed in CAB 2005). In China, the larval period lasts about 20 days in spring. In summer, it lasts 13 days (Gao et al. 2000).

Pupation takes 8 days and occurs in oval chambers at the end of larval galleries (Gao et al. 2000). Newly-eclosed adults maturation feed 10-16 days in the cambium before emerging from the tree (Gao et al. 2000). Young adults may

also feed on roots, in the crown, or on young shoots (reviewed in Orlinski 2004 and CAB 2005).

### **Pest Importance**

In its native range, *I. subelongatus* is considered a secondary pest of conifers, especially of mature, damaged, stressed trees or cut logs. However, this pest can attack apparently healthy, vigorous trees (reviewed in Stauffer et al. 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005, Zhang et al. 2007). This insect will repeatedly attack the same host plant, eventually causing death of the tree. In Asia and European Russia, *I. subelongatus* is an economically important pest of larch (*Larix* spp.). However, this pest may attack a wide variety of coniferous hosts in areas where larch also occurs. Periodically, populations outbreak. Areas with stressed trees are especially at risk (reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in OEPP/EPPO 2005).

Damage caused by this pest includes maturation feeding by adults on cambial tissue, roots, or tender young shoots of the crown, and cambial boring by adults and larvae. Boring damage disrupts the phloem and eventually causes tree death. Insect-damaged trees are also vulnerable to subsequent attack by secondary insects and pathogens. (Stauffer et al. 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in OEPP/EPPO 2005, Chung et al. 2006). Damage caused by this insect and secondary pests results in economic losses including reduced mature stand volume, wood quality, and log and timber value (reviewed in Orlinski 2004). Establishment of *I. subelongatus* in the United States would present a significant threat to forests and the forest products industry and likely result in domestic and/or international quarantines or requirements for additional treatment of potentially infested host materials (reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in OEPP/EPPO 2005).

Reduction or loss of mature conifers would negatively impact forest composition and displace native species. This would likely necessitate biological, chemical, and silvicultural control measures. Increased tree mortality may also increase the amount of trees available to fuel wildfires (reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in OEPP/EPPO 2005).

### **Symptoms**

Symptoms of *I. subelongatus* are typical of other bark beetles and longhorn beetles and may resemble some of the symptoms associated with tree decline. *I. subelongatus* typically attacks stressed, dying, or recently-cut trees but may also attack apparently healthy trees. External symptoms include yellow, brown, or reddish-brown foliage; pitch tubes and boring dust; exit holes; and resinosis on the bark surface (reviewed in Orlinski 2004). Internally, a network of galleries and chambers may be observed. Characteristic galleries are typically packed with frass and wood fibers. Several life stages of this insect may be found inside the tree (reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in OEPP/EPPO 2005).

### Known Hosts

*Ips subelongatus* prefers dead or dying *Larix* spp., but may attack other conifers (reviewed in Orlinski 2004). Of all *Ips* species, only *I. subelongatus* and *I. cembrae* are known to favor larch (reviewed in Orlinski 2004).

| Host   | Reference  |
|--|--|
| <i>Abies</i> spp. (fir)  | (reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, OEPP/EPPO 2005)  |
| <i>Larix</i> spp. (larch)  | (Gao et al. 2000, reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, OEPP/EPPO 2005, Zhang et al. 2007)                    |
| <i>Larix gmelinii</i> (= <i>L. dahurica</i> ) (Dahurian larch)   | (Qiu et al. 1988, Zhang et al. 1992, reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, OEPP/EPPO 2005, Zhang et al. 2007) |
| <i>Larix kaempferi</i> (= <i>L. leptolepis</i> ) (Japanese larch)  | (Stauffer et al. 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005, OEPP/EPPO 2005, Zhang et al. 2007)  |
| <i>Larix olgensis</i> (Olga Bay larch/Changbai larch)  | (reviewed in Orlinski 2004, OEPP/EPPO 2005, Zhang et al. 2007)   |
| <i>Larix principis-rupprechtii</i> (Prince Rupprecht larch)  | (Zhang et al. 2007)  |
| <i>Larix sibirica</i> (= <i>L. altaica</i> , <i>L. rossica</i> , <i>L. sukaczewii</i> ) (Siberian larch) | (reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, OEPP/EPPO 2005, Zhang et al. 2007)                                     |
| <i>Picea</i> spp. (spruce)   | (reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, OEPP/EPPO 2005)  |
| <i>Picea jezoensis</i> (Yeddo spruce)  | (Qiu et al. 1988)  |
| <i>Pinus</i> spp. (pine)   | (reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus koraiensis</i> (Korean pine)  | (Qiu et al. 1988, reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, OEPP/EPPO 2005)                                       |
| <i>Pinus sibirica</i> (Siberian pine)  | (reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, OEPP/EPPO 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> (Scots pine)   | (Qiu et al. 1988, reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, OEPP/EPPO 2005)                                       |

### Known Vectors

In Japan, *I. subelongatus* is associated with several fungi including *Ceratocystis laricicola* and *Ophiostoma breviusculum* (blue-stain fungi), known pathogens of larch (Stauffer et al. 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in OEPP/EPPO 2005, Chung et al. 2006).

### Known Distribution

*Ips subelongatus* is indigenous to Russia and East Asia (reviewed in Orlinski 2004) and is widely distributed through Siberia, the Russian Far East, and Japan (EPPO 2006). *I. subelongatus* can be found as far as 2000 m [~6600 ft] above sea level (reviewed in CAB 2005).

| Location                               | Reference  |
|--|--|
| <b>Asia</b>                            |  |
| China                                  | (Zhang et al. 1992, Gao et al. 2000, Stauffer et al. 2001, reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, OEPP/EPPO 2005, EPPO 2006) |
| Japan                                  | (Gao et al. 2000, Stauffer et al. 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005, OEPP/EPPO 2005, EPPO 2006, Zhang et al. 2007)                            |
| Korea, Democratic People's Republic of | (Gao et al. 2000, reviewed in CAB 2005, OEPP/EPPO 2005, EPPO 2006)   |
| Korea, Republic of                     | (Gao et al. 2000, reviewed in CAB 2005, OEPP/EPPO 2005, EPPO 2006)   |
| Mongolia                               | (reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, OEPP/EPPO 2005, EPPO 2006)   |
| <b>Europe</b>                          |  |
| Finland <sup>1</sup>                   | (reviewed in Orlinski 2004, OEPP/EPPO 2005)  |
| Russia                                 | (reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, OEPP/EPPO 2005, EPPO 2006)   |

1. Intercepted in 1985; not established (reviewed in Orlinski 2004, OEPP/EPPO 2005).

### Potential Distribution within the United States

The known distribution of *I. subelongatus* suggests that the insect may be most closely associated with two biomes, both of which occur in the United States: (1) temperate coniferous forests; and (2) temperate broadleaf and mixed forests. Collectively, these biomes account for approximately 47% of the area of the contiguous United States and are generally found east of the Mississippi River and scattered throughout the Intermountain West, the Pacific Northwest, and the Sierra-Nevada Mountains.

## Survey

### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

There is no CAPS-approved method for this species at this time.

### **Literature-Based Methods:**

**Baited traps:** To monitor populations of *I. subelongatus*, Zhang et al. (2000) recommend baiting traps with racemic ipsenol. Ipsenol [2-methyl-6-methylene-7-octen-4-ol] is frequently used as a pheromone in the genus *Ips* and is attractive to a number of other beetles (El-Sayed 2007). *I. subelongatus* is not attracted to  $\alpha$ -pinene,  $\beta$ -pinene, para-cymene, cis-verbenol, verbenone, or geranyl acetone; these compounds inhibit attraction to ipsenol (Zhang et al. 2000). A mixture of ipsenol, ipsdienol, and 3-methyl-3-buten-1-ol (331-MB) will attract the most *I. subelongatus*, but ipsenol alone is sufficient for monitoring purposes (Zhang et al. 2007).

Zhang et al. (2007) used Theysohn flight barrier traps baited with 20  $\mu$ l racemic ipsenol (1.4 mg/d release rate) in open polyethylene vials. The traps are arranged in a line with 10 m between traps and 30 m between lines.

**Visual inspection:** Visual inspection of trees is an effective method for detecting *Ips subelongatus*. Externally, affected trees generally exhibit resin flows, yellowed and wilted leaves, and dead or dying branches in the crown (reviewed in OEPP/EPPO 2005). The tree may also show pitch tubes, exit holes, and boring dust on the bark surface (reviewed in Orlinski 2004). *I. subelongatus* tends to invade the lower bole of dying trees, while it attacks the middle and upper boles in stressed hosts (reviewed in CAB 2005). Maternal galleries, nuptial chambers, and frass-filled maturation feeding galleries can be found under the bark. All life stages of the insect may be found inside the host. Hibernating adults may be found in feeding galleries, but more often they hibernate in soil and leaf litter at the base of trees (reviewed in CAB 2005).

## Key Diagnostics

### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

Has not been evaluated at this time.

### **Literature-Based Methods:**

Identification depends on examination of adult morphological characters. No molecular tools are available to help with diagnosis.

## Easily Confused Pests

*Ips subelongatus* may be confused with the morphologically similar *I. cembrae* (OEPP/EPPO 2005). Many authors consider *I. subelongatus*, along with several other species of *Ips*, to be synonyms of *I. cembrae* (Stauffer et al. 2001, reviewed in Orlinski 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, OEPP/EPPO 2005). However, recent phylogenetic studies have shown *I. subelongatus* and *I. cembrae* to be distinct species (Stauffer et al. 2001). Differences in responsiveness to the aggregation

pheromones ipsdienol and 331-MB further support the separation of the two species. Ipsenol, ipsdienol, and 331-MB are attractive to *I. cembrae* while *I. subelongatus* responds only to ipsenol (Zhang et al. 2007).

## References

- CAB. 2005.** Crop Protection Compendium. CAB International. Available on-line at: <http://www.cabicompendium.org/cpc>. Accessed 1 June 2007.
- Chung, W., J. Kim, Y. Yamaoka, A. Uzunovic, H. Masuya, and C. Breuil. 2006.** *Ophiostoma breviusculum* sp. nov. (Ophiostomatales, Ascomycota) is a new species in the *Ophiostoma piceae* complex associated with bark beetles infesting larch in Japan. *Mycologia* 98: 801-814.
- El-Sayed, A. M. 2007.** Semiochemical - ipsenol. The Pherobase: Database of Insect Pheromones and Semiochemicals. Available on-line at: <http://www.pherobase.net>. Accessed 8 June 2007.
- EPPO. 2006.** Distribution map of quarantine pests for Europe: *Ips subelongatus*. European and Mediterranean Plant Protection Organization. Available on-line at: Accessed
- Gao, C. Q., S. H. Sun, X. G. Ren, Y. Z. Niu, L. W. Song, and Y. S. Zhang. 2000.** Study on biological and ecological characteristics of *Ips subelongatus* Motsch. *Journal of Forestry Research* 11: 114-118.
- OEPP/EPPO. 2005.** *Ips cembrae* and *Ips subelongatus*. *Bulletin OEPP* 35: 445-449.
- Orlinski, A. D. 2004.** EXFOR Database Pest Report: *Ips subelongatus*. USDA Forest Service. Available on-line at: <http://spfnic.fs.fed.us/exfor/data/pestreports.cfm?pestidval=132&langdisplay=english>. Accessed 4 January 2007.
- Orlinski, A. D. 2006.** Outcomes of the EPPO project on quarantine pests for forestry. *Bulletin OEPP* 36: 497-511.
- Qiu, H. G., W. J. Fu, Y. T. Qi, L. F. He, and X. D. Ling. 1988.** Studies on the aggregation pheromone of *Ips subelongatus*. II. The relationship between aggregation behaviour and its host plant tree. *Contributions from Shanghai Institute of Entomology* 8: 67-72.
- Stauffer, C., T. Kirisits, C. Nussbaumer, R. Pavlin, and M. J. Wingfield. 2001.** Phylogenetic relationships between the European and Asian eight spined larch bark beetle populations (Coleoptera, Scolytidae) inferred from DNA sequences and fungal associates. *European Journal of Entomology* 98: 99-105.
- Zhang, Q. H., J. A. Byers, and F. Schlyter. 1992.** Optimal attack density in the larch bark beetle, *Ips cembrae* (Coleoptera: Scolytidae). *Journal of Applied Ecology* 29: 672-678.
- Zhang, Q. H., G. Birgersson, F. Schlyter, and G. F. Chen. 2000.** Pheromone components in the larch bark beetle, *Ips cembrae*, from China: quantitative variation among attack phases and individuals. *Journal of Chemical Ecology* 26: 841-858.
- Zhang, Q. H., F. Schlyter, G. Chen, and Y. Wang. 2007.** Electrophysiological and behavioral responses of *Ips subelongatus* to semiochemicals from its

hosts, non-hosts, and conspecifics in China. *Journal of Chemical Ecology*  
33: 391-404.

## ***Monochamus alternatus***

E.E. Davis, E.M. Albrecht, and R.C. Venette

### **Scientific Name**

*Monochamus alternatus* Hope

### **Synonyms:**

*Monochamus tesserula* White  
*Monochammus tesserula*  
*Monohammus alternatus*  
*Monohammus tesserula* White  
(Duffy 1968, reviewed in CAB 2005)

### **Common Names**

Japanese pine sawyer, pine sawyer beetle, rusty pine longhorn

### **Type of Pest**

Bark, cambium, and sapwood-boring beetle

### **Taxonomic Position**

**Kingdom:** Animalia, **Phylum:** Arthropoda, **Order:** Coleoptera, **Family:** Cerambycidae, **Subfamily:** Lamiinae

### **Reason for Inclusion in Manual**

CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2013)

### **Pest Description**

#### **Adult** (Fig. 14)

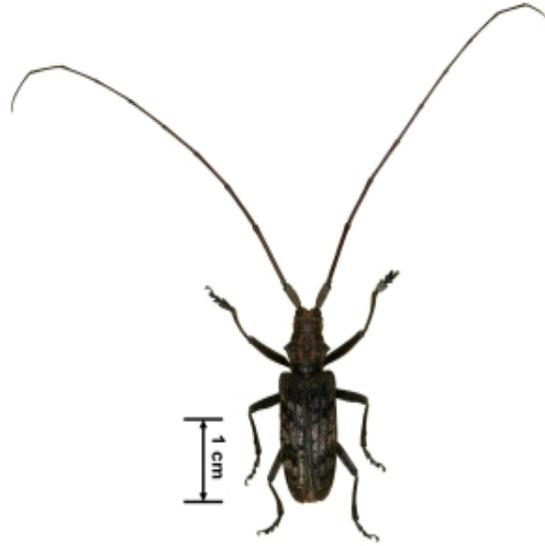
“Adults are 15-28 mm in length and range from 4.5-9.5 mm wide. Females are larger than males but males have longer antennae. Males have antennae 2x the body length and females have antennae 1.3x the body length. The base part of the first, second and third antennal segments have grayish hairs. There are two orange stripes on the protergum, interlaced with three narrower black stripes. The elytra have five longitudinal bands of black and gray rectangular spots” (Ciesla 2001).

#### **Egg**

“Eggs are about 4 mm long, milk white in color and sickle shaped” (Ciesla 2001).

#### **Larva**

“Larvae are white, opaque legless grubs, averaging 43 mm in length when mature with an amber colored head capsule and black mouthparts” (Ciesla 2001).



UGA2154047

Fig. 14. Adult male *Monochamus alternatus*.  
Image by Christopher Pierce,  
<http://www.bugwood.org>

## Pupa

“Pupae are white, opaque and cylindrical, 20-26 mm long” (Ciesla 2001).

## **Biology and Ecology**

*M. alternatus* is a major vector of the pine wood nematode *Bursaphelenchus xylophilus*, which transmits the bacterium *Pseudomonas* sp., a causal agent in pine wilt disease in Asia. When adult beetles feed to mature reproductively, they move juvenile nematodes from host to host (reviewed in Togashi and Sekizuka 1982).

*M. alternatus* has 1-3 generations annually (Kozima and Katagiri 1964, reviewed in CAB 2005). With the exception of a brief period for adult dispersal and maturation feeding, this long-horned beetle spends the majority of its life within a tree. Estimates for total development time are calculated from information reviewed in Kobayashi et al. (1984) and CAB (2005).

Adults emerge in spring to early fall, depending on climate, and fly to a suitable host (Ikeda et al. 1980, reviewed in Hanks 1999, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005). Males emerge before females. *M. alternatus* is attracted to stressed, recently-felled, or *Bursaphelenchus xylophilus*-infested pines (Ikeda et al. 1980, Sakai and Yamasaki 1990, reviewed in Hanks 1999, Anbutsu and Togashi 2001, 2002, reviewed in CAB 2005, Fan et al. 2007). Adults can disperse several kilometers, though most will not fly more than a few hundred meters (reviewed in Kishi 1995, CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005). Populations of *M. alternatus* can spread up to 20 km/yr, based on the change in distribution of trees infested with *B. xylophilus* (reviewed in Kishi 1995). Young adults may move up to 40 m/week [130 ft] within a stand of pine (reviewed in CAB 2005). However, Shibata (1986) found adult *M. alternatus* traveled only about 10 m [33 ft] on average during their lifetime in a healthy stand; observations for individual beetles ranged from 0-59 m [0-194 ft]. Adults generally disperse from diseased to healthy trees before sunrise (Shibata 1986, reviewed in Kishi 1995). Adults are also more active when sexually immature (Ito 1982, reviewed in CAB 2005). Dispersal may be aided by wind (reviewed in CAB 2005).

In its native range, larvae are the primary overwintering stage (Kozima and Katagiri 1964) and re-initiate development in early spring.. The initial sex ratio of newly emerged adults is 1 male:1 female but females significantly outnumber males by the end of the season (reviewed in Togashi and Magira 1981, reviewed in CAB 2005). Before adults reproduce, they will maturation feed during the day on the bark of tender young shoots (current year to two-year old growth) (reviewed in Hanks 1999) for 5-30 days (reviewed in Fauziah et al. 1987, reviewed in CAB 2005, Fan and Sun 2006). The duration and extent of maturation feeding is influenced by temperature (Hanks 1999) Mating and oviposition occur at night (reviewed in Fauziah et al. 1987). Males attract females by emitting a pheromone. Mating behavior in males is triggered by a

contact pheromone produced on the body surfaces of both sexes (Kim et al. 1992). Adults are polygamous and copulate repeatedly with each mate (Fauziah et al. 1987). Adults survive 70-125 days under natural conditions and 100 days, on average, under laboratory conditions at a temperature of 25°C [77°F] (reviewed in Kobayashi et al. 1984).

Oviposition occurs over 20-30 days, peaking approximately 45 days after adult emergence (reviewed in Hanks 1999). The length of the oviposition period varies considerably depending on the extent of host tree decline. In early to mid-summer, the oviposition period is 1-2 months; in late summer and fall, it lasts 1-4 weeks (reviewed in CAB 2005). During oviposition, the female chews slits in the bark, deposits an egg per slit, and injects the wounds with a gel-like substance (Fauziah et al. 1987, Li and Zhang 2006). The gel deters conspecific females from depositing eggs in trees with numerous oviposition scars. The presence of larvae in a tree is a stronger deterrent than the presence of eggs alone (Anbutsu and Togashi 1996, 2001, 2002). Volatiles present in larval frass inhibit oviposition (Li and Zhang 2006). Females deposit >60% fewer eggs than normal when exposed to frass volatiles (Li and Zhang 2006). For oviposition to occur, air temperatures must be at least 21.3°C [70°F] (reviewed in Hanks 1999). The number of oviposition scars per tree decreases as the season and state of tree decline progress (reviewed in CAB 2005).

Eggs are deposited preferentially on parts of the host with thin bark (reviewed in Hanks 1999). Each female lays 60 to 200 or more eggs (reviewed in Hanks 1999, reviewed in Ciesla 2001). Egg development requires 65-89 degree days (dd) above 12.7-13°C, respectively (reviewed in Hanks 1999, reviewed in CAB 2005).

Larvae complete four to five instars before pupating (reviewed in Ciesla 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005). Early instar larvae feed on the nutrient-rich cambial tissue beneath the bark. Later instars tunnel into the phloem and sapwood, but may not necessarily feed on xylem (reviewed in Hanks 1999). Larvae construct galleries that become packed with frass and wood fibers as they feed. Frass and wood shavings are expelled through slits cut in the bark surface. Larvae overwinter in diapause (reviewed in CAB 2005). Diapause is probably facultative because larvae reared at a constant 30°C successfully completed development. To break diapause larvae must be exposed to cold of at least 5-15°C (reviewed in Togashi 1991). Final instars make U- to oval-shaped pupal chambers which may be plugged with wood borings (reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Hanks 1999, Cram and Hanson 2004).

The pupal stage occurs over a period of 17 to 19 days; typically requiring 187 dd above 10.6°C [51°F] (reviewed in Hanks 1999). Newly-eclosed adult beetles bore round exit holes and emerge from the host tree. Immature (callow) adults must feed 1-4 weeks before reaching sexual maturation (reviewed in Kishi 1995, reviewed in Hanks 1999, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005).

After 500-540 dd above 11.9-12.5°C [53-55°F], 50% of overwintering larvae will complete development and emerge as adults (Kobayashi et al. 1984).

### Pest Importance

*M. alternatus* is often considered a beneficial decomposer of conifers and not a pest of economic importance (reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2001). Adults cause damage by feeding on shoots (preferably one- to two-year old growth) and creating oviposition sites; larvae disrupt phloem as they feed (CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Hanks 1999, reviewed in CAB 2005, Fan and Sun 2006). This damage typically occurs on trees stressed from other causes.

### Symptoms

External signs of infestation include round emergence holes ~9 mm [1/3 in] in diameter and oviposition scars on the bark. Inside a tree, larvae construct S-shaped and vertical galleries packed with frass and shredded wood. Larvae also create small slits in the bark through which the frass mixture is expressed. Prior to pupation, final-instar larvae make oval-shaped holes which they may plug with wood borings. Pupal chambers are U-shaped and are found in the xylem. All life stages may be present under the bark and mature adults can be found feeding on the bark of stressed trees and recently cut logs (reviewed in Kishi 1995, CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cram and Hanson 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005).

Pine wilt disease caused by *B. xylophilus* is characterized by decreased resin production, chlorosis, and wilting of needles. Chlorosis and wilting may initially occur on a single branch and then spread to the rest of the tree (reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997). Tree decline and death can occur in heavily infected trees in one growing season; crowns of infected trees turn from green to reddish-brown (Mamiya 1988).

### Known Hosts

*Monochamus alternatus* is primarily a pest of pine, but will feed on a number of other plants in the families Pinaceae and Cupressaceae (reviewed in Ciesla 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005). In Japan, *P. densiflora* and *P. thunbergii* are heavily attacked (Kobayashi et al. 1984, Fauziah et al. 1987, Mamiya 1988, Togashi 1990, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cesari et al. 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005). In China, the preferred host is *P. massoniana* (Fan et al. 2007, Li et al. 2007). Females prefer to oviposit in stressed trees (Fan et al. 2007) and the larvae are often found in recently killed or cut trees (Anbutsu and Togashi 1996, Togashi et al. 1997).

| Host                    | Reference   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <i>Abies</i> spp. (fir) | (Duffy 1968, CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cesari et al. 2004, Fan and Sun 2006) |

| Host   | Reference  |
|--|--|
| <i>Abies fabri</i> (Faber fir)   | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Abies firma</i> (momomi fir)  | (Duffy 1968, Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Acer</i> spp. (maple) <sup>1</sup>  | (Kishi 1995)   |
| <i>Cedrus</i> spp. (true cedar)  | (Duffy 1968, CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Fan and Sun 2006)  |
| <i>Cedrus deodara</i> (Himalayan cedar) <sup>2</sup>   | (Duffy 1968, Kishi 1995, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Fan and Sun 2006)  |
| <i>Cryptomeria</i> spp. (Japanese cedar) <sup>3</sup>  | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001)  |
| <i>Cunninghamia sinensis</i>   | (Duffy 1968)   |
| <i>Fagus</i> spp. (beech)  | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001)  |
| <i>Ginkgo biloba</i> (maidenhair tree)   | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001)  |
| <i>Juniperus</i> spp. (juniper) <sup>1</sup>   | (Kishi 1995)   |
| <i>Larix</i> spp. (larch)  | (Duffy 1968, CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cesari et al. 2004, Fan and Sun 2006)  |
| <i>Larix gmelinii</i> (Dahurian larch)   | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Larix kaempferi</i> (= <i>L. leptolepis</i> ) (Japanese larch)                                | (Kishi 1995, reviewed in Ciesla 2001)  |
| <i>Liquidambar</i> spp. (sweetgum)   | (Duffy 1968)   |
| <i>Malus</i> spp. (apple)  | (Fan and Sun 2006)   |
| <i>Metasequoia</i> spp. (dawn redwood) <sup>2</sup>  | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001)  |
| <i>Picea</i> spp. (spruce)   | (Duffy 1968, CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cesari et al. 2004, Fan and Sun 2006)  |
| <i>Picea abies</i> (= <i>P. excelsa</i> ) (common spruce)  | (Duffy 1968, Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Picea asperata</i> (dragon spruce)  | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Picea jezoensis</i> var. <i>hondoensis</i> (Hondo spruce)                                     | (Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Picea smithiana</i> (= <i>P. morinda</i> , = <i>Abies smithiana</i> ) (West Himalayan spruce) | (Duffy 1968, Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus</i> spp. (pine)   | (CABI/EPPO 1997, Fan and Sun 2006)   |
| <i>Pinus banksiana</i> (jack pine)   | (Duffy 1968, Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus bungeana</i> (lace bark pine)   | (Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus densiflora</i> (Japanese red pine)  | (Duffy 1968, Ikeda et al. 1980, Togashi and Sekizuka 1982, Kobayashi et al. 1984, Fauziah et al. 1987, Mamiya 1988, Togashi 1991, Kishi 1995, Yamasaki et al. 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Aikawa et al. |

| Host   | Reference   |
|--|---|
|  | 2003, Cesari et al. 2004)   |
| <i>Pinus echinata</i> (shortleaf pine)                           | (Kishi 1995)  |
| <i>Pinus elliotii</i> (slash pine)                               | (Kishi 1995, reviewed in Ciesla 2001)   |
| <i>Pinus engelmannii</i> (Apache pine)                           | (Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus greggii</i> (Gregg's pine)                              | (Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus kesiya</i> (= <i>Pinus insularis</i> )<br>(khasya pine) | (reviewed in Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus koraiensis</i> (fruit pine)                             | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus leiophylla</i> (smooth-leaved pine)                     | (Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus luchuensis</i> (Luchu pine)                             | (Kishi 1995, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Aikawa et al. 2003, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus massoniana</i> (masson pine)                            | (Duffy 1968, Kishi 1995, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Fan and Sun 2006, Li et al. 2007)   |
| <i>Pinus nigra</i> (black pine)                                  | (Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus oocarpa</i> (ocote pine)                                | (Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus palustris</i> (longleaf pine)                           | (Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus parviflora</i> (Japanese white pine)                    | (Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus pinaster</i> (maritime pine)                            | (Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus ponderosa</i> (ponderosa pine)                          | (Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus radiata</i> (radiata pine)                              | (Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus strobus</i> (eastern white pine)                        | (Duffy 1968, Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus taeda</i> (loblolly pine)                               | (Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus taiwanensis</i> (Taiwan pine)                           | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus thunbergii</i> (Japanese black pine)                    | (Togashi and Sekizuka 1982, Kobayashi et al. 1984, Fauziah et al. 1987, Mamiya 1988, Togashi 1990, 1991, Kishi 1995, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Aikawa et al. 2003, Cesari et al. 2004, Fan and Sun 2006) |
| <i>Pinus yunnanensis</i> (Yunnan pine)                           | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |

1. Questionable host record (Kishi 1995).
2. Listed as a non-host species by Li et al. (2007).
3. May not be a valid host (Kishi 1995, reviewed in CAB 2005).

### Known Vectors

*M. alternatus* is a vector of the pine wood nematode, *Bursaphelenchus xylophilus*. *B. xylophilus* is indigenous to North America and is not known to be pathogenic to conifers in its native range (reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cram and Hanson 2004). *M. alternatus* also vectors *B. mucronatus* and *B. kolymensis*. These nematodes are native to Asia and are not known to occur in North America. The pathogenicity of these and other

Eurasian nematode species to North American pines is not currently known (reviewed in Ciesla 2001).

**Known Distribution**

*Monochamus alternatus* is native to the Far East and is generally found at elevations ≤1050 m [~3450 ft] above sea level (Kobayashi et al. 1984, Kishi 1995).

| Location           | Reference   |
|--------------------|---|
| <b>Asia</b>        |   |
| China              | (Duffy 1968, Kobayashi et al. 1984, Kishi 1995, CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cesari et al. 2004, Fan and Sun 2006, Li et al. 2007)  |
| Japan              | (Duffy 1968, Ikeda et al. 1980, Togashi and Sekizuka 1982, Kobayashi et al. 1984, Fauziah et al. 1987, Mamiya 1988, Togashi 1990, 1991, Kishi 1995, CABI/EPPO 1997, Togashi et al. 1997, Yamasaki et al. 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cesari et al. 2004) |
| Korea, Republic of | (Kobayashi et al. 1984, Kishi 1995, CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cesari et al. 2004)  |
| Laos               | (Kobayashi et al. 1984, Kishi 1995, CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cesari et al. 2004)  |
| Vietnam            | (Kishi 1995, CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cesari et al. 2004)   |

**Potential Distribution within the United States**

The known distribution of *M. alternatus* suggests that the insect may be most closely associated with two biomes, both of which occur in the United States: (1) temperate broadleaf and mixed forests; and (2) tropical and subtropical moist broadleaf forests. Collectively, these biomes account for approximately 28% of the area of the contiguous United States and are generally found east of the Mississippi River.

In a recent risk analysis by USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST, most of the continental United States has a low to moderate risk of *M. alternatus* establishment. Areas of the southeast and southwest have the highest risk for establishment of *M. alternatus*.

## Survey

### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

The CAPS-approved method is a trap and lure combination. The trap is a multi-funnel trap. The lure is effective for 56 days (8 weeks).

Any of the following Trap Product Names in the IPHIS Survey Supply Ordering System may be used for this target:

- Multi-funnel Trap, 12 Funnel, Wet
- Multi-funnel Trap, 8 Funnel, Wet

The Lure Product Names are “Alpha Pinene UHR Lure” and “Ethanol Lure.”

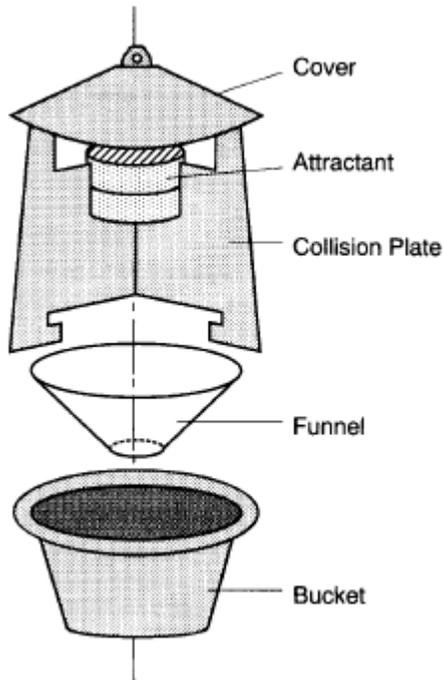


Fig. 15. Modified crossvane trap used by Nakamura et al. (1999) to capture adult *Monochamus alternatus*.

Beginning in 2012, the wet collection cup method will be the only method approved for use with multi-funnel (Lindgren) traps.

For 2012, ethanol has been added to the approved lure combination. Ethanol has been shown to have a synergistic effect on the most attractive compound, the alpha-pinene. There are two alpha pinene products available in the IPHIS Ordering Database: 1) Alpha Pinene Lure and 2) Alpha Pinene UHR Lure. The Alpha Pinene Lure is an un-gelled lure in a bottle dispenser that is used by the PPQ Program for *Tomicus piniperda* (pine shoot beetle). This lure should only be used for the program survey.

The Alpha Pinene UHR Lure is a polysleeve, ultra-high release dispenser used for other EWB/BB targets. This lure should be used with the Ethanol Lure for the following two EWB/BB targets: *Monochamus alternatus* and *Tomicus destruens*.

The release rates of these lures are highly temperature-dependent. However, CAPS has listed a conservative length of effectiveness that will be effective for even the warmest climates in the CAPS community.

**IMPORTANT:** Placing lures for two or more target species in a trap should never be done unless otherwise recommended.

**Trap spacing:** When trapping for EWB/BB, separate traps with different lure combinations by at least 30 meters (98 feet).

### **Literature-Based Methods:**

**Visual Inspection:** Visual inspection of trees is of some, but limited, utility in the detection of *M. alternatus*, as the insect completes the majority of its life cycle beneath the bark. Surveys should focus on the presence of round emergence holes or small slits in the surface of the bark. If bark can be removed, larval galleries, pupal chambers, or any of the life stages might be observed. can indicate the presence of the insect (reviewed in Kishi 1995, CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cram and Hanson 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005).

In Japan, researchers have used aerial color infrared photography to survey dead pines potentially killed by *B. xylophilus*. This may be useful for surveying for insect vectors including *M. alternatus*, but many other biotic and abiotic factors can influence pine mortality (reviewed in Kishi 1995).

**Trapping:** To collect adult *Monochamus alternatus*, Nakamura et al. (1999) used commercial crossvane traps with a funnel and a bucket placed at the bottom (Fig. 15). The traps did not employ a killing agent and about a third of the collected beetles escaped per day. Soapy water is an effective trapping agent (de Groot and Nott 2001). Polyethylene glycol should also be an effective trapping agent and will preserve specimens. De Groot and Nott (2003) suggest *Monochamus* spp. may be attracted to the traps themselves rather than the attractants in the traps.

**Not Recommended:** Adults are attracted to monoterpenes and ethanol from stressed, recently felled, and *B. xylophilus*-infested pines (Ikeda et al. 1980, Sakai and Yamasaki 1990, Anbutsu and Togashi 2001, 2002, reviewed in CAB 2005, Fan et al. 2007). Fan et al. (2007) found (+)- $\alpha$ -pinene to be extremely attractive to gravid adult female *M. alternatus*. The addition of ethanol enhanced attractiveness, but the presence of other monoterpenes [(-)- $\beta$ -pinene, (+)-3-carene, limonene, and terpinolene], except in very low concentrations, reduced it (Fan and Sun 2006, Fan et al. 2007). Young females (pre-oviposition) were not attracted to any of the volatiles tested by Fan et al. (2007). Adult females are also attracted to (+)-juniperol and (+)-pimaral (Sakai and Yamasaki 1990), both of which are masked by a compound isolated from healthy pines [(-)-germacrene D] (Yamasaki et al. 1997). Sakai and Yamasaki (1991) identified a male-specific pheromone [(+)-*cis*-3-pinen-2-ol] from paraquat-treated, resin-soaked pinewood. None of these compounds has been used to detect or monitor *Monochamus alternatus* populations in Japan. Future research may reveal ways to use these compounds for detection surveys.

### **Key Diagnostics**

### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

Confirmation of *M. alternatus* is by morphological identification.

### **Literature-Based Methods:**

Identification depends on examination of adult morphological characters. No molecular tools are available to help with diagnosis.

### **Easily Confused Pests**

One hundred fifty species of *Monochamus* are known from the Holarctic region, with about 10 indigenous to North America (CABI/EPPO 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2001). *M. alternatus* resembles *M. carolinensis* and *M. titillator*, both of which are native North American species (reviewed in Ciesla 2001).

### **References**

- Aikawa, T., K. Togashi, and H. Kosaka. 2003.** Differential developmental responses of virulent and avirulent isolates of the pinewood nematode, *Bursaphelenchus xylophilus* (Nematoda: Aphelenchoididae), to the insect vector, *Monochamus alternatus* (Coleoptera: Cermabycidae). *Environmental Entomology* 32: 96-102.
- Anbutsu, H., and K. Togashi. 1996.** Deterred oviposition of *Monochamus alternatus* (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae) on *Pinus densiflora* bolts from oviposition scars containing eggs or larvae. *Applied Entomology and Zoology* 31: 481-488.
- Anbutsu, H., and K. Togashi. 2001.** Oviposition deterrent by female reproductive gland secretion in Japanese pine sawyer, *Monochamus alternatus*. *Journal of Chemical Ecology* 27: 1151-1161.
- Anbutsu, H., and K. Togashi. 2002.** Oviposition deterrence associated with larval frass of the Japanese pine sawyer, *Monochamus alternatus* (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). *Journal of Insect Physiology* 48: 459-465.
- CAB. 2005.** Crop Protection Compendium. CAB International. Available on-line at: <http://www.cabicompendium.org/cpc>. Accessed 1 June 2007.
- CABI/EPPO. 1997.** Quarantine Pests for Europe, 2nd Ed. CAB International, Wallingford, UK.
- Cesari, M., O. Marescalchi, V. Francardi, and B. Mantovani. 2004.** Taxonomy and phylogeny of European *Monochamus* species: first molecular and karyological data. *Journal of Zoological Systematics and Evolutionary Research* 43: 1-7.
- Ciesla, W. M. 2001.** EXFOR Database Pest Report: *Monochamus alternatus*. USDA Forest Service. Available on-line at: <http://spfnic.fs.fed.us/exfor/data/pestreports.cfm?pestidval=77&langdisplay=english>. Accessed 19 October 2006.
- Cram, M., and J. Hanson. 2004.** How to identify and manage pine wilt disease and treat wood products infested by the pinewood nematode. USDA Forest Service. NA-FR-01-04.

- de Groot, P., and R. Nott. 2001.** Evaluation of traps of six different designs to capture pine sawyer beetles (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). *Agricultural and Forest Entomology* 3: 107-111.
- de Groot, P., and R. Nott. 2003.** Response of *Monochamus* (Col., Cerambycidae) and some Buprestidae to flight intercept traps. *Journal of Applied Entomology* 127: 548-552.
- Duffy, E. A. J. 1968.** A Monograph of the Immature Stages of Oriental Timber Beetles (*Cerambycidae*). Trustees of the British Museum (Natural History), London.
- Fan, J. T., and J. H. Sun. 2006.** Influences of host volatiles on feeding behaviour of the Japanese pine sawyer, *Monochamus alternatus*. *Journal of Applied Entomology* 130: 238-244.
- Fan, J. T., J. H. Sun, and J. Shi. 2007.** Attraction of the Japanese pine sawyer, *Monochamus alternatus*, to volatiles from stressed host in China. *Annals of Forest Science* 64: 67-71.
- Fauziah, B. A., T. Hidaka, and K. Tabata. 1987.** The reproductive behavior of *Monochamus alternatus* Hope (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). *Applied Entomology and Zoology* 22: 272-285.
- Hanks, L. M. 1999.** Influence of the larval host plant on reproductive strategies of cerambycid beetles. *Annual Review of Entomology* 44: 483-505.
- Ikeda, T., N. Enda, A. Yamane, K. Oda, and T. Toyoda. 1980.** Attractants for the Japanese Pine Sawyer, *Monochamus alternatus* Hope (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). *Applied Entomology and Zoology* 15: 358-361.
- Ito, K. 1982.** The tethered flight of the Japanese pine sawyer, *Monochamus alternatus* Hope (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). *Journal of the Japanese Forestry Society* 64: 395-397.
- Kishi, Y. 1995.** The pine wood nematode and the Japanese pine sawyer. Thomas Company Limited, Tokyo.
- Kobayashi, F., A. Yamane, and T. Ikeda. 1984.** The Japanese pine sawyer beetle as the vector of pine wilt disease. *Annual Review of Entomology* 29: 115-135.
- Kozima, K., and K. Katagiri. 1964.** On the larval instar and changes of its composition of *Monochamus alternatus* Hope. *Journal of the Japanese Forestry Society* 46: 307-310.
- Li, S. Q., and Z. N. Zhang. 2006.** Influence of larval frass extracts on the oviposition behaviour of *Monochamus alternatus* (Col., Cerambycidae). *Journal of Applied Entomology* 130: 177-182.
- Li, S. Q., Y. L. Fang, and Z. N. Zhang. 2007.** Effects of volatiles of non-host plants and other chemicals on oviposition of *Monochamus alternatus* (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). *Journal of Pesticide Science* 80: 119-123.
- Mamiya, M. 1988.** History of pine wilt disease in Japan. *Journal of Nematology* 20: 219-226.
- Sakai, M., and T. Yamasaki. 1990.** (+)-juniperol and (+)-pimaral: attractants for the cerambycid beetle, *Monochamus alternatus* Hope. *Journal of Chemical Ecology* 16: 3383-3392.

- Sakai, M., and T. Yamasaki. 1991.** (+)-*cis*-3-pinen-2-ol: attractant for male cerambycid beetle, *Monochamus alternatus* Hope. *Journal of Chemical Ecology* 17: 757-765.
- Shibata, E. 1986.** Dispersal movement of the adult Japanese pine sawyer, *Monochamus alternatus* Hope (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae) in a young pine forest. *Applied Entomology and Zoology* 21: 184-186.
- Togashi, K. 1990.** Change in the activity of adult *Monochamus alternatus* Hope (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae) in relation to age. *Applied Entomology and Zoology* 25: 153-159.
- Togashi, K. 1991.** Larval diapause termination of *Monochamus alternatus* Hope (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae) under natural conditions. *Applied Entomology and Zoology* 26: 381-386.
- Togashi, K., and H. Magira. 1981.** Age-specific survival rate and fecundity of the adult Japanese pine sawyer, *Monochamus alternatus* Hope (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae), at different emergence times. *Applied Entomology and Zoology* 16: 351-361.
- Togashi, K., and H. Sekizuka. 1982.** Influence of the pine wood nematode, *Bursaphelenchus lignicolus* (Nematoda: Aphelenchoididae), on longevity of its vector, *Monochamus alternatus* (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). *Applied Entomology and Zoology* 17: 160-165.
- Togashi, K., Y. Akita, I. Nakane, Y. Shibata, and I. Nakai. 1997.** Relatively larger eggs produced by smaller females of *Monochamus alternatus* (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). *Applied Entomology and Zoology* 32: 264-266.
- Yamasaki, T., M. Sato, and H. Sakoguchi. 1997.** (-)-Germacrene D: masking substance of attractants for the cerambycid beetle, *Monochamus alternatus* Hope. *Applied Entomology and Zoology* 32: 423-429.

## *Monochamus saltuarius*

E.E. Davis, E.M. Albrecht, and R.C. Venette

### Scientific Name

*Monochamus saltuarius* Gebler

### Synonyms:

*Monochammus saltuarius*

*Monochammus suzukii*

*Monohammus saltuarius*

(reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005)

### Common Names

Sakhalin pine sawyer, Sakhalin pine longicorn beetle, Japanese pine sawyer

### Type of Pest

Bark, cambium, and sapwood-boring beetle

### Taxonomic Position

**Kingdom:** Animalia, **Phylum:** Arthropoda,  
**Order:** Coleoptera, **Family:** Cerambycidae,  
**Subfamily:** Lamiinae

### Reason for Inclusion in Manual

CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2013)

### Pest Description

Adult (Fig. 17)

“The body of the adult is predominantly black (11-20 mm), head with sparse yellowish-grey pubescence; pronotum and elytra in both sexes with numerous yellowish or whitish spots; legs and first antennal segments partly with grey spots; antennal segments 3 to 11 in male, uniformly black; in female basal halves of these segments with whitish-grey pubescence, antennae long...” (CAB 2005).

Elytra parallel-sided (male) or from base slightly enlarged posteriorly (female), apically separately rounded. Abdominal sternite V short, apically emarginate, at posterior angles with long dense hairs forming a cluster on each side (female) or rounded, with uniform brownish bristles (males)...” (CAB 2005).

### Egg

“The eggs are white, almost parallel-sided or slightly tapering towards one pole, broadly rounded at the poles, 3.0-3.5 mm long and 0.8-1.2 mm wide...” (CAB 2005).

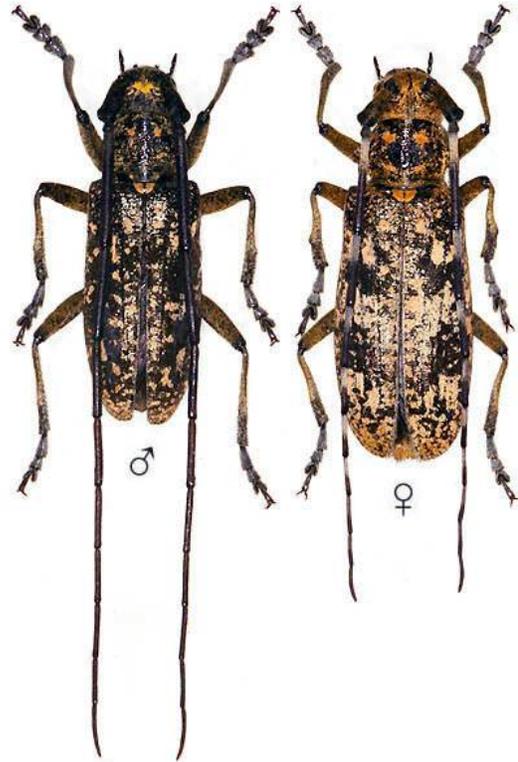


Fig. 17. Adult male and female *Monochamus saltuarius*. Image by M. Hoskovec, <http://www.uochb.cas.cz/~natur/cerambyx/>

### Larva

“The larvae are cylindrical and elongate with an oval head and no legs. Pre-diapause larvae are milky-white, whereas diapausing larvae are yellowish-white, whitish-yellow or yellow (Togashi et al. 1994). The body of late-instar larvae is 20-28 mm long; the head width is 3.5-4.0 mm.

Head flat, half retracted into the prothorax. Epistoma in anterior half reddish-rust, barely convex; in posterior half, bright, flat; at anterior margin laterally with three long bristles on each side of the longitudinal suture with a pair of staggered bristles (inner bristle slightly in front of lateral); near antennal socket with three bristles in transverse row, on disk with two bristles in transverse row. Labrum somewhat rusty, highly tapering towards the base; at anterior margin broadly rounded; in anterior half with long rusty bristles; in posterior half glabrous, medially with pair of long wide-set bristles. Mandibles black, elongate, gently sloping apically...” (CAB 2005).

### Pupa

“The pupae are milky-white and 14-20 mm long; the width of the abdomen is 4.5-4.8 mm. The pupae are characterized by a large number of spinules in the frontal region and long, large sclerotized spinule at the apex of the urogomphus. Head medially with deep longitudinal trough, lateral to it in front of antennae with numerous long setiform spinules forming broad, longitudinal field; at anterior margin near base of clypeus with six spinules forming transverse row interrupted medially, occiput glabrous, lustrous. Labrum elongate, apically broadly rounded; in anterior half along margins with long acicular spinules. Upper ocular lobe with two bristles. Antennae in second half bent ventrad, here spiralled, forming two incomplete (female) or two complete loops (male).

Abdomen moderately elongate, gradually tapering towards tip. Abdominal tergites in posterior half convex in anterior half transversely depressed, medially with longitudinal groove, lateral to it in posterior half with rusty acicular spinules directed backward and forming dense transverse band divided by median longitudinal groove. Two to three rows of spinules observed in each transverse band. Tergite VII is convex, lustrous, triangular, gently rounded apically, in posterior third with solitary minute, sometimes barely perceptible, setiform spinules. Tergite semi-circular, convex, lustrous, and without spinules. Urogomphus at the tip of abdomen is highly extended, terminating in long large, slightly anteriorly curved, sclerotized spinule. Ridges bordering the tip of the abdomen laterally (ventral view) with two to five minute setigerous spinules on the ventral side. Valvifers of female spherical, basally slightly wide-set, apically with small tubercle, bent towards each other...” (CAB 2005).

### **Biology and Ecology**

The ecology of *M. saltuarius* is similar to most *Monochamus* spp. (reviewed in Hanks 1999 and Ciesla 2001). Compared to *M. alternatus*, little is known about the specific life stages of *M. saltuarius*.

*M. saltuarius* has 1-2 generations annually. Under suboptimal conditions, one generation may take up to two years to complete development (reviewed in Ciesla 2001). The majority of the life cycle is carried out within the host tree, except for adult dispersal and maturation feeding (Hanks 1999). *M. saltuarius* overwinters in the larval stage (Togashi et al. 1994).

Adults emerge in spring to early summer, depending on climate, and fly to find a suitable host (reviewed in Hanks 1999 and CAB 2005). *Monochamus* spp. choose stressed host trees for oviposition and larval development, but will maturation feed on healthy hosts (Hanks 1999). Adults are strong fliers and may disperse many kilometers, potentially aided by wind. Like *M. alternatus*, most do not fly more than a few hundred meters (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005).

Rate and extent of maturation feeding are strongly influenced by temperature and typically occurs during the day. Adults feed on the bark of tender young shoots (current year to two-year old growth) (reviewed in Hanks 1999). Mating and oviposition occur at night.

Under laboratory conditions, adult females survive 3-80 days (avg., 47.8; SD = 4.5) at 25°C [77°F] (Jikumaru et al. 1994). *M. saltuarius* has a mean preoviposition period of 16 d at 20°C (Nakayama et al. 1998) and 10-11 d at 25°C (Jikumaru et al. 1994, Nakayama et al. 1998). The mean oviposition period is about 42 days at 25°C [77°F] (Jikumaru et al. 1994). Nakayama et al. (1998) found no significant differences in the life span of *M. saltuarius* males and females reared at 20 or 25°C. Females produce an average of about 70 eggs (range, 0-172) at a temperature of 25°C [77°F] under laboratory conditions (Jikumaru et al. 1994). Eggs hatch within 7-8 days (Jikumaru et al. 1994).

There are four larval instars. Larvae enter diapause in the final instar. Under laboratory conditions, larval development to adult emergence requires approximately 183-244 dd above 10°C (Togashi et al. 1994, Jikumaru and Togashi 1995). In Japan, *M. saltuarius* emerges earlier in spring than *M. alternatus* due to a lower developmental threshold temperature and fewer degree days required for development (Togashi et al. 1994).

### **Pest Importance**

By itself, *M. saltuarius* is considered a decomposer of conifers and not a pest of economic importance (reviewed in Ciesla 2001). Adults cause damage by maturation feeding on the bark of shoots (preferably current-year to two-year old growth) and by boring holes for oviposition and larval development in stressed trees (reviewed in Hanks 1999, reviewed in Ciesla 2001). Feeding damage by adults and larvae can reduce the value of wood and wood products (reviewed in Ciesla 2001).

## Symptoms

Signs and symptoms of attack are similar for most *Monochamus* spp. External signs of infestation include round emergence holes and oviposition scars on the bark. Inside a tree, larvae construct galleries packed with frass and shredded wood. Larvae also create small slits in the bark through which the frass mixture is expelled. In preparation for pupation, final-instar larvae make oval-shaped pupal chambers in the xylem which they may plug with wood borings. All life stages may be present under the bark. Mature adults can be found feeding on the bark of stressed trees and recently cut logs (CABI/EPPO 1997, Hanks 1999, Ciesla 2001, Cram and Hanson 2004).

Pine wilt disease is characterized by decreased resin production, chlorosis, and wilting of needles. Chlorosis and wilting may initially occur on a single branch and then spread to the rest of the tree (reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997). Crowns of infected trees turn from green to reddish-brown (Mamiya 1988). Tree decline and death can occur in heavily infected trees in one growing season (Mamiya 1988). Pine wilt disease is typically caused by nematodes in the genus *Bursaphelenchus*. Other vectors of *Bursaphelenchus* spp. occur in the United States, so pine wilt disease does not definitively indicate the presence of any particular *Monochamus* spp.

## Known Hosts

*M. saltuarius* is a pest of dying and recently felled *Abies* spp., *Larix* spp., *Picea* spp., and *Pinus* spp. in its native range. In Japan, its main hosts are *Pinus densiflora* and *P. thunbergii*, while in Europe, the main host is *Picea abies* (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005).

| Host                                     | Reference                                     |
|--|---|
| <i>Abies</i> spp. (fir)                  | (Ciesla 2001)                                 |
| <i>Abies alba</i> (silver fir)           | (Cesari et al. 2004)                          |
| <i>Abies holophylla</i> (Manchurian fir) | (Ciesla 2001)                                 |
| <i>Abies nephrolepis</i> (Khingan fir)   | (Ciesla 2001)                                 |
| <i>Abies sibirica</i> (Siberian fir)     | (Ciesla 2001)                                 |
| <i>Larix</i> spp. (larch)                | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cesari et al. 2004) |
| <i>Larix gmelinii</i> (Dahurian larch)   | (Ciesla 2001)                                 |
| <i>Larix kaempferi</i> (Japanese larch)  | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005)        |
| <i>Larix sibirica</i> (Siberian larch)   | (Ciesla 2001)                                 |
| <i>Picea</i> spp. (spruce)               | (Ciesla 2001)                                 |
| <i>Picea abies</i> (Norway spruce)       | (Cesari et al. 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005)    |
| <i>Picea asperata</i> (dragon spruce)    | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                        |
| <i>Picea jezoensis</i> (Yeddo spruce)    | (Ciesla 2001)                                 |
| <i>Picea koraiensis</i> (Korean spruce)  | (Ciesla 2001)                                 |
| <i>Picea obovata</i> (Siberian spruce)   | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005)        |

| Host   | Reference   |
|--|---|
|  | 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus</i> spp. (pine)                         | (Ciesla 2001)   |
| <i>Pinus banksiana</i> (jack pine)               | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus densiflora</i> (Japanese umbrella pine) | (Togashi et al. 1994, Jikumaru and Togashi 1995, Togashi and Jikumaru 1996, Nakayama et al. 1998, reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2006) |
| <i>Pinus nigra</i> (Corsican pine)               | (Cesari et al. 2004)  |
| <i>Pinus parviflora</i> (Japanese white pine)    | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus paviflora</i> var. <i>pentaphylla</i>   | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus sibirica</i> (Siberian pine)            | (Ciesla 2001)   |
| <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> (Scots pine)             | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cesari et al. 2004)   |
| <i>Pinus thunbergii</i> (Japanese black pine)    | (Togashi et al. 1994, Jikumaru and Togashi 1995, Nakayama et al. 1998, reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2006)                            |
| <i>Tsuga sieboldii</i> (Japanese hemlock)        | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |

### Known Vectors

*M. saltuarius* is a vector of the pine wood nematode *Bursaphelenchus xylophilus*. *B. xylophilus* is indigenous to North America and is not known to be pathogenic to conifers in its native range (reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997 and Ciesla 2001). *B. xylophilus* transmits the bacterium *Pseudomonas* sp., a causal agent in pine wilt disease in Asia (reviewed in Ciesla 2001). *M. saltuarius* also vectors *B. mucronatus* and *B. kolymensis*. These nematodes are native to Asia and are not known to occur in North America. *B. mucronatus* has been implicated in pine wilt disease (Togashi and Jikumaru 1996, Jikumaru and Togashi 2001, Kobayashi et al. 2003), however the potential pathogenicity of these and other Eurasian nematode species on North American pines is not currently known (reviewed in Ciesla 2001).

### Known Distribution

*M. saltuarius* is widely distributed throughout Middle and Eastern Europe, Siberia, the Russian Far East, and East Asia (reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cesari et al. 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005).

| Location    | Reference   |
|-------------|---|
| <b>Asia</b> |   |
| China       | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cesari et al. 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Japan       | (Togashi et al. 1994, Jikumaru and Togashi 1995, Togashi and Jikumaru |

| Location             | Reference  |
|----------------------|--|
|                      | 1996, Nakayama et al. 1998, reviewed in Ciesla 2001, Cesari et al. 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005) |
| Korea                | (Cesari et al. 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Mongolia             | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <b>Europe</b>        |  |
| Austria              | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005)   |
| Belarus              | (Ciesla 2001)  |
| Bosnia & Herzegovina | (Ciesla 2001)  |
| Croatia              | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005)   |
| Czech Republic       | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005)   |
| Estonia              | (Ciesla 2001)  |
| Germany              | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005)   |
| Hungary              | (Ciesla 2001)  |
| Italy                | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005)   |
| Latvia               | (Ciesla 2001)  |
| Lithuania            | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005)   |
| Poland               | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005)   |
| Romania              | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005)   |
| Russia               | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005)   |
| Slovakia             | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005)   |
| Switzerland          | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Ukraine              | (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005)   |

### Potential Distribution within the United States

The known distribution of *M. saltuarius* suggests that the insect may be most closely associated with two biomes, both of which occur in the United States: (1) temperate coniferous forests; and (2) temperate broadleaf and mixed forests. Collectively, these biomes account for approximately 47% of the area of the contiguous United States and are generally found east of the Mississippi River and scattered throughout the Intermountain West, the Pacific Northwest, and the Sierra-Nevada Mountains.

In a recent risk analysis by USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST, most of the continental United States has a moderate risk of *M. saltuarius* establishment except the Midwest area.

### Survey

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

The CAPS-approved method is visual survey.

#### **Literature-Based Methods:**

Methods used to detect a related species, *Monochamus alternatus*, in the field are also effective in detecting *M. saltuarius*.

Visual inspection: Visual inspection of trees is currently the only method to detect infestations. Externally, infested trees may exhibit oviposition scars and round to oval adult exit holes. Maturing adults feed on young shoots, damaging the affected tree. Dead shoots are characterized by their reddish-brown foliage. Similar symptoms may be observed if the introduction of *M. saltuarius* also were associated with the introduction of an Asian *Bursaphelenchus* spp. Symptoms of the resulting pine wilt disease include chlorosis, wilting of needles, and decreased resin production. Many other biotic and abiotic factors can cause similar damage, so these symptoms should not be relied on exclusively for detecting the presence of *M. saltuarius* (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005). If bark is removed, larval galleries packed with frass and wood shreds may be observed. The portion of bark overlying the galleries is easily depressed with slight pressure. Pupal chambers are U-shaped. All life stages can be found under the bark (reviewed in Ciesla 2001 and CAB 2005).

Currently, no attractants are known to use with traps, though this is an active area of research. The pine monoterpenes that are attractive to *M. alternatus* probably have a similar effect on *M. saltuarius*. However, there is no record in the current, available literature of the effect of plant volatiles and other semiochemicals on *M. saltuarius*. Preliminary work by Kobayashi et al. (2003) suggests the presence of a sex pheromone on the cuticle of females and virgin males.

### Key Diagnostics

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

Confirmation of *M. saltuarius* is by morphological identification.

#### **Literature-Based Methods:**

Identification depends on examination of adult morphological characters. No molecular tools are available to help with diagnosis.

### Easily Confused Pests

One hundred fifty species of *Monochamus* are known from the Holarctic region, with about 10 indigenous to North America. *M. saltuarius* resembles *M. carolinensis* and *M. titillator*, both of which are native North American species (reviewed in Ciesla 2001). The species also resembles *M. alternatus*, with which it shares a portion of their host range and distribution (reviewed in CAB 2005).

## References

- CAB. 2005.** Crop Protection Compendium. CAB International. Available on-line at: <http://www.cabicompendium.org/cpc>. Accessed 1 June 2007.
- CABI/EPPO. 1997.** Quarantine Pests for Europe, 2nd Ed. CAB International, Wallingford, UK.
- Cesari, M., O. Marescalchi, V. Francardi, and B. Mantovani. 2004.** Taxonomy and phylogeny of European *Monochamus* species: first molecular and karyological data. *Journal of Zoological Systematics and Evolutionary Research* 43: 1-7.
- Ciesla, W. M. 2001.** EXFOR Database Pest Report: *Monochamus saltuarius*. USDA Forest Service. Available on-line at: <http://spfnic.fs.fed.us/exfor/data/pestreports.cfm?pestidval=74&langdisplay=english>. Accessed 19 October 2006.
- Cram, M., and J. Hanson. 2004.** How to identify and manage pine wilt disease and treat wood products infested by the pinewood nematode. USDA Forest Service. NA-FR-01-04.
- Hanks, L. M. 1999.** Influence of the larval host plant on reproductive strategies of cerambycid beetles. *Annual Review of Entomology* 44: 483-505.
- Jikumaru, S., and K. Togashi. 1995.** Effect of temperature on the post-diapause development of *Monochamus saltuarius* (Gebler) (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). *Applied Entomology and Zoology* 31: 145-148.
- Jikumaru, S., and K. Togashi. 2001.** Transmission of *Bursaphelenchus mucronatus* (Nematoda: Aphelenchoididae) through feeding wounds by *Monochamus saltuarius* (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). *Nematology* 3: 326-333.
- Jikumaru, S., K. Togashi, A. Taketsune, and F. Takahashi. 1994.** Oviposition biology of *Monochamus saltuarius* (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae) at a constant temperature. *Applied Entomology and Zoology* 29: 555-561.
- Kobayashi, F., A. Yamane, and R. Iwata. 2003.** Mating behavior of the pine sawyer, *Monochamus saltuarius* (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). *Applied Entomology and Zoology* 38: 141-148.
- Mamiya, M. 1988.** History of pine wilt disease in Japan. *Journal of Nematology* 20: 219-226.
- Nakayama, Y., S. Jikumaru, and K. Togashi. 1998.** Reproductive traits and diel activity of adult *Monochamus saltuarius* (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae) at two different temperatures. *Journal of Forest Research* 3: 61-65.
- Togashi, K., and S. Jikumaru. 1996.** Horizontal transmission of *Bursaphelenchus mucronatus* (Nematoda: Aphelenchoididae) between insect vectors of *Monochamus saltuarius* (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). *Applied Entomology and Zoology* 31: 317-320.

**Togashi, K., S. Jikumaru, A. Taketsune, and F. Takahashi. 1994.** Termination of larval diapause in *Monochamus saltuarius* (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae) under natural conditions. *Journal of the Japanese Forestry Society* 76: 30-34.

## *Monochamus sutor*

E.E. Davis, E.M. Albrecht, and R.C. Venette

### Scientific Name

*Monochamus sutor* (Linnaeus)

### Synonyms:

*Cerambyx sutor* Linnaeus  
(reviewed in CAB 2005)

### Common Names

Small white-marmorated longhorned beetle

### Type of Pest

Bark, cambium, and sapwood-boring beetle

### Taxonomic Position

**Kingdom:** Animalia, **Phylum:** Arthropoda,  
**Order:** Coleoptera,  
**Family:** Cerambycidae, **Subfamily:** Lamiinae

### Reason for Inclusion in Manual

CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2013)

### Pest Description

#### Adult (Fig. 19)

"The overall body length of the adult is 15-26 mm. The body is moderately elongate with head not broader than the pronotum. Head and pronotum have a deep median longitudinal groove with deep uneven punctuation and dense or sparse grey or brownish hairs. The antennae are 2.5 times the length of the body on males and less than 1.5 times the length of the body for females. The eyes are deeply faceted, broadly emarginated, with the upper ocular lobes close to each other. The distance between the ocular lobes is less than the interspace between the antennal bases. The scutellum is whitish-yellow and the prothorax has a pair of projections. The elytra have several irregular, faint, bronze or gold coloured markings. Females are slightly larger than males" (CAB 2005).

"Adults superficially resemble the indigenous northern pine sawyer, *Monochamus scutellatus*. They are 15-24 mm long with a black body color with a metallic sheen. The scutellum is a whitish-yellow color and the prothorax has a pair of projections. The elytra have several irregular, faint, bronze or gold colored markings. The antennae are more than twice the body length on the males and about 1.5 times the body length on females. Females are slightly larger than males..." (Ciesla 2004).



Fig. 19. Adult male and female *Monochamus sutor*. Image by M. Hoskovec, <http://www.uochb.cas.cz/~natur/cerambyx/>

### Egg

"The eggs are white, matte, becoming brownish with time, elongate, slightly curved, rounded at poles, overall length 3.8 mm, width 0.8 mm" (CAB 2005).

### Larva

"The larvae are white, opaque legless grubs, averaging 35-40 mm in length when mature. The head capsule is amber in colour, with well developed, black chewing mouthparts. Overall, the body length of mature larvae is 40-50 mm; the width of the head is 4.1-4.7 mm" (CAB 2005).

### Pupa

"The pupae are moderately elongate, white, opaque and cylindrical. They are exarate, with antennae, legs and wings free from the body. The abdomen is elongate, gradually tapering to a posterior tip" (CAB 2005).

## **Biology and Ecology**

The ecology of most *Monochamus* spp. is similar (reviewed in Hanks 1999 and Ciesla 2004). *Monochamus alternatus* is probably the most carefully studied species within the genus. Little has been reported on the biology of *M. sutor*.

*M. sutor* completes a generation in 1-3 years (Kolk and Starzyk 1996). The majority of the life cycle is carried out within the host tree, except during periods of adult dispersal and maturation feeding. *M. sutor* overwinters in the larval stage (reviewed in Hanks 1999).

Adult flight occurs from mid June-September (Kolk and Starzyk 1996). In general, adult *Monochamus* spp. are capable of flying many kilometers, potentially aided by wind. Like *M. alternatus*, most individuals probably do not fly more than a few hundred meters (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005).

Adults emerge during the spring and summer to find a suitable host. *Monochamus* spp. choose stressed host trees for oviposition and larval development, but will maturation feed on healthy hosts (reviewed in Hanks 1999). Maturation feeding is strongly influenced by temperature and typically occurs during the day, while mating and oviposition occur at night. Adults feed on the bark of tender young shoots (current year to two-year old growth) (reviewed in Hanks 1999).

During oviposition, a female chews slits in the bark and deposits 1-6 eggs per slit (reviewed in USDA 1991). During her lifetime, a single female may deposit up to 50 eggs. When multiple females occur in the same area, as many as 100 eggs per meter of bark have been reported in downed logs (reviewed in Ciesla 2004). *M. sutor* can utilize much of the main stem of burned larch or pine for reproduction (Zhang et al. 1993).

There are 5 larval instars (reviewed in CAB 2005). Larvae feed within the cambial layer but may also tunnel to a depth of about 4 cm [ $\sim 1\frac{1}{2}$  in] in the xylem (Kolk and Starzyk 1996). Larvae overwinter as second or later instars (reviewed in CAB 2005). Mature larvae pupate near the bark surface or in the xylem and emerge as adults in the spring (Kolk and Starzyk 1996, reviewed in Hanks 1999).

### Pest Importance

In their native ranges, most *Monochamus* spp. are decomposers of dead conifers and not pests of economic importance (reviewed in Ciesla 2004). Adults cause damage by maturation feeding on the bark of shoots (preferably current-year to two-year old growth) and by boring holes for oviposition and larval development in stressed trees (Zhang et al. 1993, Kolk and Starzyk 1996, Hanks 1999, reviewed in Schroeder et al. 1999, reviewed in Ciesla 2004). Feeding damage by adults and larvae can reduce the value of wood and wood products (reviewed in Kolk and Starzyk 1996, reviewed in Ciesla 2004). See 'Known Vectors.'

### Symptoms

Signs and symptoms of attack are similar for most *Monochamus* spp. External signs of infestation include round emergence holes and oviposition scars on the bark. Inside a tree, larvae construct galleries packed with frass and shredded wood. Larvae also create small slits in the bark through which the frass mixture is expelled. In preparation for pupation, final-instar larvae make oval-shaped pupal chambers in the xylem which they may plug with wood borings. All life stages may be present under the bark. Mature adults can be found feeding on the bark of stressed trees and recently cut logs (reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997, Hanks 1999, Ciesla 2004, Cram and Hanson 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005).

Pine wilt disease is characterized by decreased resin production, chlorosis, and wilting of needles. Chlorosis and wilting may initially occur on a single branch and then spread to the rest of the tree (reviewed in CABI/EPPO 1997). Crowns of infected trees turn from green to reddish-brown (Mamiya 1988) Tree decline and death can occur in heavily infected trees in one growing season (Mamiya 1988, CABI/EPPO 1997, Ciesla 2004, Cram and Hanson 2004, CAB 2005).

### Known Hosts

*M. sutor* is a pest of dying and recently felled *Abies* spp., *Larix* spp., *Picea* spp., and *Pinus* spp. in its native range. In Europe, its main hosts are *Abies alba*, *Picea abies*, and *Pinus sylvestris*. In China, the main hosts are *Betula platyphylla*, *Larix gmelinii*, and *Pinus sylvestris* var. *mongolica*; in Russia *M. sutor* is found chiefly on *Abies holophylla*, *A. nephrolepis*, *A. sibirica*, *Larix gmelinii*, *L. sibirica*, *Picea koraensis*, *P. jezoensis*, *P. obovata*, *Pinus sylvestris*, and *P. sibirica* (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005).

| Host                           | Reference                        |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Abies</i> spp. (fir)        | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004)        |
| <i>Abies alba</i> (silver fir) | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB |

| Host   | Reference                              |
|--|--|
|  | 2005)                                  |
| <i>Abies holophylla</i> (Manchurian fir)                       | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| <i>Abies nephrolepis</i> (Khingan fir)                         | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| <i>Abies sibirica</i> (Siberian fir)                           | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| <i>Betula platyphylla</i> (Manchurian birch)                   | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| <i>Larix</i> spp. (larch)                                      | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004)              |
| <i>Larix gmelinii</i> (Dahurian larch)                         | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| <i>Larix gmelinii</i> var. <i>japonica</i> (kurile larch)      | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                 |
| <i>Larix sibirica</i> (Siberian larch)                         | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| <i>Picea</i> spp. (spruce)                                     | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004)              |
| <i>Picea abies</i> (common spruce)                             | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| <i>Picea jezoensis</i> (Yeddo spruce)                          | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| <i>Picea koraiensis</i> (Korean spruce)                        | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| <i>Picea obovata</i> (Siberian spruce)                         | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| <i>Pinus</i> spp. (pine)                                       | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004)              |
| <i>Pinus sibirica</i> (Siberian stone pine)                    | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> (Scots pine)                           | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> var. <i>mongolica</i> (Mongolian pine) | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004)              |

### Known Vectors

*M. sutor* is a vector of the pine wood nematode *Bursaphelenchus mucronatus*, a cause of pine wilt disease (reviewed in Ciesla 2004). *B. mucronatus* is native to Asia and is not known to occur in North America. The potential pathogenicity of this and other Eurasian nematode species on North American pines is not currently known (reviewed in Ciesla 2004).

### Known Distribution

*M. sutor* is widely distributed throughout Europe, Siberia, the Russian Far East, and East Asia (Kolk and Starzyk 1996, Cesari et al. 2004).

| <b>Location</b>                        | <b>Reference</b>                       |
|--|--|
|  |  |
| <b>Asia</b>                            |  |
| China                                  | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Georgia (Republic)                     | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Japan                                  | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                 |
| Kazakhstan                             | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004)              |
| Korea, Democratic People's Republic of | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                 |
| Mongolia                               | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                 |
|  |  |
| <b>Europe</b>                          |  |
| Albania                                | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Austria                                | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Belarus                                | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Boznia & Herzegovina                   | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Bulgaria                               | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Croatia                                | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Czech Republic                         | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Denmark                                | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Estonia                                | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Finland                                | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| France                                 | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Germany                                | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Hungary                                | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Italy                                  | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Latvia                                 | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Lithuania                              | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |

| Location             | Reference                              |
|----------------------|--|
|                      | 2005)                                  |
| Montenegro           | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                 |
| Netherlands          | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Norway               | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Poland               | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Romania              | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Russia               | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Serbia               | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                 |
| Slovakia             | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Slovenia             | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Spain                | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Sweden               | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Switzerland          | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| Ukraine <sup>1</sup> | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005) |
| United Kingdom       | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                 |
| Yugoslavia           | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004)              |

1. Presence here “questionable” (reviewed in Ciesla 2004).

### Potential Distribution within the United States

The known distribution of *M. sutor* suggests that the insect may be most closely associated with two biomes, both of which occur in the United States: (1) temperate coniferous forests; and (2) temperate broadleaf and mixed forests. Collectively, these biomes account for approximately 47% of the area of the contiguous United States and are generally found east of the Mississippi River, and scattered throughout the Intermountain West, the Pacific Northwest, and the Sierra-Nevada Mountains.

A recent risk analysis by USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST, illustrates this pest is most likely to establish around the east coast, gulf coast, parts of the west coast, states bordering the Great Lakes, as well as parts of Idaho and Montana. This map includes host, climate, and pathway factors.

## Survey

### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

The CAPS-approved method is visual survey.

### **Literature-Based Methods:**

Methods for the detection of *M. sutor* in the field are identical to methods used for *M. alternatus*.

**Preferred Method:** Visual inspection of trees is currently the only method to detect infestations. Externally, infested trees may exhibit oviposition scars and round to oval adult exit holes. Maturing adults feed on young shoots, damaging the affected tree. Dead shoots are characterized by their reddish-brown foliage. Symptoms of pine wilt disease include chlorosis, wilting of needles, and decreased resin production. Many other biotic and abiotic factors can cause similar damage, so these symptoms should not be relied on exclusively for detecting the presence of *M. sutor* (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005). If bark is removed, larval galleries packed with frass and wood shreds may be observed. The portion of bark overlying the galleries is easily depressed with slight pressure. Pupal chambers are U-shaped. All life stages can be found under the bark (reviewed in Ciesla 2004 and CAB 2005).

Currently, no known attractants are available to use with traps. It is possible that pine monoterpenes like  $\alpha$ -pinene, which are attractive to *M. alternatus*, might have a similar effect on *M. sutor*. However, there is no record in the current, available literature of the effect of plant volatiles or other semiochemicals on *M. sutor*.

## Key Diagnostics

### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

Confirmation of *M. sutor* is by morphological identification. Adults can be identified by a cerambycid taxonomist.

### **Literature-Based Methods:**

Identification depends on examination of adult morphological characters. No molecular tools are available to help with diagnosis.

## Easily Confused Pests

One hundred fifty species of *Monochamus* are known from the Holarctic region, with about 10 indigenous to North America. *M. sutor* resembles *M. scutellatus*, a native North American species (reviewed in Ciesla 2004).

## References

**CAB. 2005.** Crop Protection Compendium. CAB International. Available on-line at: <http://www.cabicompendium.org/cpc>. Accessed 18 October 2006.

**CABI/EPPO. 1997.** Quarantine Pests for Europe, 2nd Ed. CAB International, Wallingford, UK.

- Cesari, M., O. Marescalchi, V. Francardi, and B. Mantovani. 2004.** Taxonomy and phylogeny of European *Monochamus* species: first molecular and karyological data. *Journal of Zoological Systematics and Evolutionary Research* 43: 1-7.
- Ciesla, W. M. 2004.** EXFOR Database Pest Report: *Monochamus sutor*. USDA Forest Service. Available on-line at: <http://spfnic.fs.fed.us/exfor/data/pestreports.cfm?pestidval=159&langdisplay=english>. Accessed 19 October 2006.
- Cram, M., and J. Hanson. 2004.** How to identify and manage pine wilt disease and treat wood products infested by the pinewood nematode. USDA Forest Service. NA-FR-01-04.
- Hanks, L. M. 1999.** Influence of the larval host plant on reproductive strategies of cerambycid beetles. *Annual Review of Entomology* 44: 483-505.
- Kolk, A., and J. R. Starzyk. 1996.** Small white-marmorated longhorned beetle - *Monochamus sutor* L., Atlas skodliwych owadów lesnych (The atlas of forest insect pests). Multico Warszawa, Warsaw.
- Mamiya, M. 1988.** History of pine wilt disease in Japan. *Journal of Nematology* 20: 219-226.
- Schroeder, L. M., J. Weslien, Å. Lindelöv, and A. Lindhe. 1999.** Attacks by bark- and wood-boring Coleoptera on mechanically created high stumps of Norway spruce in the two years following cutting. *Forest Ecology and Management* 123: 21-30.
- USDA. 1991.** Pest Risk Assessment of the Importation of Larch from Siberia and the Soviet Far East. Miscellaneous Publication No. 1495. USDA Forest Service.
- Zhang, Q. H., J. A. Byers, and X. D. Zhang. 1993.** Influence of bark thickness, trunk diameter and height on reproduction of the longhorned beetle. *Monochamus sutor* (Col., Cerambycidae) in burned larch and pine. *Journal of Applied Entomology* 115: 145-154.

## **Orthotomicus erosus**

A.J. Walter, E.M. Albrecht, and R.C. Venette

### **Scientific Name**

*Orthotomicus erosus* (Wollaston)

### **Synonyms:**

*Bostrichus duplicatus* Ferrari  
*Bostrichus laricis* Perris  
*Ips erosus* (Wollaston)  
*Ips erosus* var. *robustus* Knotek  
*Ips rectangulus* Eichhoff  
*Tomicus erosus* Wollaston  
*Tomicus rectangulus* Ferrari  
(Wood and Bright 1992, Bright and Skidmore 1997, reviewed in Eglitis 2000 and CAB 2005)

### **Common Names**

Mediterranean pine engraver

### **Type of Pest**

Bark and cambium-feeding beetle

### **Taxonomic Position**

**Kingdom:** Animalia, **Phylum:** Arthropoda, **Order:** Coleoptera,  
**Family:** Curculionidae, **Subfamily:** Scolytinae

### **Reason for Inclusion in Manual**

CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2013)

### **Pest Description**

*Orthotomicus erosus* was originally placed in the genus *Ips* by Wood and Bright (1992) and was later moved to *Orthotomicus* by Bright and Skidmore (1997). Depending on interpretation of characters and the key used, *O. erosus* may still be identified as a member of the genus *Ips* (Cavey et al. 1994).

Description of the genus *Orthotomicus* Ferrari 1867:

“1.6-5 mm; body cylindrical; funicle 5-segmented; frons with sparse, short, filamentous setae; elytra with rough striae; 1<sup>st</sup> interstia adjacent declivity without row of granules; declivity nearly perpendicular; tips of post elytral margin rounded, with fine indentations, not bordered; male declivity with conical spines; female declivity with granules” (Grüne 1979).



Fig. 21. Adult *Orthotomicus erosus*. Image from Jim Stimmel, <http://www.bugwood.org>

### Adult (Fig. 21)

“*Orthotomicus erosus* averages 3-3.8 mm length and is reddish brown in color. The adults are typical bark beetles of the subfamily Ipinae, family Scolytidae. The head is covered by a thoracic shield and is not visible when viewed dorsally and the declivity is concave, with each side armed by four spines, the second from the top being more conspicuous [Fig. 22]. The spines on the declivity of *O. erosus* are less conspicuous than on most North American species of *Ips*” (Eglitis 2000).

“2<sup>nd</sup> elytral spine not broad; declivity with more than 3 spines or tubercles; 1 or 2 indentations between 3<sup>rd</sup> conical spine and post elytral margin; 1 tubercle between 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> spines; club round, with 2 slightly bowed sutures; 3 conical spines of lateral elytral declivity equidistant; male 2<sup>nd</sup> spine broad, nearly square; lateral margin of 2<sup>nd</sup> spine horizontal, tip perpendicular; 1<sup>st</sup> spine on 2<sup>nd</sup> interstria before declivity; 3<sup>rd</sup> interstria ends with granule before declivity; body black to reddish-brown, shiny, with grey filamentous setae; elytra reddish-brown; 2.7-3.5 mm” (Grüne 1979).

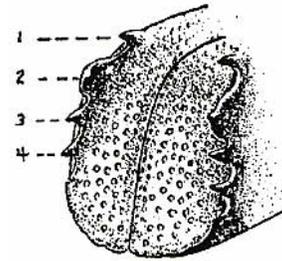


Fig. 22. Apex of elytra of male *O. erosus*. Reproduced from Cavey et al. (1994).

### Egg

“Eggs are smooth, ovoid, white and translucent. The eggs of *O. erosus* are approximately 1 mm long and laid separately in niches along the egg gallery” (CAB 2005).

### Larva

“The larvae are white, legless, ‘C’ shaped grubs with an amber colored head capsule. Mature larvae are about 5 mm long” (Eglitis 2000).

### Pupa

“The pupae are white, mummy-like, and have some adult features, including wings that are folded behind the abdomen” (Eglitis 2000).

## **Biology and Ecology**

*Orthotomicus erosus* is a multivoltine species and can complete up to five generations per year, depending on temperature. In parts of Israel, *O. erosus* has the potential to complete as many as seven generations per year, but averages 3-5 generations per year (Mendel 1983, Mendel et al. 1985). *O. erosus* is reported to complete 3-4 generations per year in the central valley of California (Lee et al. 2007b). Total generation development times range from 25-76 days (reviewed in Eglitis 2000).

Adults are strong fliers that may disperse several kilometers in search of hosts. They can also be dispersed by wind (reviewed in Eglitis 2000). During summer in Israel, adult flight peaks just before dawn and just after dusk (Mendel et al.

1991). In California, adults fly year-round, except during late December and January. Newly-laid eggs have been found between the first week of March and the last week of November (Lee et al. 2007b). Flight by overwintering beetles occurs at temperatures  $>12^{\circ}\text{C}$  (Mendel et al. 1991). During summer, flight occurs when the temperature exceeds  $21^{\circ}\text{C}$ , with a peak of activity between  $25\text{-}26^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Flight is unlikely to occur at temperatures  $>34^{\circ}\text{C}$  (Mendel et al. 1991). On the Iberian peninsula, *O. erosus* has been reported to be most abundant where the annual temperature is higher than  $11^{\circ}\text{C}$ , with mean maximum temperature exceeding  $28.5^{\circ}\text{C}$  and rainfall less than 860 mm per year (Arias et al. 2005).

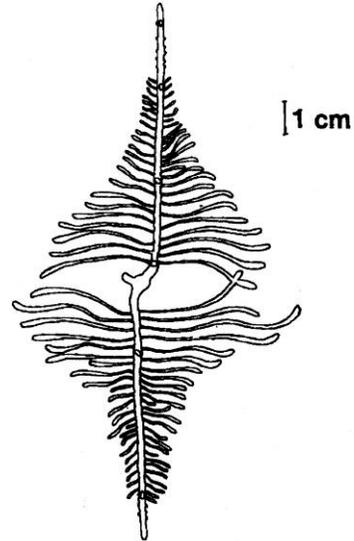


Fig. 23. Gallery system of *O. erosus*. The nuptial chamber is in the center and two egg galleries branch off in opposite directions. Larval galleries are perpendicular to the egg galleries. Reproduced from Mendel (1983).

Breeding takes place in rough-barked areas of the main trunk and in branches  $>5$  cm in diameter (reviewed in Eglitis 2000). The lower bole of old pines is usually not used for breeding, as the bark may be too thick (reviewed in Eglitis 2000). In Spain, *O. erosus* does not attack areas of *Pinus radiata* where bark was thicker than 20 mm (Amezaga and Rodríguez 1998). However, *O. erosus* has the potential to attack thicker bark as well (A. Walter, personal observation).

After locating a suitable host, a male will bore into the phloem and construct a nuptial chamber and be joined by 1-3 females. Once mating occurs, the females excavate egg galleries parallel to the vertical axis of the tree. When two females are present, they construct their galleries in opposite directions from the nuptial chamber (Fig. 23). If 3 females are present, 2 galleries will be constructed in the same direction so that the galleries together resemble a Y. Females bore “ventilation holes” in the roof of the gallery (Mendel and Halperin 1982) and deposit eggs in niches on alternating sides of the egg galleries. If the female detects another egg gallery nearby, all of the eggs may be deposited on the side farthest away from the neighboring gallery. Each larva forms its own gallery perpendicular to the parent gallery. Egg galleries range from 10-120 mm [avg., 35-71 mm] in length. The average number of eggs deposited in each gallery is 26-75, with an average of 2-14 eggs per 10 mm of gallery (Mendel and Halperin 1982). Occasionally, a female will abandon a gallery and oviposit in a different tree (reviewed in Eglitis 2000). In California, adults have been observed excavating new galleries starting in March (Penrose et al. 2006).

Oviposition takes place when temperatures are between  $18\text{-}42^{\circ}\text{C}$  [ $64\text{-}108^{\circ}\text{F}$ ]. The time between initial gallery excavation and oviposition ranges from 2-10 d. Eggs hatch in 2 days at  $36^{\circ}\text{C}$  [ $97^{\circ}\text{F}$ ]. No hatching occurs below  $16^{\circ}\text{C}$  [ $61^{\circ}\text{F}$ ] or above  $40^{\circ}\text{C}$  [ $104^{\circ}\text{F}$ ] (Mendel and Halperin 1982). The first brood adults begin to

emerge from the host tree 326-383 degree days above a base temperature of 25°C [77°F] (95% confidence interval calculated from data in Mendel and Halperin 1982) after the parent female enters the bark. In California, first brood adults emerge in June (Penrose et al. 2006).

*O. erosus* develops through 3 instars. The lower threshold for development is 14°C [57°F] and the upper threshold is 36°C [97°F]. Pupation takes 5-22 days, depending on temperature. Development is negatively affected at temperatures below 14°C [57°F] and above 39°C [102°F] (Mendel and Halperin 1982).

Larvae feed on the cambium of the host tree, but the pupal chamber is constructed in the inner bark. When the adult beetle emerges, it will bore back into the cambium for maturation feeding if the bark is sufficiently moist. If the bark is too dry, the insect leaves the tree to search for a new host for further maturation feeding. Maturation feeding takes place on rough-barked portions of host trees (reviewed in Eglitis 2000). When maturation feeding is complete, males construct nuptial chambers in the same or a new tree; females search for males (Mendel and Halperin 1982).

Adult beetles may form aggregations of a few to several hundred individuals in overwintering galleries under the bark of host or non-host trees (Mendel 1983, Mendel et al. 1985). This behavior may allow beetles at the center of the aggregation to stay warmer than ambient temperature. Larvae, pupae, and adults have been reported to overwinter (Mendel 1983, Lee et al. 2007b), although the cold hardiness of these stages has not been reported.

### **Pest Importance**

In its native range, *O. erosus* is considered a secondary pest of conifers. It usually attacks stressed or wounded trees, though healthy trees may be attacked and killed when the beetle population reaches outbreak level (Mendel et al. 1985, Arias et al. 2005). A large number of hosts weakened by thinning, pruning, drought, or fire can create conditions favorable for an outbreak (Mendel 1983, Mendel et al. 1991). Trees experiencing water stress are especially susceptible to fatal attack by *O. erosus*. *O. erosus* often attacks trees that have been weakened by previous insect attack or fungal infection (reviewed in Eglitis 2000).

*Orthotomicus erosus* is one of the most frequently intercepted bark beetles at United States ports of entry (Brockerhoff et al. 2006, Haack 2006). Frequent introduction greatly increases the probability that the beetle will establish in the United States (Williamson 1996). The first established U.S. populations of the beetle were reported in 2004 after *O. erosus* was detected in traps in central California (Haack 2004). Penrose et al. (2006) suggest *O. erosus* may have been present in the area for at least 2 years prior to its detection. There is concern that the beetle will spread to native coastal and mountain pines within California and to other warm regions such as the Southeast United States (Lee et al. 2007b).

*Orthotomicus erosus* is considered one of the principal bark beetle pests of managed pine plantations in Israel (Mendel et al. 1985) and northern Iran (Mendel 1988). It has also caused economic losses on pine plantations where it was introduced into the Southern Hemisphere (Lee et al. 2007b). Poor growing conditions in plantations may predispose pines to attack by *O. erosus* (reviewed in Eglitis 2000).

Risks associated with *O. erosus* have been evaluated previously. Eglitis (2000) considered the beetle to pose a high risk to North America, though this assessment was very uncertain. The potential for establishment, spread, and economic damage were all rated high, while the potential to cause environmental damage was rated low. *O. erosus* has a broad host range within the genus *Pinus* and is capable of killing stressed trees. It may also displace native bark beetles (Eglitis 2000). See 'Known Vectors.'

### Symptoms

Infestation by *O. erosus* may be difficult to detect until a tree exhibits signs of decline and dieback. As an attacked tree dies, the foliage fades from green to yellow to reddish-brown. Reddish-brown boring dust and frass expelled from galleries may be found on smooth bark surfaces of trees. If a healthy tree is attacked, pitch tubes may form on the bark. Adult and larval galleries can be viewed by peeling back the bark, though the appearance of the galleries may be disfigured by maturation feeding. Adult emergence holes are round and about 1.5 mm [1/16 in] in diameter. Sapwood may be discolored blue by staining fungi associated with *O. erosus* (reviewed in Eglitis 2000, Lee et al. 2005).

### Known Hosts

The complete host range of *Orthotomicus erosus* includes many *Pinus* spp. and may also include other trees in the families Pinaceae and Cupressaceae (Mendel and Halperin 1982, Wood and Bright 1992, Arias et al. 2005). Some reported hosts may be used for overwintering rather than oviposition or may not support complete development of the larvae (Mendel and Halperin 1982). In California, *O. erosus* colonizes and develops on *Pinus brutia*, *P. canariensis*, *P. halepensis*, *P. pinea*, *P. radiata*, and *P. sylvestris* (Mendel and Halperin 1982, Wood and Bright 1992, Bright and Skidmore 1997, reviewed in CAB 2005, Lee et al. 2005).

| Hosts   | References                 |
|---|----------------------------|
| <i>Abies</i> spp. (fir)                               | (reviewed in CAB 2005)     |
| <i>Abies pinsapo</i> (Spanish fir) <sup>1</sup>       | (Wood and Bright 1992)     |
| <i>Cedrus</i> spp. (cedar)                            | (reviewed in CAB 2005)     |
| <i>Cedrus atlantica</i> (atlas cedar)                 | (Bright and Skidmore 1997) |
| <i>Cedrus libani</i> (Lebanon cedar) <sup>1</sup>     | (Wood and Bright 1992)     |
| <i>Cupressus arizonica</i> (Arizona cypress)          | (Mendel and Halperin 1982) |
| <i>Cupressus sempervirens</i> (Mediterranean cypress) | (Mendel and Halperin 1982) |

| <b>Hosts</b>  | <b>References</b>   |
|---|---|
| <i>Larix</i> spp. (larch) <sup>2</sup>  | (Lee et al. 2005)   |
| <i>Larix laricina</i> (tamarack) <sup>2</sup>                                     | (Lee et al. 2007a)  |
| <i>Picea</i> spp. (spruce) <sup>2</sup>   | (reviewed in CAB 2005, Lee et al. 2005)   |
| <i>Picea glauca</i> (white spruce)  | (Lee et al. 2007a)  |
| <i>Picea mariana</i> (black spruce)   | (Lee et al. 2007a)  |
| <i>Picea orientalis</i> (oriental spruce) <sup>1</sup>                            | (Wood and Bright 1992)  |
| <i>Pinus</i> spp. (pine)  | (Wood and Bright 1992)  |
| <i>Pinus armandii</i> (Armand pine)   | (reviewed in Eglitis 2000 and CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus banksiana</i> (jack pine) <sup>2</sup>                                   | (Lee et al. 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus brutia</i> (Calabrian pine)  | (Mendel and Halperin 1982, Bright and Skidmore 1997, reviewed in CAB 2005, Lee et al. 2005) |
| <i>Pinus brutia</i> var. <i>eldarica</i> (= <i>Pinus eldarica</i> ) (Afghan pine) | (Mendel and Halperin 1982 and reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus brutia</i> var. <i>pityusa</i>   | (reviewed in Eglitis 2000)  |
| <i>Pinus canariensis</i> (Canary Island pine)                                     | (Mendel and Halperin 1982, Bright and Skidmore 1997, reviewed in CAB 2005, Lee et al. 2005) |
| <i>Pinus caribaea</i> (Caribbean pine)  | (Mendel and Halperin 1982)  |
| <i>Pinus contorta</i> (lodgepole pine) <sup>2</sup>                               | (Lee et al. 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus coulteri</i> (Coulter pine)  | (reviewed in Eglitis 2000)  |
| <i>Pinus echinata</i> (shortleaf pine)  | (Mendel and Halperin 1982)  |
| <i>Pinus elliotii</i> (slash pine)  | (Lee et al. 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus halepensis</i> (Aleppo pine)   | (Mendel and Halperin 1982, Wood and Bright 1992, reviewed in CAB 2005, Lee et al. 2005)     |
| <i>Pinus jeffreyi</i> (Jeffrey pine)  | (Lee et al. 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus kesiya</i> (khasia pine)   | (reviewed in Eglitis 2000 and CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus kesiya</i> var. <i>langbianensis</i> (Szemao pine)                       | (Penrose et al. 2006)   |
| <i>Pinus lambertiana</i> (sugar pine) <sup>2</sup>                                | (Lee et al. 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus maritima</i> (French maritime pine)                                      | (Mendel and Halperin 1982, Wood and Bright 1992)  |
| <i>Pinus massoniana</i> (Chinese red pine)  | (reviewed in Eglitis 2000 and CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus monophylla</i> (single-leaf pinyon) <sup>2</sup>                         | (Lee et al. 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus mugo</i> ssp. <i>uncinata</i> (Swiss mountain pine)                      | (reviewed in Eglitis 2000)  |
| <i>Pinus nigra</i> (European black pine)  | (Mendel and Halperin 1982, Bright and Skidmore 1997, and reviewed in CAB 2005)              |

| Hosts  | References  |
|--|---|
| <i>Pinus nigra</i> ssp. <i>austriaca</i> (Austrian black pine)   | (Bright and Skidmore 1997)  |
| <i>Pinus nigra</i> ssp. <i>salzmannii</i> (= <i>P. nigra</i> ssp. <i>cebennensis</i> ) (Cévennes black pine) | (Bright and Skidmore 1997)  |
| <i>Pinus nigra</i> ssp. <i>mauretanica</i> (Atlas Mountains black pine)                                      | (Bright and Skidmore 1997)  |
| <i>Pinus nigra</i> ssp. <i>pallasiana</i> (Crimean black pine)   | (Bright and Skidmore 1997)  |
| <i>Pinus patula</i> (Mexican weeping pine)   | (reviewed in Eglitis 2000)  |
| <i>Pinus pinaster</i> (maritime pine)  | (Wood and Bright 1992 and reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus pinea</i> (Italian stone pine)  | (Mendel and Halperin 1982, Bright and Skidmore 1997, reviewed in CAB 2005, Lee et al. 2005) |
| <i>Pinus ponderosa</i> (ponderosa pine) <sup>2</sup>   | (Lee et al. 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus radiata</i> (Monterey pine)   | (Mendel and Halperin 1982, Bright and Skidmore 1997, Lee et al. 2005)                       |
| <i>Pinus resinosa</i> (red pine) <sup>2</sup>  | (Lee et al. 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus sabiniana</i> (grey pine)   | (Lee et al. 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus strobus</i> (Eastern white pine) <sup>2</sup>   | (Lee et al. 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> (Scots pine)   | (Bright and Skidmore 1997, reviewed in CAB 2005, Lee et al. 2005)                           |
| <i>Pinus taiwanensis</i> (Taiwan red pine)   | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus tabulaeformis</i> (Chinese red pine)  | (reviewed in Eglitis 2000)  |
| <i>Pinus taeda</i> (loblolly pine) <sup>2</sup>  | (Lee et al. 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus uncinata</i> (mountain pine)  | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus yunnanensis</i> (Yunnan pine)   | (reviewed in Eglitis 2000 and CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> (Douglas-fir)   | (Bright and Skidmore 1997 and reviewed in CAB 2005)   |

1. Rarely reported in this host (Wood and Bright 1992).
2. Recorded as a host in the laboratory; not yet observed as a host in the field (Lee et al. 2007a).

### Known Vectors

Other organisms associated with *O. erosus* include the nematode *Bursaphelenchus fungivorus* (Arias et al. 2005) and the fungi *Graphium pseudormiticum*, *Leptographium lundbergii* (= *L. truncatum*), *L. serpens*, and *Ophiostoma* (= *Ceratocystis*) *ips* (Zhou et al. 2002, Lee et al. 2007b). *Ophiostoma ips* has been isolated from *Orthotomicus erosus* infesting cut pine in California (Lee et al. 2007b). The pathogenicity of the fungal associates of *O.*

*erosus* is not currently known. *Orthotomicus erosus* is also often associated with other bark beetles and weevils (reviewed in Eglitis 2000).

### Known Distribution

*O. erosus* is native to Eurasia (Mendel and Halperin 1982, Mendel 1988, Arias et al. 2005) and has been introduced into Africa, North America, and South America. There is currently an established population in the Central Valley of California (Lee et al. 2007a). *O. erosus* has been reported from Fiji and Norway, but this was based on a misidentification (Wood and Bright 1992, Penrose et al. 2006). It has also been noted in Scandinavia and the United Kingdom, but populations are unlikely to be established (Wood and Bright 1992, Bright and Skidmore 1997, reviewed in Eglitis 2000, Lee et al. 2005, Penrose et al. 2006).

| Location                | Reference                                    |
|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Africa</b>           |  |
| Algeria                 | (Wood and Bright 1992)                       |
| Egypt                   | (Wood and Bright 1992)                       |
| Libya                   | (Wood and Bright 1992)                       |
| Morocco                 | (Wood and Bright 1992)                       |
| South Africa            | (Wood and Bright 1992)                       |
| Swaziland               | (reviewed in Eglitis 2000)                   |
| Tunisia                 | (Wood and Bright 1992)                       |
| <b>Asia</b>             |  |
| China                   | (Wood and Bright 1992, Penrose et al. 2006)  |
| Iran                    | (Wood and Bright 1992)                       |
| Israel                  | (Wood and Bright 1992)                       |
| Jordan                  | (Wood and Bright 1992)                       |
| Syria                   | (Wood and Bright 1992)                       |
| Turkey                  | (Wood and Bright 1992, reviewed in CAB 2005) |
| Tajikistan              | (reviewed in Eglitis 2000)                   |
| <b>Atlantic Islands</b> |  |
| Azores                  | (Bright and Skidmore 1997)                   |
| Madeira                 | (Wood and Bright 1992)                       |
| <b>Europe</b>           |  |
| Bulgaria                | (Wood and Bright 1992)                       |
| Cyprus                  | (reviewed in Eglitis 2000)                   |
| Former Yugoslavia       | (Wood and Bright 1992)                       |
| France                  | (Wood and Bright 1992)                       |
| Greece                  | (Wood and Bright 1992)                       |
| Italy                   | (Wood and Bright 1992)                       |

| Location             | Reference                           |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Poland               | (Wood and Bright 1992)              |
| Portugal             | (Bright and Skidmore 1997)          |
| Romania              | (reviewed in Eglitis 2000)          |
| Sardinia             | (Wood and Bright 1992)              |
| Spain                | (Wood and Bright 1992)              |
| Switzerland          | (Wood and Bright 1992)              |
| USSR (former)        | (Wood and Bright 1992)              |
| <b>North America</b> |                                     |
| United States        |                                     |
| CA                   | (Lee et al. 2005, Lee et al. 2007b) |
| <b>South America</b> |                                     |
| Chile                | (Wood and Bright 1992)              |

### Potential Distribution within the United States

The known distribution of *O. erosus* suggests that the insect may be most closely associated with six biomes, five of which occur in the United States:

(1) temperate grasslands, savannahs, and shrublands; (2) temperate broadleaf and mixed forests; (3) Medierranean scrub; (4) desert and xeric shrublands; and (5) tropical and subtropical moist broadleaf forests. Collectively, these biomes account for approximately 81% of the area of the contiguous United States.

These biomes are generally found throughout the United States; each state has some area that is predicted to be suitable.

In a recent risk analysis by USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST, most of the southeastern United States has a moderate to high risk of *O. erosus* establishment. Areas of Alabama, Louisiana, and Mississippi have the highest risk for establishment of *O. erosus*.

### Survey

#### CAPS-Approved Method:

The CAPS-approved method is a trap and lure combination. The trap is a multi-funnel trap. The lure is effective for 56 days (8 weeks).

Any of the following Trap Product Names in the IPHIS Survey Supply Ordering System may be used for this target:

- Multi-funnel Trap, 12 Funnel, Wet
- Multi-funnel Trap, 8 Funnel, Wet

The Lure Product Name is "Ips sp. Lure, 3 Dispenser."

Beginning in 2012, the wet collection cup method will be the only method approved for use with multi-funnel (Lindgren) traps.

The release rate of this lure is highly temperature-dependent. However, CAPS has listed a conservative length of effectiveness that will be effective for even the warmest climates in the CAPS community.

**IMPORTANT:** Placing lures for two or more target species in a trap should never be done unless otherwise recommended.

**Trap spacing:** When trapping for exotic wood-boring and bark beetles, separate traps with different lure combinations by at least 30 meters (98 feet).

### **Literature-Based Methods:**

**Baited traps:** The most common survey method for bark beetles involves baiting a Lindgren funnel trap with an attractive lure in order to capture flying adults. Seybold et al. (2006) evaluated several lures and found the combination of (-)-ipsdienol and 2-methyl-3-buten-2-ol to be most attractive to *O. erosus*. *Ips typographus*, another potentially invasive bark beetle, is also attracted to 2-methyl-3-buten-2-ol (Eidmann et al. 1986).

The compound (-)-ipsdienol and 2-methyl-3-buten-2-ol are the primary components of the aggregation pheromone of *O. erosus* (Eidmann et al. 1986, Kohnle et al. 1988). The addition of  $\alpha$ -pinene to a combination of (-)-ipsdienol and 2-methyl-3-buten-2-ol enhances the attractiveness of a lure (Lee et al. 2007b). The addition of amitinol, (+)-ipsdienol, (-)-*cis*-verbenol, or verbenone decreases the attractiveness of a lure (Kohnle et al. 1988, Seybold et al. 2006).

**Visual inspection:** Visual inspection of trees is an effective method of detecting the presence of *Orthotomicus erosus*. Boring dust and frass may be found on smooth bark surfaces of trees and pitch tubes may form on the bark of healthy trees attacked by *O. erosus*. Galleries are found beneath the bark. Old galleries of *O. erosus* may also be used to determine whether the beetle was present at a location within the last few years (Penrose et al. 2006). Adult emergence holes are small and round (Lee et al. 2005). All life stages can be found under the bark (reviewed in Eglitis 2000). The foliage of a heavily attacked tree fades from green to yellow to reddish-brown, but this may result from any number of causes.

### **Key Diagnostics**

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

Confirmation of *O. erosus* is by morphological identification. Examine specimens under a good quality, high powered (preferably with up to 90X) dissecting microscope, with the help of screening aids and a reference collection.

#### **Literature-Based Methods:**

Identification depends on examination of adult morphological characters. No molecular tools are available to help with diagnosis.

### Easily Confused Pests

The genus *Orthotomicus* contains twelve known species (reviewed in CAB 2005). *O. erosus* might be confused with *O. caelatus*, the only species of *Orthotomicus* native to North America. It is also similar to *Ips latidens* and *I. pini*, both of which are native to North America (Cavey et al. 1994). Cavey et al. (1994) summarize morphological differences among *O. erosus* and these three species. In general, *O. erosus* may be confused with other Scolytinae, *Ips*, and *Orthotomicus* species.

### References

- Amezaga, I., and M. Á. Rodríguez. 1998.** Resource partitioning of four sympatric bark beetles depending on swarming dates and tree species. *Forest Ecology and Management* 109: 127-135.
- Arias, M., L. Robertson, A. Garcia-Alvarez, S. C. Arcos, M. Escuer, R. Sanz, and J. P. Mansilla. 2005.** *Bursaphelenchus fungivorus* (Nematoda: Aphelenchida) associated with *Orthotomicus erosus* (Coleoptera: Scolytidae) in Spain. *Forest Pathology* 35: 375-383.
- Bright, D. E., and R. E. Skidmore. 1997.** A Catalog of Scolytidae and Platypodidae (Coleoptera), Supplement 1 (1990-1994). NRC Research Press, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada.
- Brockerhoff, E. G., J. Bain, M. Kimberley, and M. Knizek. 2006.** Interception frequency of exotic bark and ambrosia beetles (Coleoptera: Scolytinae) and relationship with establishment in New Zealand and worldwide. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 36: 289-298.
- CAB. 2005.** Crop Protection Compendium. CAB International. Available on-line at: <http://www.cabicompendium.org/cpc>. Accessed 18 October 2006.
- Cavey, J., S. Passoa, and D. Kucera. 1994.** Screening Aids for Exotic Bark Beetles in the Northeastern United States. NA-TP-11-94, *Orthotomicus erosus* (Woll.) Screening Aid. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service.
- Eglitis, A. 2000.** EXFOR Database Pest Report: *Orthotomicus erosus*. USDA Forest Service. Available on-line at: <http://spfnic.fs.fed.us/exfor/data/pestreports.cfm?pestidval=9&langdisplay=english>. Accessed 21 September 2007.
- Eidmann, H. H., J. Weslien, S. Harding, P. Baeckström, T. Norin, and J. Vrkoč. 1986.** A compound replacing a natural pheromone component of the spruce bark beetle. *Naturwissenschaften* 73: 629-630.
- Grüne, S. 1979.** Brief Illustrated Key to European Bark Beetles. M. & H. Schaper, Hannover.
- Haack, R. A. 2004.** *Orthotomicus erosus*: A New Pine-Infesting Bark Beetle in the United States. *Newsletter of the Michigan Entomological Society* 49: 3.
- Haack, R. A. 2006.** Exotic bark- and wood-boring Coleoptera in the United States: recent establishments and interceptions. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 36: 269-288.
- Kohnle, U., J. P. Vité, C. Erbacher, J. Bartels, and W. Francke. 1988.** Aggregation response of European engraver beetles of the genus *Ips*

- mediated by terpenoid pheromones. *Entomologica Experimentalis et Applicata* 49: 43-53.
- Lee, J. C., S. L. Smith, and S. J. Seybold. 2005.** Mediterranean Pine Engraver. USDA Forest Service Pest Alert R5-PR-016: 4 pp.
- Lee, J. C., M. L. Flint, and S. J. Seybold. 2007a.** Host range of newly invasive Mediterranean pine engraver, *Orthotomicus erosus* [poster]. 2007 Entomological Society of America Annual Meeting, San Diego, California.
- Lee, J. C., R. A. Haack, J. F. Negron, J. J. Witcosky, and S. J. Seybold. 2007b.** Invasive Bark Beetles. USDA Forest Service Forest Insect Disease Leaflet 176.
- Mendel, Z. 1983.** Seasonal history of *Orthotomicus erosus* (Coleoptera: Scolytidae) in Israel. *Phytoparasitica* 11: 13-24.
- Mendel, Z. 1988.** Attraction of *Orthotomicus erosus* and *Pityogenes calcaratus* to a synthetic aggregation pheromone of *Ips typographus*. *Phytoparasitica* 16: 109-117.
- Mendel, Z., and J. Halperin. 1982.** The biology and behavior of *Orthotomicus erosus* in Israel. *Phytoparasitica* 10: 169-181.
- Mendel, Z., Z. Madar, and Y. Golan. 1985.** Comparison of the seasonal occurrence and behavior of seven pine bark beetles (Coleoptera: Scolytidae) in Israel. *Phytoparasitica* 13: 21-32.
- Mendel, Z., O. Boneh, Y. Shenhar, and J. Rivov. 1991.** Diurnal flight patterns of *Orthotomicus erosus* and *Pityogenes calcaratus* in Israel. *Phytoparasitica* 19: 23-31.
- Penrose, R. L., J. C. Lee, D. Liu, and S. J. Seybold. 2006.** New exotic Scolytidae in California with special emphasis on the first record of establishment of the Mediterranean pine engraver, *Orthotomicus (Ips) erosus*, in North America (unpublished manuscript), pp. 49.
- Seybold, S. J., D. P. W. Huber, J. C. Lee, A. D. Graves, and J. Bohlmann. 2006.** Pine monoterpenes and pine bark beetles: a marriage of convenience for defense and chemical communication. *Phytochemistry Reviews* 5: 143-178.
- Williamson, M. 1996.** Biological Invasions. Chapman and Hall, London.
- Wood, S. L., and D. E. Bright. 1992.** A catalog of Scolytidae and Platypodidae, Part 2, Taxonomic Index, Volume A and B. Great Basin Naturalist Memoirs 13.
- Zhou, X. D., W. De Beer, B. D. Wingfield, and M. J. Wingfield. 2002.** Infection sequence and pathogenicity of *Ophiostoma ips*, *Leptographium serpens* and *L. lundbergii* to pines in South Africa. *Fungal Diversity* 10: 229-240.

## *Tetropium fuscum*

E.E. Davis, E.M. Albrecht, and R.C. Venette

### Scientific Name

*Tetropium fuscum* Fabricius

### Synonyms:

*Callidium fuscum* Fabricius  
(reviewed in Dobesberger 2005)

### Common Names

Brown spruce longhorned beetle

### Type of Pest

Bark and cambium boring beetle

### Taxonomic Position

**Kingdom:** Animalia, **Phylum:** Arthropoda,

**Order:** Coleoptera,

**Family:** Cerambycidae,

**Subfamily:** Spondylidinae

### Reason for Inclusion in Manual

CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2013)

### Pest Description

#### Adult (Fig. 25)

"The adult is black or dark brown, with a flattened body that varies in length from 8-17 mm ... The elytra range in color from brown to reddish or yellow-brown or straw-yellow and bear 2 to 3 distinct longitudinal stripes ... A broad whitish to beige pubescent band is present at the base of the elytra ... and the 5th sternite is distinctly truncated (flat edge). Short gray-yellow densely packed hairs cover the first quarter of the elytra. The short antennae are red-brown in color and the legs are dark brown and short. A deep groove is found on the head between the antennae. The mat-like pronotum is almost as wide as it is long. Viewed from the side, the pronotum is angular and wide, with dense granulation. It also bears a dense, wrinkled and punctured plate that has a longitudinal hole ... The pronotum is usually black with a notable bulge and sometimes with a rusty border at the base and apex ... Fine short hairs cover the body and various diverse forms in color and size occur" (Dobesberger 2005).

#### Egg

"The egg is 1.0-2 mm long and 0.2-0.3 mm wide and oblong and oval in shape. Color is white with a tinge of green. The generally smooth egg bears a band of microsculpture about 20% of the length of the egg, towards the end with the head



Photo © M.Hoskovec

Fig. 25. Adult male *Tetropium fuscum*.  
Photo by Michal Hoskovec,  
<http://www.uochb.cas.cz/~natur/cerambyx/tefus.htm>

of the developing larva. Differentiation among eggs of various species of *Tetropium* is not possible” (Dobesberger 2005).

### Larva

Larvae of *T. fuscum* are “virtually indistinguishable from other *Tetropium* species” (Smith and Humble 2000).

“The larva is yellow-white in color, with conspicuous legs on the thorax, the tarsi of which bear tiny spinules ... Mature larvae are about 14-28 mm long, and are slightly flattened. The head is about 0.8 mm wide ... Hairs on the sides of the head are sparse and the head is reddish brown in color. The head capsule bears a narrow lateral white band, typical of the genus. Long, but sparse setaceous hairs (about 10 to 14 hairs per tuft) occur in the anterior half with a sclerotized base. The lateropraesternum is entirely reticulately microspiculate, without a large central smooth area ... Sclerotized spinules occur on the posterior margin of abdominal tergum IX, which look like spots and are separated by a space greater than the diameter of the spinule. The spinules are set on their tubercular base with extensive, but indistinct sclerotization” (Dobesberger 2005).

### Pupa

“The pupa is white in color, about 17 mm long (range 10-17 mm) and about 3.8 mm wide ... The mesonotum is slightly raised and is devoid of large spinules. The pronotum bulges and is rounded laterally, narrowing more anteriorly (i.e., the sides become parallel), with a short longitudinally grooved fold along the sides of the disk, and minute uneven spinules. In the region of the scutellum, the mesonotum is slightly raised and minute spinules occur that are barely visible under high magnification. The abdominal tergites bulge in the posterior half, with acute spinules along the sides of a common longitudinal groove forming a transversely elongate band that narrows laterally. Tergum VII has minute spinules behind the middle form an indistinct transverse row” (Dobesberger 2005).

## **Biology and Ecology**

The biology and ecology of *Tetropium fuscum* are similar to species indigenous to North America, including *T. abietis*, *T. cinnamopterum*, *T. parvulum*, *T. schwarzianus*, and *T. velutinum* (reviewed in Dobesberger 2005). *T. fuscum* is also similar to *T. castaneum*, another potentially invasive species which is not known to occur in North America (reviewed in CAB 2005). A detailed review of the biology of closely related *T. castaneum* is provided by Dobesberger (2005).

Members of the genus *Tetropium* typically have 1-2 generations annually depending on a number of biotic and abiotic factors including climate and host availability and quality (reviewed in Dobesberger 2005). In Canada, *T. fuscum* typically completes development within a year inside its host and overwinters in the larval stage (Smith and Humble 2000). Larvae can survive short (<30 min) exposure to 45°C; larvae exposed to 50°C or warmer will die in less than 30

minutes (Mushrow et al. 2004). All life stages of *T. fuscum* may be found inside the tree during the summer (Smith and Humble 2000)

Adults emerge for 6-8 weeks during the spring and summer and live for approximately three weeks. Adults are fully mature at emergence and select hosts soon thereafter. *T. fuscum* attacks stressed, dying, recently cut or apparently healthy trees. Adults will either attack their natal host or fly to find another host (Kimoto and Duthie-Holt 2006). Adults are considered “strong flyers” (reviewed in NAPPO 2000). However, this insect has not been detected more than 15 km away from the point of initial establishment in North America (Cunningham 2006). *T. fuscum* prefers tree hosts >10 cm in diameter (Cunningham 2006). Females mate and emerge ready for oviposition. On average, 80 eggs are laid singly, in pairs or groups ( $\leq 10$ ) under bark scales or in crevices. Eggs hatch in approximately two weeks. Larvae bore irregular tunnels parallel to the bark in the cambial layer of the host, and develop over a period of about two months (reviewed in CAB 2005). Mature larvae excavate oval pupal chambers at the end of tunnels, perpendicular to the bark, and overwinter in the inner cambial region or sapwood at a depth within 4 cm of the bark surface (Kimoto and Duthie-Holt 2006). Pupation occurs in spring (reviewed in CAB 2005). Fungal associates including *Ophiostoma* spp. may be observed inside the pupal chamber. Eclosion occurs after about two weeks and adults emerge (reviewed in CAB 2005).

### **Pest Importance**

Since its detection in North America (see Known Distribution), the risks posed to the environment and to the economy by *Tetropium fuscum* have been extensively reviewed by the Canadian Food Inspection Agency (CFIA) (Cunningham 2006, Kimoto and Duthie-Holt 2006) and Natural Resources Canada (Smith and Hurley 2000, Smith and Humble 2000). In Asia and Europe, *T. fuscum* is normally a secondary pest but occasionally can attack and kill apparently healthy trees (reviewed in Dobesberger 2005). Additional concern was raised because the range of preferred hosts expanded from Norway spruce (*Picea abies*) in Europe to Norway spruce, red spruce (*P. rubens*) and white spruce (*P. glauca*) in North America (Allen and Humble 2002, O'Leary et al. 2003, Cunningham 2006). Trees decline and die within 1-5 years of the initial attack (O'Leary et al. 2003). Population density for this pest periodically reaches outbreak proportions (reviewed in Dobesberger 2005). Outbreaks may last for 10 years (NAPPO 2003). Areas with stressed trees are especially at risk (reviewed in Dobesberger 2005).

Cambial boring by this pest disrupts the phloem and eventually causes death. Insect-damaged trees are also vulnerable to subsequent attack by secondary insects and pathogens (reviewed in Dobesberger 2005). Damage caused by this insect and secondary pests results in economic losses including reduced mature stand volume, wood quality, and log and timber value (reviewed in Dobesberger

2005). Stand volume losses attributed to this pest and related species have been estimated at 30-40% (reviewed in Dobesberger 2005).

Establishment of *T. fuscum* in the United States would present a significant threat to forests and the forest products industry and likely result in domestic and/or international quarantines or requirements for additional treatment of potentially infested host materials. In Canada, lethal temperatures to kill all life stages of *T. fuscum* were determined by Mushrow et al. (2004).

Reduction or loss of mature spruce and other conifers would negatively impact forest composition and displace native species. This would likely necessitate biological, chemical, and silvicultural control measures. Natural enemies of *T. fuscum* are known to occur in its native and introduced regions and may contribute to managing population densities of this pest, but little is known about the efficacy of these organisms as potential biological control agents in North America (reviewed in Dobesberger 2005). Increased tree mortality may also increase the amount of hazard trees available to fuel wildfires (reviewed in Dobesberger 2005, Cunningham 2006). See 'Known Vectors.'

### Symptoms

Symptoms of *T. fuscum* may be easily confused with damage caused by closely related species of longhorn beetles, bark beetles and other factors causing to tree decline (Harrison et al. 2004). External symptoms of attack by *T. fuscum* include white resin streaks (resinosis) on the trunk; yellowing, brown or reddish-brown crown; and cast needles (reviewed in Smith and Humble 2000). Oval exit holes (4-6 mm in diameter) plugged with sawdust may be visible on the entire bole up to a height of approximately 7 m (O'Leary et al. 2003). Internally, a network of irregular and L-shaped galleries and chambers may be observed. Galleries are packed with frass and wood fibers. All life stages of this insect may be found inside the tree during the summer (NAPPO 2000, Smith and Humble 2000, Kimoto and Duthie-Holt 2006). In Canada, evidence of *O. tetropii* seem to indicate the current or previous presence of *T. fuscum* (Harrison et al. 2004).

### Known Hosts

*Tetropium fuscum* feeds on conifers, especially *Picea* and *Pinus* spp., but may also feed on hardwoods (NAPPO 2003). In its native range, *T. fuscum* is a secondary pest, chiefly affecting dead or dying *Picea abies* (Jacobs et al. 2003, Sweeney et al. 2004) or trees previously attacked by the scolytid *Ips typographus* (Jacobs et al. 2003). However, it is much more aggressive where it has been introduced in Canada, attacking healthy *P. abies*, *P. glauca*, *P. mariana*, and *P. rubens* (Jacobs et al. 2003, Sweeney et al. 2004, Sweeney et al. 2006).

| Host                    | Reference   |
|-------------------------|---|
| <i>Abies</i> spp. (fir) | (Kolk and Starzyk 1996, reviewed in Dobesberger 2005) |

| Host  | Reference  |
|---|--|
| <i>Abies alba</i> (silver fir)  | (O'Leary et al. 2003, reviewed in Dobsberger 2005)   |
| <i>Larix</i> spp. (larch)   | (NAPPO 2003, reviewed in Dobsberger 2005)            |
| <i>Picea</i> spp. (spruce)  | (Allen and Humble 2002, Hoskovec and Rejzek 2006)    |
| <i>Picea abies</i> (= <i>Picea excelsa</i> ) (Norway spruce) <sup>1</sup> | (Kolk and Starzyk 1996, Sweeney et al. 2006)         |
| <i>Picea glauca</i> (white spruce) <sup>1</sup>                           | (Smith and Humble 2000, Sweeney et al. 2006)         |
| <i>Picea mariana</i> (black spruce) <sup>1</sup>                          | (Smith and Humble 2000, Sweeney et al. 2006)         |
| <i>Picea pungens</i> (blue spruce)  | (O'Leary et al. 2003, reviewed in Dobsberger 2005)   |
| <i>Picea rubens</i> (red spruce) <sup>1</sup>                             | (Smith and Humble 2000, Sweeney et al. 2006)         |
| <i>Picea stichensis</i> (Sitka spruce)                                    | (O'Leary et al. 2003, reviewed in Dobsberger 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus</i> spp. (pine)  | (Allen and Humble 2002, Hoskovec and Rejzek 2006)    |
| <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> (Scots pine)                                      | (Kolk and Starzyk 1996, reviewed in Dobsberger 2005) |

1. New host associations for *T. fuscum* in Canada (Smith and Humble 2000).

### Known Vectors

*T. fuscum* is associated with two fungal pathogens, *Ophiostoma tetropii* and *Pesotum fragrans* (Harrison et al. 2004, Jacobs and Seifert 2004a, 2004b). *O. tetropii* is a bluestain fungus considered to have low virulence (Humble and Allen 2006). Jacobs and Seifert (2004b) consider *O. tetropii* a saprophyte, not a pathogen. See 'Pest Importance.'

### Known Distribution

*Tetropium fuscum* is native to Europe (O'Leary et al. 2003, Harrison et al. 2004). It was first described from North America in 1999, but it is thought to have been present since at least 1990 (Smith and Hurley 2000, Smith and Humble 2000, reviewed in Dobsberger 2005).

| Location    | Reference   |
|-------------|---|
| <b>Asia</b> |   |
| Japan       | (reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Dobsberger 2005) |
| Kazakhstan  | (reviewed in CAB 2005)                              |
| Turkey      | (reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Dobsberger 2005) |

| Location               | Reference   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>Europe</b>          |   |
| Austria                | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Belarus                | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Belgium                | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Bosnia and Herzegovina | (reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Dobsberger 2005)   |
| Bulgaria               | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Croatia                | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Czech Republic         | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Denmark                | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Estonia                | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Finland                | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| France                 | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Germany                | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Hungary                | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Italy                  | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Latvia                 | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Lithuania              | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Moldova                | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Montenegro             | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Netherlands            | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Norway                 | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Poland                 | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Romania                | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Russia                 | (reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Dobsberger 2005)   |
| Serbia                 | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Slovakia               | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Slovenia               | (reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Dobsberger 2005)   |
| Sweden                 | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Switzerland            | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Ukraine                | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| United Kingdom         | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <b>North America</b>   |   |
| Canada <sup>1</sup>    | (Smith and Hurley 2000, Allen and Humble 2002, Jacobs et al. 2003, O'Leary et al. 2003, Harrison et al. 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Dobsberger 2005, Sweeney et al. 2006) |

1. Present in Halifax, Nova Scotia since at least 1990 (Allen and Humble 2002, O'Leary et al. 2003, Harrison et al. 2004).

### Potential Distribution within the United States

The known distribution of *T. fuscum* suggests that the insect may be most closely associated with two biomes, both of which occur in the United States:

(1) temperate coniferous forests; and (2) temperate broadleaf and mixed forests. Collectively, these biomes account for approximately 47% of the area of the contiguous United States and are generally found east of the Mississippi River and scattered throughout the Intermountain West, the Pacific Northwest, and the Sierra-Nevada Mountains.

A recent host map analysis by USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST, illustrates the abundance of host material in the southeast, parts of the northeast, and portions of the western United States.

### Survey

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

The CAPS-approved method is a trap and lure combination. The Trap Product Name in the IPHIS Survey Supply Ordering System is the "Cross Vane Panel Trap." The lures are effective for 56 days (8 weeks).

The Lure Product Names are "Spruce Blend Lure," "Geranyl Acetol Lure," and "Ethanol Lure."

The release rates of these lures are highly temperature-dependent. However, CAPS has listed a conservative length of effectiveness that will be effective for even the warmest climates in the CAPS community.

**IMPORTANT:** Placing lures for two or more target species in a trap should never be done unless otherwise recommended.

**Trap spacing:** When trapping for EWB/BB, separate traps with different lure combinations by at least 30 meters (98 feet).

#### **Literature-Based Methods:**

**Baited traps:** Recent research has improved the feasibility of regional surveys with baited traps. Unlike many other beetles, *T. fuscum* is not attracted to  $\alpha$ -pinene or ethanol alone (Sweeney et al. 2004). Sweeney et al. (2006) found a high-release lure of ethanol (275 mg/d) and "spruce blend" (2000 mg/d) attracted the most *T. fuscum*. The "spruce blend" [44% ( $\pm$ )- $\alpha$ -pinene, 19% (-)- $\beta$ -pinene, 10% (+)-3-carene, 18% (+)-limonene, and 9%  $\alpha$ -terpinolene] closely resembles the cortical volatile composition of *T. fuscum*-infested *Picea rubens* (Sweeney et al. 2006). The improved capture with the addition of ethanol suggests *T. fuscum* favors weakened hosts (Sweeney et al. 2006). Sweeney et al. (2006) recommend using Colossus traps to capture the greatest number of *T. fuscum*.

Male *T. fuscum* produce the pheromone fuscol [(E)-6,10-dimethyl-5,9-undecadien-2-ol]. Alone, fuscol is not particularly attractive; however, when combined with host volatiles (ethanol + “spruce blend”), the mixture attracts significant numbers of male and female *T. fuscum* and female *T. cinnamopterum*, a native North American member of the genus (Silk et al. 2007). Trapping methods employing this lure may prove useful in the future.

Visual inspection: Traditionally, surveys for *Tetropium fuscum* have relied on visual inspection of potentially infested hosts (Henry et al. 2005). Externally, infested trees may exhibit copious resin flows, yellowing of the crown, and loss of needles. Exit holes are ~4 mm in diameter and can be found on trees that have been infested for >1 yr. Irregular feeding tunnels up to 6 mm across are found in the cambium and are packed with frass and wood fibers (NAPPO 2000, Smith and Humble 2000, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Dobesberger 2005). *T. fuscum* has been found throughout the trunk of *Picea rubens* to a height of 7 m (Smith and Hurley 2000). Larval tunnels and pupal chambers may extend up to 4 cm into the cambium of an infested tree (Jacobs et al. 2003).

### Key Diagnostics

#### CAPS-Approved Method:

Confirmation of *T. fuscum* is by morphological identification.

#### Literature-Based Methods:

Identification depends on examination of adult morphological characters. PCR assays may be useful in telling apart species of *Tetropium* (Henry et al. 2005).

The presence of *Ophiostoma tetropii*, a fungal associate of *T. fuscum* in Europe and North America, is a useful predictor of the presence of this beetle (Harrison et al. 2004, Jacobs and Seifert 2004b). *O. tetropii* can be “isolated on selective cyclohexamide-streptomycin-malt-agar or ‘CSMA’ medium ... and identified in about 4 weeks” (Harrison et al. 2004).

### Easily Confused Pests

There are 17 species of *Tetropium* worldwide, with several present in North America (reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Dobesberger 2005). *T. fuscum* may be confused with the morphologically similar *T. cinnamopterum*, which is indigenous to North America (Jacobs et al. 2003). *T. fuscum* is also similar to *T. castaneum*, another potentially invasive species not known to occur in North America (reviewed in CAB 2005).

### References

- Allen, E. A., and L. M. Humble. 2002.** Nonindigenous species introductions: a threat to Canada's forests and forest economy. *Canadian Journal of Plant Pathology* 24: 103-110.
- CAB. 2005.** Crop Protection Compendium. CAB International. Available on-line at: <http://www.cabicompendium.org/cpc>. Accessed 8 May 2007.

- Cunningham, G. 2006.** Pest Risk Assessment Summary: Brown Spruce Longhorn Beetle. Canadian Food Inspection Agency. Available on-line at: <http://www.inspection.gc.ca/english/plaveq/pestrava/tetfus/tech/sumsome.shtml>. Accessed 9 May 2007.
- Dobesberger, E. J. 2005.** EXFOR Database Pest Report: *Tetropium fuscum*. USDA Forest Service. Available on-line at: <http://spfnic.fs.fed.us/exfor/data/pestreports.cfm?pestidval=122&langdisplay=english>. Accessed 4 January 2007.
- Harrison, K. J., G. A. Smith, J. E. Hurley, and W. MacKay. 2004.** *Ophiostoma tetropii* as a detection tool for the brown spruce longhorn beetle, *Tetropium fuscum* (Fabr.), in Halifax, Nova Scotia, Canadian Plant Disease Survey: Disease Highlights. The Canadian Phytopathological Society, Saskatoon.
- Henry, G., J. Sweeney, W. MacKay, R. Hamelin, G. Smith, M. J. Côté, and N. Lecours. 2005.** Update on survey and eradication of the brown spruce longhorn beetle, and summary of recent research, pp. 32-33. In K. Gottschalk [ed.], Proceedings: 16th U.S. Department of Agriculture interagency research forum on gypsy moth and other invasive species 2005. General Technical Report NE-337. USDA Forest Service, Annapolis, Maryland.
- Hoskovec, M., and M. Rejzek. 2006.** *Tetropium fuscum*. Available on-line at: <http://www.uochb.cas.cz/~natur/cerambyx/tefus.htm>. Accessed 8 May 2007.
- Humble, L. M., and E. A. Allen. 2006.** Forest biosecurity: alien invasive species and vectored organisms. Canadian Journal of Plant Pathology 28: S256-S269.
- Jacobs, K., and K. A. Seifert. 2004a.** *Pesotum fragrans*. Canadian Journal of Plant Pathology 26: 79-80.
- Jacobs, K., and K. A. Seifert. 2004b.** *Ophiostoma tetropii*. Canadian Journal of Plant Pathology 26: 76-78.
- Jacobs, K., K. A. Seifert, K. J. Harrison, and T. Kirisits. 2003.** Identity and phylogenetic relationships of ophiostomatoid fungi associated with invasive and native *Tetropium* species (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae) in Atlantic Canada. Canadian Journal of Botany 81: 316-329.
- Kimoto, T., and M. Duthie-Holt. 2006.** Exotic Forest Insect Guidebook. Canadian Food Inspection Agency.
- Kolk, A., and J. R. Starzyk. 1996.** Black spruce long-horn beetle - *Tetropium castaneum* (L.) and Brown spruce long-horn beetle - *Tetropium fuscum* Fabr., Atlas skodliwych owadów lesnych (The atlas of forest insect pests). Multico Warszawa, Warsaw.
- Mushrow, L., A. Morrison, J. Sweeney, and D. Quiring. 2004.** Heat as a phytosanitary treatment for the brown spruce longhorn beetle. Forestry Chronicle 80: 224-228.
- NAPPO. 2000.** Brown Spruce Longhorn Beetle *Tetropium fuscum*. Available on-line at: <http://www.pestalert.org/storage/datasheet.rtf>. Accessed 8 May 2007.

- NAPPO. 2003.** *Tetropium fuscum* F. Available on-line at:  
<http://www.pestalert.org/Detail.CFM?recordID=11>. Accessed 9 May 2007.
- O'Leary, K., J. E. Hurley, W. Mackay, and J. Sweeney. 2003.** Radial growth rate and susceptibility of *Picea rubens* Sarg. to *Tetropium fuscum* (Fabr.). In M. L. McManus and A. M. Liebhold [eds.], Proceedings: Ecology, Survey and Management of Forest Insects. Kraków, Poland. General Technical Report NE-311. USDA Forest Service Northeastern Research Station.
- Silk, P. J., J. Sweeney, J. Wu, J. Price, J. M. Gutowski, and E. G. Kettela. 2007.** Evidence for a male-produced pheromone in *Tetropium fuscum* (F.) and *Tetropium cinnamopterum* (Kirby) (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). *Naturwissenschaften* 94: 697-701.
- Smith, G., and J. E. Hurley. 2000.** First North American record of the Palearctic species *Tetropium fuscum* (Fabricius) (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). *Coleopterists Bulletin* 54: 540-540.
- Smith, G. A., and L. M. Humble. 2000.** The brown spruce longhorn beetle, Exotic Forest Pest Advisory - Pacific Forestry Centre, Canadian Forest Service. Pacific Forestry Centre, Canadian Forest Service, Victoria, Canada.
- Sweeney, J., J. M. Gutowski, J. Price, and P. De Groot. 2006.** Effect of semiochemical release rate, killing agent, and trap design on detection of *Tetropium fuscum* (F.) and other longhorn beetles (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). *Environmental Entomology* 35: 645-654.
- Sweeney, J., P. De Groot, L. MacDonald, S. Smith, C. Cocquempot, M. Kenis, and J. M. Gutowski. 2004.** Host volatile attractants and traps for detection of *Tetropium fuscum* (F.), *Tetropium castaneum* L., and other longhorned beetles (Coleoptera: Cerambycidae). *Environmental Entomology* 33: 844-854.

# *Tomicus destruens*

E.E. Davis, E.M. Albrecht, and R.C. Venette

## Scientific Name

*Tomicus destruens* Wollaston

## Synonyms:

*Blastophagus destruens*

*Blastophagus piniperda*

*Hylurgus piniperda*

*Hylurgus destruens*

*Myelophilus destruens*

*Tomicus piniperda* var.

*destruens*

(reviewed in Lekander 1971,  
Faccoli 2006)



Fig. 27. Damage to pines by *Tomicus destruens*.  
Photo by William M. Ciesla, <http://www.bugwood.org>

## Common Names

Pine shoot beetle

## Type of Pest

Bark, cambium (phloem) feeding, sapwood-boring beetle

## Taxonomic Position

**Kingdom:** Animalia, **Phylum:** Arthropoda, **Order:** Coleoptera,

**Family:** Curculionidae, **Subfamily:** Scolytinae

## Reason for Inclusion in Manual

CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2013)

## Pest Description

### Egg

"The immature stages (eggs, larvae and pupae) lack sufficient characteristics for positive identification to species. Eggs are a pearly white color" (Ciesla 2003).

### Larva

"Head capsule index [maximum head width ÷ head length to mandibles] 0.95. Frontal shield broad, triangulate with straight sides and distinct endocarinal line. Frontal setae five pairs of which pair 2 is the longest. Epistoma posteriorly limited by a continuous, slightly curved line which laterally bends backwards. Medially, on the anterior edge a large tubercle.

Antenna short and broad without differentiation. On the flat antennal field five setae of equal length, four of which are situated laterally of the antenna.

Clypeus with convex sides and gently concave anterior border. The medial of the clypeal setae about three times longer than the lateral ones.

Labrum with a rounded, flattened anterior border. The lateral pair of the antero-medial setae poorly developed, bristle-like, the medial one vigorous of equal breadth.

On the epipharynx the antero-lateral setae parallel to the anterior border of epipharynx. Medial epipharyngeal setae of equal size, in three pairs. Between the second and third pairs two groups of sensillae, each with three organs. Posterior sensillae lacking. Tormae short, broad, parallel or slightly convergent caudally.

Mentum with broadly attached arms and faintly indicated axis. Palpus with two distinct articles. On labium, the four setae of the same length and of equal breadth. Setae in the posterior pair on the ligula much closer to each other than the setae in the anterior pair. Submentum with spines along the lateral border. The three setae situated in a triangle with the medial one exterior to the others.

The larva described is a typical *Blastophagus* larva, but it differs in some important details from both *piniperda* and *minor* larvae. It is easily distinguished from the latter by the large medial tubercle on the epipharynx, which tubercle is missing in the *minor* larvae. In the *piniperda* larva, the tubercle is only vestigial or missing. Further, it differs from the *piniperda* larva in the number of medial epipharyngeal setae, invariably three pairs in *destruens*, and four in *piniperda*. The relative lengths of the clypeal setae is different too, with little difference in *piniperda* and large in *destruens*. There are other differences too but those mentioned here are the most important" (Lekander 1971).

*Tomicus destruens* has four larval instars. "The mean value of head capsule width was 0.48 mm for the I<sup>st</sup> instar, 0.638 mm for the II<sup>nd</sup> instar, 0.845 mm for the III<sup>rd</sup> instar and 1.141 mm for the IV<sup>th</sup> instar" (Peverieri and Faggi 2005).

### Pupa

"The pupae are white, mummy-like and have some adult features including wings that are folded behind the abdomen" (Ciesla 2003).

### Adult

"Mature colour of elytra reddish, antennal club of the same colour of the antennal funicle, third antennal segment with abundant vestiture of many setae, upper margin of the first antennal club segment with only short and regular setae, second interstriae of the declivity transversely wrinkled, with 2 or 3 rows of punctures, length/width of elytra <1.7, elytra/pronotum length <2.35, elytral length/pronotum width <1.9" (Faccoli 2006).

“Callow adults of both species [*T. destruens* and *T. piniperda*] have a similar homogeneous yellow colour, thus for young specimens other characters must be used for identification” (Faccoli 2006).

“The declivity ... [is] weakly, irregularly, transversely wrinkled, most easily seen on interstriae [sic] 2 where no setae occur, but in most *T. destruens* specimens the sculpture of the second declivital interstriae was more wrinkled than in *T. piniperda*” (Faccoli 2006).

“The ratio between length and width of the elytra was different between species, higher in *T. piniperda* (>1.7) than in *T. destruens* (<1.7). Also, the ratio between elytra and pronotum length was higher in *T. piniperda* (>2.35) than *T. destruens* (<2.35). Finally, the ratio between elytral length and pronotum width was higher in *T. piniperda* (>1.9) than *T. destruens* (<1.9)” (Fig. 28) (Faccoli 2006).

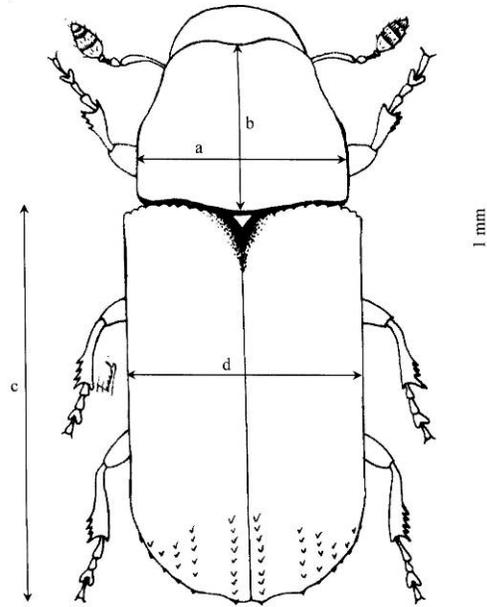


Fig. 28. Body measures taken in *Tomicus destruens* and *piniperda*: a – width of the posterior part of the pronotum; b – length of the pronotum; c – length of the elytra; d – width of elytra. Image from (Faccoli 2006).

### Biology and Ecology

*Tomicus destruens* may have up to 3 overlapping generations annually. However, each generation is difficult to differentiate and may represent multiple broods from the same female (Monleón et al. 1996, reviewed in Ciesla 2003). *Tomicus* spp. are monogamous (Poland and Haack 1998). In northern Italy, total development time is approximately 12 weeks, depending on temperature (Faccoli et al. 2005a).

Adult flight occurs in spring to mid summer and in fall to early winter at temperatures between 12-24°C (Monleón et al. 1996, Kohlmayr et al. 2002, reviewed in Ciesla 2003, Gallego et al. 2004, Faccoli et al. 2005a, Peverieri et al. 2006). Adults are strong flyers and can fly up to 2 km (Ciesla 2003). In Italy, adults are active in early to late spring with peak activity in mid to late spring. Adult beetles feed on young shoots until they reach reproductive maturity and mate. Females initiate attacks and construct vertical galleries in the inner bark and outer sapwood. Maternal galleries are about 6-10 cm [2¼ - 4 in] long and have 2-3 ventilation holes (Monleón et al. 1996). Eggs are laid singly in niches cut along each side of the gallery, parallel to the wood grain. Oviposition occurs in fall through early winter (Kohlmayr et al. 2002, reviewed in Ciesla 2003, Faccoli et al. 2005a).

Larvae hatch, bore, and feed within horizontal galleries in the phloem. Larval galleries are perpendicular to maternal galleries, but become indistinguishable toward the end of larval development (Monleón et al. 1996). There are 4 larval instars (Monleón et al. 1996, Peverieri and Faggi 2005). In Italy, development from larva to pupa takes approximately 7-8 weeks, depending on temperature (Faccoli et al. 2005a).

Pupal chambers are constructed at the end of larval feeding galleries or close to the bark surface (reviewed in Monleón et al. 1996, reviewed in Ciesla 2003). Pupation lasts 15-20 days in northeastern Spain, depending on air temperature (Monleón et al. 1996). When conditions are favorable for emergence, newly-emerged adults exit the tree through small round holes and search for hosts for maturation feeding and reproduction (Monleón et al. 1996, Faccoli 2007).

### **Pest Importance**

*Tomicus destruens* is an economically important pest of pine forests throughout its native range (Monleón et al. 1996, Kohlmayr et al. 2002, Gallego et al. 2004). The extent of damage from *T. destruens* depends on host availability, age and health of host trees, damage attributed to biotic factors such as feeding damage by multiple insect pests (or repeated attacks by the same insect), and abiotic factors such as stress due to drought, flooding or recent cutting (Nanni and Tiberi 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2003, Peverieri et al. 2006). *T. destruens* has been described as either a primary or a secondary pest (Gallego and Galián 2001). In southeastern Spain, damage to approximately 100,000 acres (40,000 ha) in the early to mid 1990s was attributed to attacks by *T. destruens* following a period of drought (Gallego and Galián 2001). Economic damage of pines may be cumulative and indistinguishable in areas with concurrent populations of *T. destruens*, *T. piniperda*, and *T. minor* (Gallego et al. 2004, Vasconcelos et al. 2006). *T. destruens* may damage trees (Fig. 27) as adults maturation feed on young shoots or as adults and larvae tunnel through the cambium and feed on phloem (reviewed in Kohlmayr et al. 2002, reviewed in Ciesla 2003, Vasconcelos et al. 2006). Females will maturation feed on multiple host trees (reviewed in Ciesla 2003).

*T. destruens* is associated with several potentially pathogenic fungi (see 'Known Vectors') (Nanni and Tiberi 1997, Peverieri et al. 2006). The impact of these fungi on tree mortality is poorly understood (Sauvard 2004). The combined damage from *T. destruens* and *Leptographium* spp. has contributed to significant economic losses in European pine forests (Peverieri et al. 2006). Adults emerging from infected trees are thought to transmit these fungi while feeding on newly selected hosts (Peverieri et al. 2006). Associated fungi are thought to provide an advantage to insect vectors by overcoming the host tree defenses (reviewed in Kohlmayr et al. 2002).

Increased fire severity and soil erosion may be attributed in part to *Tomicus* spp., particularly in areas where extensive damage has resulted in significant tree mortality (reviewed in Ciesla 2003).

## Symptoms

External evidence of maturation feeding and mining by adult beetles on young shoots ranges from discoloration of dying or dead shoots and leaves to tree death. Dark-colored boring dust and, in more healthy trees, pitch tubes on the bark surface provide evidence of breeding attacks. If bark is removed, the gallery system provides evidence of infestation. Secondary infection of vascular tissue by blue-stain fungi may be observed in the xylem. Females construct 6-25 cm-long [2¼ - 4 in] vertical galleries in the inner bark and outer sapwood. Larval feeding galleries are 4-9 cm in length and perpendicular to the maternal galleries (reviewed in Monleón et al. 1996, reviewed in Kohlmayr et al. 2002). *T. destruens* may attack the upper trunk and large branches of older *Pinus* spp. with thick bark, or the entire trunk of smaller trees with thin bark (reviewed in Ciesla 2003).

## Known Hosts

*Tomicus destruens* feeds almost exclusively on Mediterranean *Pinus* spp., but has the potential to colonize other conifers (Faccoli 2007). Its main hosts are *P. halepensis* and *P. pinaster* (Horn et al. 2006).

| Host  | Reference   |
|---|---|
| <i>Pinus brutia</i> (Calabrian pine)          | (Lekander 1971, Bright and Skidmore 1997, Kohlmayr et al. 2002, reviewed in Ciesla 2003, reviewed in CAB 2005, Faccoli 2006, Horn et al. 2006, Vasconcelos et al. 2006)   |
| <i>Pinus canariensis</i> (Canary Island pine) | (Bright and Skidmore 1997, reviewed in Ciesla 2003, reviewed in CAB 2005, Faccoli 2006, Vasconcelos et al. 2006)  |
| <i>Pinus halepensis</i> (Aleppo pine)         | (Lekander 1971, Bright and Skidmore 1997, Nanni and Tiberi 1997, Gallego and Galián 2001, Kerdelhue et al. 2002, Kohlmayr et al. 2002, reviewed in Ciesla 2003, Vasconcelos et al. 2003, reviewed in CAB 2005, Hrašovec et al. 2005, Faccoli 2006, Horn et al. 2006, Vasconcelos et al. 2006) |
| <i>Pinus pinaster</i> (maritime pine)         | (Laumond and Carle 1971, Lekander 1971, Bright and Skidmore 1997, Kerdelhue et al. 2002, Kohlmayr et al. 2002, reviewed in Ciesla 2003, Vasconcelos et al. 2003, reviewed in CAB 2005, Peverieri and Faggi 2005, Faccoli 2006, Horn et al. 2006, Vasconcelos et al. 2006)                     |

| Host  | Reference  |
|---|--|
| <i>Pinus pinea</i> (Italian stone pine)           | (Lekander 1971, Nanni and Tiberi 1997, Kerdelhue et al. 2002, Kohlmayr et al. 2002, reviewed in Ciesla 2003, Vasconcelos et al. 2003, Faccoli 2006, Horn et al. 2006, Vasconcelos et al. 2006) |
| <i>Pinus radiata</i> (radiata pine)               | (Kerdelhue et al. 2002, Horn et al. 2006, Vasconcelos et al. 2006)   |
| <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> (Scots pine) <sup>1</sup> | (Guerrero et al. 1997)   |

1. Main host plant of the taxonomically confused species *T. piniperda* (Faccoli et al. 2005b). *P. sylvestris* does not support development of *T. destruens* (Faccoli 2007).

### Known Vectors

*T. destruens* is associated with several potentially pathogenic fungi including *Heterobasidion annosum*, *Leptographium guttulatum*, *L. truncatum* (= *L. lundbergii*), *L. serpens*, *L. wingfieldii*, and *Phellinus pini* (Nanni and Tiberi 1997, Peverieri et al. 2006). *H. annosum* is pathogenic to many conifers, particularly pines and firs (Viiri 2004). *L. procerum* is weakly pathogenic to many conifers and causes root decline in *Pinus strobus* (Viiri 2004). See 'Pest Importance.'

### Known Distribution

*Tomicus destruens* and the closely related *T. piniperda* are found in France, Italy, Spain, and Portugal (Kerdelhue et al. 2002, Kohlmayr et al. 2002, Vasconcelos et al. 2006). Laumond and Carle (1971) and Gallego et al. (2004) suggest *T. destruens* is found at low altitudes (<1000 m) in the south Mediterranean.

| Location      | Reference   |
|---------------|---|
| <b>Africa</b> |   |
| Algeria       | (Faccoli 2006, Horn et al. 2006)  |
| Morocco       | (Horn et al. 2006)  |
| Tunisia       | (Horn et al. 2006)  |
| <b>Asia</b>   |   |
| Cyprus        | (Laumond and Carle 1971, Lekander 1971, Wood and Bright 1992, reviewed in Ciesla 2003)                                |
| Israel        | (Laumond and Carle 1971, Lekander 1971, Mendel 1986, Wood and Bright 1992, reviewed in Ciesla 2003, Horn et al. 2006) |
| Lebanon       | (Horn et al. 2006)  |

| <b>Location</b>         | <b>Reference</b>  |
|-------------------------|---|
| Turkey                  | (Laumond and Carle 1971, Lekander 1971, Wood and Bright 1992, reviewed in Ciesla 2003, Horn et al. 2006)  |
| <b>Europe</b>           |   |
| Croatia                 | (Hrašovec et al. 2005, Horn et al. 2006)  |
| France <sup>1</sup>     | (Laumond and Carle 1971, Lekander 1971, Wood and Bright 1992, reviewed in Ciesla 2003, Duan et al. 2004, Faccoli 2006, Horn et al. 2006, Vasconcelos et al. 2006)   |
| Greece                  | (Kohlmayr et al. 2002, Faccoli 2006, Horn et al. 2006)  |
| Italy                   | (Laumond and Carle 1971, Lekander 1971, Wood and Bright 1992, Nanni and Tiberi 1997, Kohlmayr et al. 2002, reviewed in Ciesla 2003, Peverieri and Faggi 2005, Faccoli 2006, Peverieri et al. 2006, Vasconcelos et al. 2006) |
| Portugal                | (Lekander 1971, Wood and Bright 1992, reviewed in Ciesla 2003, Vasconcelos et al. 2003, Horn et al. 2006, Vasconcelos et al. 2006)  |
| Spain                   | (Laumond and Carle 1971, Lekander 1971, Wood and Bright 1992, Kohlmayr et al. 2002, reviewed in Ciesla 2003, Horn et al. 2006, Vasconcelos et al. 2006)   |
| <b>Atlantic Islands</b> |   |
| Canary                  | (reviewed in Ciesla 2003)   |
| Madeira                 | (Wood and Bright 1992, Gallego and Galián 2001, reviewed in Ciesla 2003)  |

1. Southern and southeastern areas.

### **Potential Distribution within the United States**

The known distribution of *T. destruens* suggests that the insect may be most closely associated with four biomes, three of which occur in the United States: (1) temperate coniferous forests; (2) temperate broadleaf and mixed forests; and (3) Mediterranean scrub. Collectively, these biomes account for approximately 48% of the area of the contiguous United States and are generally found east of the Mississippi River, along the Pacific Coast, and scattered throughout the Intermountain West, the Pacific Northwest, and the Sierra-Nevada Mountains.

In a recent risk analysis by USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST, most of the continental United States has a low level to moderate risk of *T. destruens* establishment. Areas of the southeast have the highest risk for establishment of *T. destruens*.

### Survey

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

The CAPS-approved method is a trap and lure combination. The trap is a multi-funnel trap. The lure is effective for 56 days (8 weeks).

Any of the following Trap Product Names in the IPHIS Survey Supply Ordering System may be used for this target:

- Multi-funnel Trap, 12 Funnel, Wet
- Multi-funnel Trap, 8 Funnel, Wet

The Lure Product Names are “Alpha Pinene UHR Lure” and “Ethanol Lure.”

Beginning in 2012, the wet collection cup method will be the only method approved for use with multi-funnel (Lindgren) traps.

There are two alpha pinene products available in the IPHIS Ordering Database: 1) Alpha Pinene Lure and 2) Alpha Pinene UHR Lure. The Alpha Pinene Lure is an un-gelled lure in a bottle dispenser that is used by the PPQ Program for *Tomicus piniperda* (pine shoot beetle). This lure should only be used for the program survey.

The Alpha Pinene UHR Lure is a polysleeve, ultra-high release dispenser used for other EWB/BB targets. This lure should be used with the Ethanol Lure for the following two EWB/BB targets: *Monochamus alternatus* and *Tomicus destruens*.

The release rates of these lures are highly temperature-dependent. However, CAPS has listed a conservative length of effectiveness that will be effective for even the warmest climates in the CAPS community.

**IMPORTANT:** Placing lures for two or more target species in a trap should never be done unless otherwise recommended.

**Trap spacing:** When trapping for EWB/BB, separate traps with different lure combinations by at least 30 meters (98 feet).

#### **Literature-Based Methods:**



Fig. 30. Gallery of *Tomicus piniperda*. The gallery of *T. destruens* is similar. Image from Stanislaw Kinelski, <http://www.invasive.org>

**Baited traps:** Like other members of the genus *Tomicus*, *T. destruens* is attracted to pine volatiles (Guerrero et al. 1997). *T. destruens* is strongly attracted to (-)- $\alpha$ -pinene (Peverieri et al. 2004). Benzyl alcohol, at concentrations of 50  $\mu$ g and higher, masks the attractivity of pine volatiles and is “significantly repellent” at 500  $\mu$ g (Guerrero et al. 1997). Verbenone also repels *T. destruens* (Peverieri et al. 2004).

Peverieri et al. (2004) tested a number of attractants on *T. destruens*, including “lpm”, “Tomowit”, “Destruens”, and  $\alpha$ -pinene. Lures were placed in funnel-shaped traps (Witasek, Pherotech, Theysohn, and Intercept-PTBB) located 60 m from a stand of heavily-infested pines (*Pinus pinaster* and *P. pinea*) with 30 m between traps. Traps containing Tomowit, lpm, and Destruens were replaced every 30 d; those with  $\alpha$ -pinene were replaced every 15 d. lpm and (-)- $\alpha$ -pinene (release rate 90 mg/d at 21°C) were most attractive to *T. destruens*, while the experimental lure Destruens failed to attract a significant number of adults. Differences were not statistically significant among the four traps tested (Peverieri et al. 2004).

**Visual inspection:** Visual surveys should be carried out in autumn, when *T. destruens* has its reproductive flight (Gallego and Galián 2001, Peverieri et al. 2004). External signs of infestation by *T. destruens* include feeding damage on young shoots, pitch tubes on the bark surface, reddish-brown boring dust, and small round emergence holes. Maternal and larval galleries are found under the bark. The xylem may be discolored by blue-stain fungi associated with *T. destruens* (reviewed in Ciesla 2003).

### Key Diagnostics

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

Confirmation of *T. destruens* is by morphological identification. Examination by a taxonomist with expertise in the weevil subfamily Scolytinae is required for identification. Examine specimens under a microscope with 70-110X magnifications and gooseneck lighting sources. To determine if the specimen is *Tomicus*, use Passoa and Cavey (1994) followed by Brodel (2005- rev. 2009). To determine species of *Tomicus* (*destruens*, *minor*, or *piniperda*) use Brodel (2005- rev. 2009) with Brodel (2000). These references can be found in Appendix M of the current CAPS National Survey Guidelines.

#### **Literature-Based Methods:**

Identification depends on examination of adult morphological characters.

Maternal and larval galleries (Fig. 30) are distinct enough to allow identification to genus (Ciesla 2003).

### Easily Confused Pests

*Tomicus destruens* is morphologically similar to *T. piniperda* (Faccoli 2006) and the two species are difficult to distinguish in the field (Gallego and Galián 2001, Faccoli 2006). However larvae and callow (young) adults of *T. destruens* and

*T. piniperda* are easy to differentiate (Lekander 1971, Faccoli 2006). Faccoli (2006) provides a key for distinguishing *T. destruens* from *T. piniperda*. *T. piniperda* is native to Europe, Asia, and North Africa and was introduced into the United States in 1992 (Kohlmayr et al. 2002, reviewed in CAB 2005), while *T. destruens* is currently confined to the circummediterranean region. *T. piniperda* is the only representative of its genus in North America (CAB 2005). Both species are found in sympatry in France (Kerdelhue et al. 2002), Italy (Kohlmayr et al. 2002), Spain, and Portugal (Vasconcelos et al. 2006), but generally infest different species of pine (Kohlmayr et al. 2002). Gallego et al. (2004) found *T. destruens* and *T. piniperda* coexisting in *Pinus pinaster* and *P. radiata* in northern Spain. Molecular phylogenetic studies performed by Gallego and Galián (2001), Kerdelhué et al. (2002), Kohlmayr et al. (2002), and Faccoli et al. (2005b) have validated the status of *T. destruens* as a separate species from *T. piniperda*. Early studies in France found the two species were interfertile, but individuals were identified by flight period and not morphologic or phylogenetic characteristics (Gallego and Galián 2001).

This species can be mistaken for other families and genera of small beetles with the naked eye. It may also be confused with *T. minor* which is not present in the United States.

## References

- Bright, D. E., and R. E. Skidmore. 1997.** A Catalog of Scolytidae and Platypodidae (Coleoptera), Supplement 1 (1990-1994). NRC Research Press, Ottawa.
- Brodell, C. F. 2005--rev. 2009.** *Tomicus* Bark Beetles: A Key for Separating Program Species *piniperda* from European Exotics *destruens* and *minor*.
- Brodell, C. F. 2000.** Distinguishing *Tomicus minor* from *T. piniperda*.
- CAB. 2005.** Crop Protection Compendium. CAB International. Available on-line at: <http://www.cabicompendium.org/cpc>. Accessed 18 October 2006.
- Ciesla, W. 2003.** EXFOR Database Pest Report: *Tomicus destruens*. USDA Forest Service. Available on-line at: <http://spfnic.fs.fed.us/exfor/data/pestreports.cfm?pestidval=9&langdisplay=english>. Accessed 18 October 2006.
- Duan, Y., C. Kerdelhue, H. Ye, and F. Lieutier. 2004.** Genetic study of the forest pest *Tomicus piniperda* (Col., Scolytinae) in Yunnan province (China) compared to Europe: new insights for the systematics and evolution of the genus *Tomicus*. *Heredity* 93: 416-422.
- Faccoli, M. 2006.** Morphological separation of *Tomicus piniperda* and *T. destruens* (Coleoptera: Curculionidae: Scolytinae): new and old characters. *European Journal of Entomology* 103: 433-442.
- Faccoli, M. 2007.** Breeding performance and longevity of *Tomicus destruens* on Mediterranean and continental pine species. *Entomologia Experimentalis et Applicata* 123: 263-269.
- Faccoli, M., A. Battisti, and L. Masutti. 2005a.** Phenology of *Tomicus destruens* (Wollaston) in northern Italian pine stands, pp. 185-193,

- Entomological research in Mediterranean forest ecosystems. INRA Editions, Versailles, France.
- Faccoli, M., A. Pisedda, P. Salvato, M. Simonato, L. Masutti, and A. Battisti. 2005b.** Genetic structure and phylogeography of pine shoot beetle populations (*Tomicus destruens* and *T. piniperda*, Coleoptera Scolytidae) in Italy. *Annals of Forest Science* 62: 361-368.
- Gallego, D., and J. Galián. 2001.** The internal transcribed spacers (ITS1 and ITS2) of the rDNA differentiates the bark beetle forest pests *Tomicus destruens* and *T. piniperda*. *Insect Molecular Biology* 10: 415-420.
- Gallego, D., F. Canovas, M. A. Esteve, J. Galián, and F. Schwerdtfeger. 2004.** Descriptive biogeography of *Tomicus* (Coleoptera: Scolytidae) species in Spain. *Journal of Biogeography* 31: 2011-2024.
- Guerrero, A., J. Feixas, J. Pajares, L. J. Wadhams, J. A. Pickett, and C. M. Woodcock. 1997.** Semiochemically induced inhibition of behaviour of *Tomicus destruens* (Woll.) (Coleoptera: Scolytidae). *Naturwissenschaften* 84: 155-157.
- Horn, A., G. Roux-Morabito, F. Lieutier, and C. Kerdelhue. 2006.** Phylogeographic structure and past history of the circum-Mediterranean species *Tomicus destruens* Woll. (Coleoptera: Scolytinae). *Molecular Ecology* 15: 1603-1615.
- Hrašovec, B., M. Pernek, D. Diminic, and I. Pilaš. 2005.** The up rise of xylophagous insect populations in Croatia as a consequence of climatic changes, Proceedings of the International Conference, Climate Change - Forest Ecosystems & Landscape, Sielnica-Zvolen (Slovak Republic).
- Kerdelhue, C., G. Roux-Morabito, J. Forichon, J. M. Chambon, E. Robert, and F. Lieutier. 2002.** Population genetic structure of *Tomicus piniperda* L. (Curculionidae: Scolytinae) on different pine species and validation of *T. destruens* (Woll.). *Molecular Ecology* 11: 483-494.
- Kohlmayr, B., M. Riegler, R. Wegensteiner, and C. Stauffer. 2002.** Morphological and genetic identification of the three pine pests of the genus *Tomicus* (Coleoptera, Scolytidae) in Europe. *Agricultural and Forest Entomology* 4: 151-157.
- Laumond, C., and P. Carle. 1971.** Nematodes associated with and parasitic on *Blastophagus destruens* (Col. Scolytidae). *Entomophaga* 16: 51-66.
- Lekander, B. 1971.** On *Blastophagus destruens* Woll. and a description of its larva (Col. Scolytidae). *Entomologisk Tidskrift* 92: 271-276.
- Mendel, Z. 1986.** Hymenopterous parasitoids of bark beetles (Scolytidae) in Israel: host relation, host plant, abundance, and seasonal history. *Entomophaga* 31: 113-125.
- Monleón, A., M. Blas, and J. M. Riba. 1996.** Biology of *Tomicus destruens* (Wollaston, 1865) (Coleoptera: Scolytidae) in the Mediterranean forest. *Elytron* 10: 161-167.
- Nanni, C., and R. Tiberi. 1997.** *Tomicus destruens* (Wollaston): biology and behaviour in Central Italy, pp. 131-134. In J. C. Gregoire, A. M. Liebhold, F. M. Stephen, K. R. Day and S. M. Salom [eds.], *Proceedings, Integrating*

- Cultural Tactics into the Management of Bark Beetle and Reforestation Pests. USDA Forest Service (GTR-NE-236).
- Passoa, S., and J. Cavey. 1994.** Key to help screen *Tomicus piniperda* (L.) from other North American Scolytidae (Coleoptera). USDA, APHIS, PPQ. NA-TP\_06-93.
- Peverieri, G. S., and M. Faggi. 2005.** Determination of age in larvae of *Tomicus destruens* (Wollaston, 1865) (Coleoptera Scolytidae) based on head capsule width. *Redia* 88: 115-117.
- Peverieri, G. S., P. Capretti, and R. Tiberi. 2006.** Associations between *Tomicus destruens* and *Leptographium* spp. in *Pinus pinea* and *P. pinaster* stands in Tuscany, central Italy. *Forest Pathology* 36: 14-20.
- Peverieri, G. S., M. Faggi, L. Marziali, T. Panzavolta, L. Bonuomo, and R. Tiberi. 2004.** Use of attractant and repellent substances to control *Tomicus destruens* (Coleoptera: Scolytidae) in *Pinus pinea* and *P. pinaster* pine forests of Tuscany. *Entomologica (Bari)* 38: 91-102.
- Poland, T. M., and R. A. Haack. 1998.** Reading the lines under bark. Michigan Entomological Society Entomology Notes no. 25.
- Sauvard, D. 2004.** General Biology of Bark Beetles, pp. 63-88. *In* F. Lieutier, K. R. Day, A. Battisti, J. C. Gregoire and H. F. Evans [eds.], *Bark and Wood Boring Insects in Living Trees in Europe, a Synthesis*. Kluwer Academic Publishers, London.
- Vasconcelos, T., A. Horn, F. Lieutier, M. Branco, and C. Kerdelhue. 2006.** Distribution and population genetic structure of the Mediterranean pine shoot beetle *Tomicus destruens* in the Iberian Peninsula and Southern France. *Agricultural and Forest Entomology* 8: 103-111.
- Vasconcelos, T., N. Nazare, M. Branco, C. Kerdelhue, D. Sauvard, and F. Lieutier. 2003.** Host preference of *Tomicus piniperda* and *Tomicus destruens* for three pine species, *Proceedings, Forest Insect Population Dynamics and Host Influences*. IUFRO, Kanazawa, Japan.
- Viiri, H. 2004.** Fungi associated with *Hylobius abietis* and other weevils, pp. 381-393. *In* F. Lieutier, K. R. Day, A. Battisti, J. C. Gregoire and H. F. Evans [eds.], *Bark and Wood Boring Insects in Living Trees in Europe, a Synthesis*. Kluwer Academic Publishers, London.
- Wood, S. L., and D. E. Bright. 1992.** A Catalog of Scolytidae and Platypodidae (Coleoptera), Part 2: Taxonomic Index. Brigham Young University, Provo.

# Arthropods: Moths

## *Dendrolimus pini*

E.E. Davis, E.M. Albrecht, and  
R.C. Venette

### Scientific Name

*Dendrolimus pini* Linnaeus

### Synonyms:

*Bombyx pini* Linnaeus

*Dendrolimus segregatus* Butler

*Gastropacha pini* Linnaeus

*Lasiocampa pini* Linnaeus

*Phalaena pini* Linnaeus

(reviewed in CAB 2005)

### Common Names

Pine-tree lappet, pine lappet, pine moth

### Type of Pest

Moth, defoliator

### Taxonomic Position

**Kingdom:** Animalia, **Phylum:** Arthropoda, **Order:** Lepidoptera,

**Family:** Lasiocampidae

### Reason for Inclusion in Manual

CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2013)

### Pest Description

Adult (Fig. 31)

“Male reddish ochre, more or less gray: superior wings chestnut at the base and extending to the disc; before the middle is a sinuated striga with a lunular white spot upon it, and beyond the middle an oblique ochraceous fascia, the inner margin crenated with a brown line, the outer one very much sinuated and marked with strong brown spots: inferior wings pale castaneous. Female paler” (Watson and Dallwitz 2007).

“The first pair of wings are with a small white spot and wide dark strip. Antennae of females are slightly saw-shaped, while those of males are double comb-shaped” (Kolk and Starzyk 1996).

“Adults are covered with thick scales on both the wings and body. Males have a wingspan of 50-70 mm and females a wingspan of 70-90 mm. The forewings are gray-brown to brown in color. They contain a reddish brown lateral band, edged on both sides with an irregular dark-brown to black stripe. The hind wings are red



Fig. 31. Adult male *Dendrolimus pini*. Image by Stanislaw Kinelski, <http://www.bugwood.org>

brown to gray brown in color. Body color is brown. Coloring of the males is typically darker than the females” (Ciesla 2004).

The sex of moths may be determined at eclosion (emergence from pupal cocoons) “from the form of the antennae which are more plume-like in males” (Winokur 1991).

### Egg

“Eggs are about 2 mm long, blue green in color when first deposited, later turning to gray” (Ciesla 2004).

### Larva (Fig. 32)

“Mature larvae range in size from 50-80 mm and are covered with soft gray or brownish hairs. Thoracic segments 2 and 3 have thick bands of hairs of alternating steel blue and black. The dorsal surface of each abdominal segment contains a black mark flanked by irregular white lines” (Ciesla 2004).

“A V-shaped spot [occurs] on the eight segment of the body” (Kolk and Starzyk 1996).

### Pupa

“Pupae range from 30-35 mm in length, are brown to black in color with both ends rounded. They are enclosed in a yellow-brown spindle shaped cocoon, which also contains remnants of the steel blue thoracic hairs” (Ciesla 2004).



Fig. 32. Larva of *Dendrolimus pini*. Image from W. Ciesla, <http://www.bugwood.org>

## **Biology and Ecology**

*Dendrolimus pini* typically has one generation per year. However, under adverse conditions (population density; climatic conditions; temperature; host availability and quality; presence of natural enemies; etc.), two years may be required to complete development. *D. pini* overwinters in the larval or pupal stages (reviewed in Malyshev 1987, Kolk and Starzyk 1996). Outbreaks are cyclical (Malyshev 1987). The density of *D. pini* between outbreaks remains higher in areas considered outside the outbreak center (Malyshev 1987). A maximum of 420-475 larvae per tree have been observed during an outbreak in Novokhoperskiye plantation (Voronezh Province, Russia; formerly European USSR) (Malyshev 1987). Sukovata et al. (2002) found a positive correlation between larval abundance and the monoterpene  $\beta$ -pinene.

The biology of *D. pini* is similar to that of *D. superans*, and is reviewed in Geispits (1965), Malyshev (1987), Kolk (1996), Pszczolkowski and Smaghe (1999), Winokur (1991) and Ciesla (2004).

In its native range, *D. pini* adults emerge in midsummer and live for about ten days. Flight typically occurs at night between late June and August. Mating occurs over several hours at night. Females fly after oviposition begins, however they remain flightless on the lower part of the host tree until egg deposition is partially completed. Females deposit 150-300 eggs in groups of 20-100 on needles, branches and bark crevices.

The egg incubation period is 14-25 days. Egg mortality is significant at or above 32°C.

Larvae hatch between late summer and early fall and disperse by crawling or ballooning on strands of silk carried by air currents. Caterpillars are most active at dusk and dawn. When feeding, larvae will consume all or part of a needle. Larvae feed immediately after egg hatch, initially on old growth in spring until new needles emerge, and then on new growth until late fall. Larvae complete 2-3 molts before overwintering in forest litter. Larvae move from the host to the forest floor in autumn once daylength is under 12 h. The majority of larvae will overwinter in forest litter within 1 m of a host tree. Under natural conditions diapause is induced when the temperature falls below 5°C. Larvae typically enter diapause as mid- to late-instars, and break diapause when forest litter temperature reaches 3°C. Exposure to daylengths <9 h for a period of 20-35 d can induce diapause in all instars. Diapause is inhibited by daylengths over 15-17 h. Larvae may also enter summer diapause when conditions become unfavorable for development. Early in spring, overwintered larvae return to tree crowns and resume feeding preferentially on year-old needle growth and may also feed on the tender bark of young tree shoots. Larvae feed intensely following diapause, consuming the majority of food necessary for completing development (3-5 times the amount of foliage consumed the previous fall). Feeding continues through midsummer followed by pupation.

Pupation occurs in spindle-shaped cocoons spun loosely with silk, needles and small branches, in bark crevices, tree crowns or nearby vegetation between late June and August. This stage typically requires 18-35 d under favorable conditions.

### **Pest Importance**

*Dendrolimus pini* is an economically important defoliator of pine and coniferous forests in Europe and Asia (Leśniak 1976a, 1976b, 1976c, Malyshev 1987, Pszczolkowski and Smagge 1999, reviewed in Ciesla 2004). Overwintered larvae cause more damage because they consume 3-5 times greater the volume of needles consumed in the fall (reviewed in Ciesla 2004).

Like *D. superans*, densities of *D. pini* typically build over several years, reach an outbreak condition, and then collapse (Varley 1949, Malyshev 1987). Outbreaks have been reported in pine forests and vary in size and extent depending on many factors including population density; dispersal behavior; forest type; host

availability and quality; stand age; higher temperatures and lower precipitation; and soil type (e.g., outwash plains and sandy soils) (Leśniak 1976a, 1976b, 1976c, reviewed in Ciesla 2004). Cyclic outbreaks have also been observed to coincide with solar activity, though the relationship between solar radiation intensity and outbreak frequency is not well understood (Leśniak 1976c).

Outbreaks of *D. pini* are familiar in Europe and can last 7-8 years. Outbreaks have been reported in Poland since the late 18<sup>th</sup> Century. In Poland, chemical control was used between 1946-1995 to reduce damage to 233,000 ha of forests caused by *Dendrolimus pini*. In northern Germany, historic outbreaks in the 13<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> centuries damaged more than 170,000 ha [conversion to acres] of forest. An outbreak in northeastern Germany in the mid 1990s caused heavy defoliation to 83,700 ha. Repeated annual defoliation can result in tree mortality. Weakened, stressed trees are subject to attack by secondary pests, and areas with extensive tree mortality are vulnerable to forest fires (reviewed in Ciesla 2004).

Establishment of *D. pini* in the United States could have adverse impacts on domestic and international trade and would likely result in domestic and/or international quarantines or requirements for additional treatment of potentially infested host materials (reviewed in Ciesla 2004).

Outbreaks in Europe have stimulated the use of aerial applications of synthetic pyrethroids or naturally-derived insecticidal compounds for insect suppression. The non-target impacts of these practices have not been evaluated (reviewed in Ciesla 2004, EPPO 2005).

*Dendrolimus pini* has a moderate host range, feeding primarily on needles of coniferous hosts. However, 82% of forests in the western United States are coniferous, so the potential impact on forests is significant (reviewed in Ciesla 2004).

Though rare and not well understood, *D. pini* can potentially impact human health. Dendrolimiasis is an allergic or hypersensitivity reaction (inflammation) affecting skin and/or joints (Diaz 2005).

### Symptoms

Defoliation of conifers, new and old growth. Severe or repeated defoliation over several years can result in tree death. During an outbreak, caterpillars are conspicuous and defoliation can be widespread (reviewed in Ciesla 2004).

### Known Hosts

*Dendrolimus pini* feeds on multiple species of *Pinus* (Lindelöw and Björkman 2001). Winokur (1991) lists *Pinus sylvestris* as the preferred host for *D. pini*. This insect prefers to feed on 20 to 80 year-old pine stands (Sukovata et al. 2002).

| Host                                       | Reference   |
|--|---|
| <i>Abies</i> spp. (fir)                    | (Diaz 2005)   |
| <i>Abies alba</i> (silver fir)             | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004)   |
| <i>Cedrus deodara</i> (Himalayan cedar)    | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Juniperus communis</i> (common juniper) | (Ciesla 2004)   |
| <i>Larix sibirica</i> (Siberian larch)     | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004)   |
| <i>Picea</i> spp. (spruce)                 | (Diaz 2005)   |
| <i>Picea abies</i> (Norway spruce)         | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Picea stichensis</i> (Sitka spruce)     | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004)   |
| <i>Pinus</i> spp. (pine)                   | (Pszczolkowski and Smagghe 1999, reviewed in CAB 2005, Diaz 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus cembra</i> (Swiss stone pine)     | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004)   |
| <i>Pinus mugo</i> (mountain pine)          | (Kolk and Starzyk 1996)   |
| <i>Pinus nigra</i> (black pine)            | (Kolk and Starzyk 1996, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus strobus</i> (eastern white pine)  | (Kolk and Starzyk 1996, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> (Scots pine)       | (Priesner et al. 1984, Winokur 1991, Kolk and Starzyk 1996, Johansson et al. 2002, Sukovata et al. 2002, reviewed in Ciesla 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005) |
| <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> (Douglas-fir) | (reviewed in Ciesla 2004)   |

### Known Vectors

*Dendrolimus pini* is not known to vector any pathogens.

### Known Distribution

*Dendrolimus pini* is native to central Asia and north Africa and is usually found at elevations >200 m [-660 ft] above sea level (Diaz 2005).

| Location                | Reference                         |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
|                         |                                   |
| <b>Africa</b>           |                                   |
| Morocco                 | (reviewed in CAB 2005)            |
|                         |                                   |
| <b>Asia</b>             |                                   |
| China                   | (reviewed in CAB 2005, Diaz 2005) |
| Georgia (Republic)      | (Kovalev et al. 1993)             |
|                         |                                   |
| <b>Atlantic Islands</b> |                                   |
| Mallorca (Spain)        | (Winokur 1991)                    |
|                         |                                   |
| <b>Europe</b>           |                                   |

| Location                    | Reference   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Austria                     | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Belarus                     | (Geispits 1965, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Czech Republic              | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Denmark                     | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Finland                     | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| France                      | (Malyshev 1987, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Germany                     | (Gäbler 1949, Varley 1949, reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Hungary                     | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Italy                       | (Malyshev 1987, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Netherlands                 | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Norway                      | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Poland                      | (Leśniak 1976a, 1976b, 1976c, Kolk and Starzyk 1996, Johansson et al. 2002, Sukovata et al. 2002, reviewed in CAB 2005) |
| Russia                      | (Geispits 1965, (Malyshev 1987, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Slovakia                    | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| Sweden                      | (Johansson et al. 2002, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Switzerland                 | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| United Kingdom <sup>1</sup> | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |

1. Only four records of *D. pini* are known from the British Isles (reviewed in Ciesla 2004).

### Potential Distribution within the United States

The known distribution of *D. pini* suggests that the insect may be most closely associated with two biomes, both of which occur in the United States: (1) temperate coniferous forests; and (2) temperate broadleaf and mixed forests. Both biomes account for approximately 47% of the area and are generally found east of the Mississippi River, and scattered throughout the Intermountain West, the Pacific Northwest, and the Sierra-Nevada Mountains.

In a recent risk analysis by USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST, most of the continental United States has a low risk of *D. pini* establishment.

### Survey

#### CAPS-Approved Method:

The CAPS-approved method is a trap and lure combination. The Trap Product Name in the IPHIS Supply Ordering System is the “Milk Carton Trap.” The lure is effective for 28 days (4 weeks).

The Lure Product Name is “*Dendrolimus pini-Dendrolimus sibiricus* Lure.”

A killing agent, a DDVP strip, is also required for these two target species.

The lure is hung inside the top of the trap at the level of the entry ports. Preferably, the lure is placed inside the lure holders, which are typically distributed with the lures, and the lure holder is stapled to the trap. If the lure holder is not available, the lure can be stapled to a garden tie and hung inside the trap. The killing agent, the DDVP strip, is placed in the bottom of the trap.

The wing trap was the recommended trap in 2011 for *Dendrolimus pini*. For 2012, the modified gypsy moth milk carton trap is the preferred trap. For 2012, a combined lure is to be used for both *D. pini* and *D. sibiricus* (*Dendrolimus pini - Dendrolimus sibiricus* lure). Therefore, using the milk carton trap (the preferred trap for *D. sibiricus* and also an effective trap for *Dendrolimus pini*) and the *Dendrolimus pini - Dendrolimus sibiricus* lure will allow for negative data reporting from one trap and lure combination for two targets.

Trap modification instructions:

Modify the standard gypsy moth milk carton by cutting a single large entry port (2.5 cm wide x 3 cm high) in each side by using a utility knife or similar tool to cut out the section of paperboard between the two existing entry ports. A plastic funnel (see Lance, 2006, Fig. 3) is placed inside the trap (tube-down) so that the top edge of the funnel is at the level of the bottom of the entry ports. The lure is hung inside the top of the trap and a killing agent (DDVP strip) is placed in the bottom. Lures should be replaced at least monthly in cooler areas and perhaps as often as every 2-3 weeks in hotter climates (Lance, 2006).

The Otis lab has a limited number of funnels available. Funnels will be shipped on a first come first serve basis and should be ordered through the IPHIS Survey Supply Ordering Database. Funnels can be reused for multiple years if cared for properly. Funnels should be removed from traps at the end of the season, washed in soap and water, rinsed, and stored dry. Please keep the funnels and re-use in subsequent years or ship the funnels back to the Otis lab so that other states may use them.

**IMPORTANT:** Placing lures for two or more target species in a trap should never be done unless otherwise recommended.

**Trap spacing:** When trapping for more than one species of moth, separate traps for different moth species by at least 20 meters.

**Notes:** The BHT (butylated hydroxytoluene) and Tinuvin found in the lure are stabilizers; anti-oxidant and light-stabilizers, respectively.

### **Literature-Based Methods:**

**Baited traps:** Traps baited with sex pheromones are the most effective method for monitoring adults. Priesner et al. (1984) found tetratraps baited with 1000 µg of the sex pheromone (Z,E)-5,7-dodecadienal had the highest total catch of adult male *D. pini*. Kovalev et al. (1993) improved capture of males with a 60:40 mixture of (Z,E)-5,7-dodecadienal:(Z,E)-5,7-dodecadien-1-ol over (Z,E)-5,7-dodecadienal alone. The two compounds are also the major components of the sex pheromone of the closely related *D. superans*, which is native to Asian Russia and the Far East. Klun et al. (2000) and Khrimian et al. (2002) used a 1:1 mixture of these two dienes to attract *D. superans*. The sex pheromone of *D. punctatus*, (Z,E)-5,7-dodecadien-1-yl acetate, is a “powerful inhibitor of the sex pheromone of *D. pini*” (Kong et al. 2001). (E,Z)-5,7-dodecadienal is also inhibitory (Priesner et al. 1984).

**Not Recommended:** Monitoring of populations of *D. pini* can be achieved through several methods. Soil sampling is useful for collecting overwintering larvae of *D. pini*, but Johansson et al. (2002) note this method “may be unreliable at low population densities.” Overwintering larvae are generally found in litter and mineral soil within ~1m of the tree (Kolk and Starzyk 1996, reviewed in Ciesla 2004).

**Not Recommended:** A technique developed for sampling of *D. superans* in Eastern Siberia may also be useful for sampling *D. pini*. The area around a tree is cleared of understory vegetation, a tarp is placed around the base, and the tree is struck 6-8 times with a “kolot”, a large, 2-3.5 m log. The larvae are dislodged from the tree and fall onto the tarp, where they are counted and identified. This method is not recommended for healthy trees as it is highly destructive to the tree being sampled (Vartanov 2002).

### **Key Diagnostics**

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

Confirmation of *D. pini* is by morphological identification. This species may occur in mixed populations with similar species. *D. pini* is morphologically distinctive, but identification should be confirmed by a qualified taxonomist. For larvae, use Passoa (2007); for adults, use Passoa (2009). These references can be found in Appendix M of the current CAPS National Survey Guidelines.

### **Literature-Based Methods:**

Identification depends on examination of adult morphological characters. No molecular tools are available to help with diagnosis.

### **Easily Confused Pests**

*Dendrolimus pini* may be confused with the closely-related *D. superans* (EPPO 2005). Neither species is present in the United States (reviewed in Ciesla 2004). *D. pini* may also be confused with other Lasiocampids.

## References

- CAB. 2005.** Crop Protection Compendium. CAB International. Available on-line at: <http://www.cabicompendium.org/cpc>. Accessed 18 October 2006 2006.
- Ciesla, W. M. 2004.** EXFOR Database Pest Report: *Dendrolimus pini*. USDA Forest Service. Available on-line at: <http://spfnic.fs.fed.us/exfor/data/pestreports.cfm?pestidval=158&langdisplay=english>. Accessed 18 October 2006.
- Diaz, J. H. 2005.** The evolving global epidemiology, syndromic classification, management, and prevention of caterpillar envenoming. *American Journal of Tropical Medicine and Hygiene* 72: 347-357.
- EPPO. 2005.** Data Sheets on Forest Pests: *Dendrolimus sibiricus*. European and Mediterranean Plant Protection Organization. Available on-line at: [http://www.eppo.int/QUARANTINE/insects/Dendrolimus\\_sibiricus/DS\\_Dendrolimus\\_spp.pdf](http://www.eppo.int/QUARANTINE/insects/Dendrolimus_sibiricus/DS_Dendrolimus_spp.pdf). Accessed 2 June 2005.
- Gäbler, H. 1949.** Kritische Raupenzahlen des Kiefernspinners. *Forstwissenschaftliches Centralblatt* 68: 254-256.
- Geispits, K. F. 1965.** Photoperiodic and temperature reactions affecting the seasonal development of the pine moths *Dendrolimus pini* L. and *D. sibiricus* Tschetw. (Lepidoptera, Lasiocampidae). *Entomological Review* 44: 538-553.
- Johansson, B. G., O. Anderbrant, and A. Sierpinski. 2002.** Multispecies trapping of six pests of Scots pine in Sweden and Poland. *Journal of Applied Entomology* 126: 212-216.
- Khrimian, A., J. A. Klun, Y. Hijji, Y. N. Baranchikov, V. M. Pet'ko, V. C. Mastro, and M. H. Kramer. 2002.** Synthesis of (Z,E)-5,7-dodecadienol and (E,Z)-10,12-hexadecadienol, Lepidoptera pheromone components, via zinc reduction of enyne precursors. Test of pheromone efficacy against the Siberian moth. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry* 50: 6366-6370.
- Klun, J. A., Y. N. Baranchikov, V. C. Mastro, Y. Hijji, J. Nicholson, I. Ragenovich, and T. A. Vshivkova. 2000.** A sex attractant for the Siberian moth *Dendrolimus superans sibiricus* (Lepidoptera: Lasiocampidae). *Journal of Entomological Science* 35: 158-166.
- Kolk, A., and J. R. Starzyk. 1996.** Pine moth (*Dendrolimus pini* L.), Atlas skodliwych owadów lesnych (The atlas of forest insect pests). Multico Warszawa, Warsaw.
- Kong, X., C. Zhao, and W. Gao. 2001.** Identification of sex pheromones of four economically important species in genus *Dendrolimus*. *Chinese Science Bulletin* 46: 2077-2082.
- Kovalev, B. G., T. S. Bolgar, P. A. Zubov, D. G. Zharkov, M. Golosova, E. A. Nesterov, and M. S. Tvaradze. 1993.** Identification of additional components of the sex pheromone of *Dendrolimus pini*. *Chemistry of Natural Compounds* 29: 135-136.
- Lance, D. 2006.** Guidelines for detection trapping of exotic Lymantriid and Lasiocampid moths. USDA-APHIS-PPQ. 11 pp.

- Leśniak, A. 1976a.** Certain trophic and intrapopulation conditions of the pine moth (*Dendrolimus pini* L.) outbreaks. *Ekologia Polska* 24: 565-576.
- Leśniak, A. 1976b.** Forest stand and site conditions of a pine moth (*Dendrolimus pini* L.) outbreaks. *Ekologia Polska* 24: 549-563.
- Leśniak, A. 1976c.** Climatic and meteorological conditions of the pine moth (*Dendrolimus pini* L.) outbreaks. *Ekologia Polska* 24: 515-547.
- Lindelöw, Å., and C. Björkman. 2001.** Insects on lodgepole pine in Sweden - current knowledge and potential risks. *Forest Ecology and Management* 141: 107-116.
- Malyshev, D. S. 1987.** Duration of the life cycle of the pine moth *Dendrolimus pini* L. (Lepidoptera: Lasiocampidae). *Entomological Review* 67: 61-66.
- Passoa, S. 2007.** Quarantine Significant Lepidoptera of Concern to the Southern United States. Presentation given at the Invasive Arthropod Workshop. Clemson University. May 7-9, 2007. Slide 44.
- Passoa, S. 2009.** Screening Key for CAPS Target Lepidoptera in the Eastern and Midwestern United States (males). Lab Manual for the Lepidoptera Identification Workshop. University of Maryland.
- Priesner, E., H. Bogenschütz, R. Albert, D. W. Reed, and M. D. Chisholm. 1984.** Identification and field evaluation of a sex pheromone of the European pine moth. *Zeitschrift für Naturforschung, C* 39: 1192-1195.
- Pszczolkowski, M. A., and G. Smaghe. 1999.** Effect of 20-hydroxyecdysone agonist, tebufenozide, on pre- and post-diapause larvae of *Dendrolimus pini* (L.) (Lep., Lasiocampidae). *Journal of Applied Entomology* 123: 151-157.
- Sukovata, L., A. Kolk, J. Jaroszynska, U. Krajewska, A. Purzynska, and V. Isidorov. 2002.** Host-tree preferences of the pine moth (Lepidoptera: Lasiocampidae) and pine beauty moth (Lepidoptera: Noctuidae) larvae in relation to needle quality. *In* M. L. McManus and A. M. Liebhold [eds.], *Proceedings Ecology, Survey and Management of Forest Insects*. USDA Forest Service, Kraków, Poland.
- Varley, G. C. 1949.** Population changes in German forest pests. *The Journal of Animal Ecology* 18: 117-122.
- Vartanov, R. 2002.** Some Economic Aspects of Monitoring of Siberian Moth in Krasnoyarskiy Krai and Irkutsk Oblast of the Russian Federation. The Heron Group, LLC.
- Watson, L., and M. J. Dallwitz. 2007.** British insects: the families of Lepidoptera. Available on-line at: <http://delta-intkey.com>. Accessed 1 May 2007.
- Winokur, L. 1991.** Phenology and development in *Dendrolimus pini* (L.) (Lepidoptera: Lasiocampidae): a preliminary study. *Entomologist's Gazette* 42: 243-250.

# *Dendrolimus punctatus*

T. P. Molet

## Scientific Name

*Dendrolimus punctatus*

## Synonyms:

*Dendrolimus baibarana* Matsumura

*Dendrolimus innotata* Walker

*Dendrolimus kantozana* Matsumura

*Dendrolimus pallidiola* Matsumura

*Dendrolimus punctata*

*Eutricha punctata* Felder

*Metanastria punctata* Walker

*Oeona punctata* Walker

## Common Names

Masson pine moth, pine caterpillar

## Type of Pest

Moth

## Taxonomic Position

**Kingdom:** Animalia, **Phylum:**

Arthropoda, **Order:** Lepidoptera,

**Family:** Lasiocampidae

## Reason for Inclusion in Manual

CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2013)

## Pest Description

### Egg

“Eggs are rose to light brown in color and deposited in rows on pine needles” (Ciesla 2001).

### Larva

“The mature larva is 55–70 mm long [2.17 to 2.76 in]. Abdominal and thoracic segments have alternating patterns of light gray and black bands. The black bands contain a series of orange markings. The larvae are covered with fine hairs (setae) that have urticating properties and can cause skin and eye irritation” (Ciesla 2001).

“The larvae have two colour forms: brownish-red and black. The scale-like setae on the body may be white or golden-yellow. The head is brownish-yellow. The



Fig. 34. Mature larva of *D. punctatus* (Image courtesy of William M. Ciesla, Forest Health Management International, [www.bugwood.org](http://www.bugwood.org))

frontal and adfrontal areas are dark brown. The adfrontal border is not smooth. There are distinct poisonous setae on the dorsal surfaces of the meso- and metathorax. Each abdominal segment has subdorsal anterior scale-like setae with serrate tips. The scale-like setae on the eighth abdominal segment are most distinct. There are abundant white setae on the lateral sides of the body. There is a pair of longitudinal bands from the head to the last abdominal segment. A white spot exists on the posterior upper of the spiracles in segments from the mesothorax to the eighth abdominal segment. Below the longitudinal band, a short oblique spot extends to the ventral surface at the anterior of each segment” (CABI 2010).

### Pupa

“The male pupae are 19-26 mm [0.74 to 1.02 in] long. The female pupae are 26-33 mm [1.02 to 1.30 in] long. The end of the anal hook varies from a closed circle to being slightly curved upwards” (CABI 2010).

### Adult

“The adult has a wingspan of ca 50-80 mm [1.97 to 3.15 in] with females being somewhat larger than the males. Color of wings is typically a medium, dull gray or brown. The front (mesothoracic) wings have two dark lines” (Ciesla 2001).

### **Biology and Ecology**

In Vietnam, *D. punctatus* has four generations per year; the first occurs from March to May, the second from June to July, the third from August to September, and the fourth from October to March (Billings 1991). In more northern latitudes, fewer generations are completed (Billings 1991). Depending on latitude, China has anywhere from 1 to 5 generations per year (Zhang et al. 2003) whereas Taiwan has 3 generations a year (Ying 1986).

Females lay an average of 300-400 eggs (Speight and Wylie 2001). Once hatched, larvae can disperse by ‘ballooning’ or travelling by wind on silk threads (Speight and Wylie 2001). Larvae feed openly on host needles (Speight and Wylie 2001). During low populations, larvae prefer to feed on



Fig. 35. Defoliation damage on *Pinus kesiya* (Khasia pine) caused by *D. punctatus* (Image courtesy of William M. Ciesla, Forest Health Management International, [www.bugwood.org](http://www.bugwood.org))

older needles (Billings 1991). *D. punctatus* goes through a total of 6 instars and the mature larvae measure around 7 cm (2.76 in) in length (Billings 1991).

Hibernation occurs in the larval stage, although *D. punctatus* can be active year round in some coastal areas of Vietnam (Billings 1991). Pupation occurs in cocoons that can be attached to either the needles or small branches (Ciesla 2001).

Emergence of adults occurs at dusk; mating and oviposition occur during the night. *D. punctatus* adults are strong fliers and are able to migrate up to 20 km (approximately 12.5 miles) (Speight and Wylie 2001).

### **Pest Importance**

This species is considered a very serious pine defoliator in southeast Asia (Billings 1991) and has become the most economically damaging insect pest of forests in southern China in recent years (Zhang et al. 2003). It is also a pest in Vietnam and Taiwan (Billings 1991, Ying 1986). At one point, over 56,000 ha (138,000 acres) of pine plantations in Vietnam were affected by defoliation caused by *D. punctatus* (Billings 1991).

Zhang et al. (2003) states that damage due to *D. punctatus* can be so severe that forests appear to be burned. Heavy defoliation can lead to reduced growth rates and tree mortality (Ciesla 2001) as well as loss of resin production (Speight and Wylie 2001). Heavily infested trees can take several years to recover (Ge et al. 1988).

*D. punctatus* can also serve as a health risk to individuals who come in contact with the larvae or cocoons of pupae. The hairs of *D. punctatus* cause reactions in individuals that can include rashes, headaches, dizziness, and localized arthritis if hairs come in contact with exposed skin (Lawson et al. 1986). This disorder is called pinemoth caterpillar disease (Lawson et al. 1986).

### **Symptoms**

Volume growth and resin production may be reduced when defoliation is severe (Billings 1991). Tree mortality may occur with repeated defoliation (Billings 1991). First instar larvae feed on the edges of needles and can cause needles to curve and turn yellowish while second instar and older larvae feed on whole leaves (CABI 2010). Older larvae may also feed on the middle of needles causing them to break (CABI 2010).

Recovery usually occurs if defoliation only happens once to trees (Billings 1991). In Vietnam, this pest is most likely to attack 7-15 year old plantations (Billings 1991). Outbreaks are common in young, pure pine stands and plantations (Ciesla 2001).

Populations can be difficult to detect when low (Zhang et al. 2003).

### Known Hosts

*Pinus massoniana* (masson pine) is the main host of *D. punctatus* (Zhang et al. 2003).

| Host   | Reference   |
|--|---|
| <i>Pinus armandii</i> (Armand's pine)          | (CABI 2010)   |
| <i>Pinus caribaea</i> (Caribbean pine)         | (Billings 1991)   |
| <i>Pinus echinata</i> (shortleaf pine)         | (Chang and Sun 1984)  |
| <i>Pinus ellotti</i> (swamp pine)              | (Chang and Sun 1984, Ying 1986, Zhang et al. 2003, Ji et al. 2005)                |
| <i>Pinus kesiya</i> (Khasi pine)*              | (Billings 1991)   |
| <i>Pinus latteri</i> (Tenasserim pine)         | (CABI 2010)   |
| <i>Pinus luchuensis</i> (luchu pine)           | (Chang and Sun 1984, Ying 1986)   |
| <i>Pinus massoniana</i> (masson pine)          | (Chang and Sun 1984, Ying 1986, Billings 1991, Zhang et al. 2003, Ji et al. 2005) |
| <i>Pinus merkusii</i> (Sumatran pine)          | (Billings 1991)   |
| <i>Pinus oocarpa</i> (oocarpa pine)            | (Billings 1991)   |
| <i>Pinus parviflora</i> (Japanese white pine)  | (Chang and Sun 1984)  |
| <i>Pinus tabulaeformis</i> (Chinese hard pine) | (Ji et al. 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus taeda</i> (loblolly pine)             | (Chang and Sun 1984, Zhang et al. 2003)   |
| <i>Pinus taiwanensis</i> (Taiwan pine)         | (Chang and Sun 1984)  |
| <i>Pinus thunbergii</i> (black pine)           | (Zhang et al. 2003)   |

\*These may be attacked by they tend to sustain less defoliation (Billings 1991).

### Known Vectors

This pest is not currently known to vector any pathogens or other associated organisms but attacked trees may attract secondary pests that can further damage already weakened trees (Ying 1986). Ciesla (2001) states that weakening of trees caused by *D. punctatus* may lead to increased susceptibility to bark beetle attack.

In southern China, root rot infection of *Pinus elliotii* plantations have been linked to *D. punctatus* (Speight and Wylie 2001).

This pest can cause health risks to individuals who come in contact with the larvae or pupae. The hairs of *D. punctatus* can cause reactions that can include rashes, headaches, dizziness, and localized arthritis if hairs come in contact with exposed skin. This disorder is called pinemoth caterpillar disease.

### Known Distribution

This species is endemic to Southeast Asia (Zhang et al. 2003).

| Location    | Reference        |
|-------------|------------------|
| <b>Asia</b> |                  |
| China       | (Billings 1991)  |
| Japan       | (Matsumura 1926) |
| Taiwan      | (Billings 1991)  |
| Vietnam     | (Billings 1991)  |

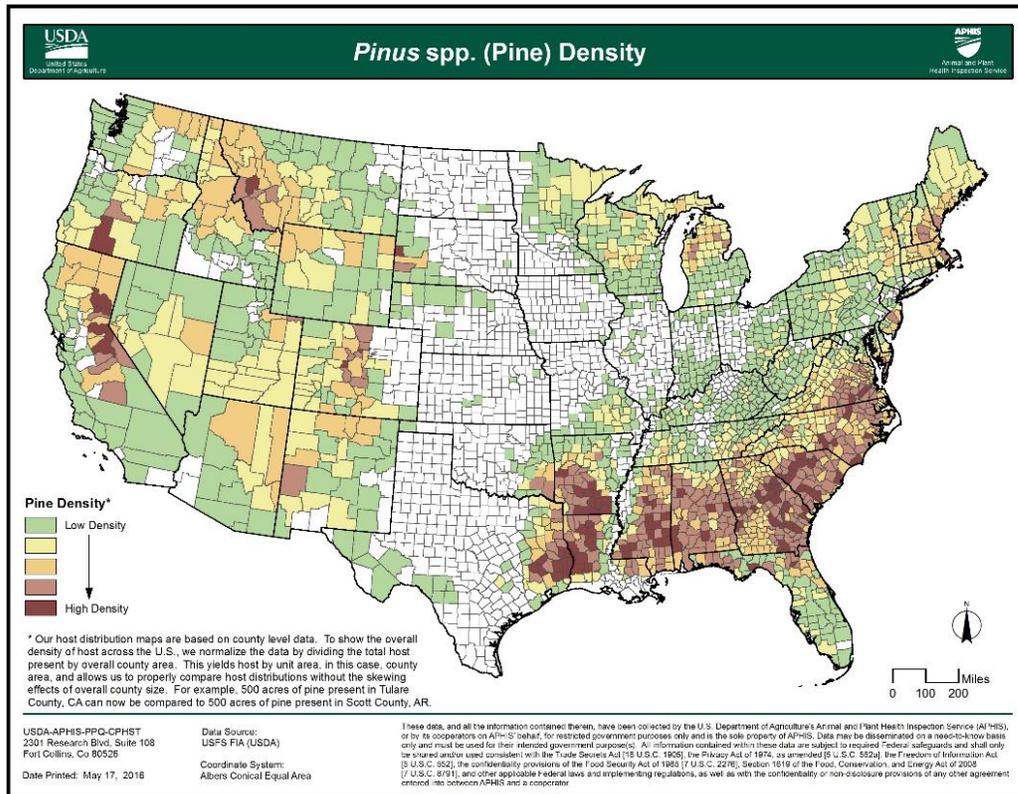


Fig. 36. Commodity acreage map of pine species (*Pinus spp.*) within the continental United States. Values from low to high indicate increased commodity density. Map courtesy of USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST.

**Potential Distribution within the United States**

The main host, *P. massoniana* (masson pine) is not currently present in the United States. Although the main host is not present, it may be able to attack pine species that are either found in or native to the United States.

Some hosts in *D. punctatus*' endemic range are present in the United States, including *P. echinata*, *P. elliotii*, and *P. taeda* (all found throughout the southeast), and *P. thunbergii* (found in part of the east coast) (USDA-NRCS 2011).

If introduced into the United States, this species may be able to utilize other pine species not present in its native range. A commodity acreage map by USDA-CPHST (2010) illustrates a low to moderate amount of pine material throughout most of the eastern part of the United States and a moderate to high amount of pine material throughout most of the western part of the United States.

Ciesla (2001) states that this pest is most likely to establish in the southeastern portion of the United States as the climate is similar to the natural range of *D. punctatus* and many known pine hosts are found throughout this region.

### Pathway

This particular species has not been intercepted at United States ports of entry in the past ten years; neither has any members of the genus (AQAS 2011, queried March 22, 2011). One record exists from 1984 in which a live *Dendrolimus* larva was found on baggage originating from Japan (AQAS 2011, queried March 22, 2011).

Adults can fly several kilometers with or without the help of air currents; early instar larvae may also disperse with the help of air currents (Ciesla 2001). It may be possible for egg masses or early instar larvae to move through planting material; however, these stages are easily detected and conspicuous (Ciesla 2001).

### Survey

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

The CAPS-approved method is a trap and lure combination. The trap is a wing trap (See Figure 37). The lure is effective for 21 days (3 weeks).

Any of the following Trap Product Names in the IPHIS Ordering Database may be used for this target:

- Wing Trap Kit, Paper
- Wing Trap Kit, Plastic

The Lure Product Name is "*Dendrolimus punctatus* Lure."

**IMPORTANT:** Do not place lures for two or more target species in a trap unless otherwise recommended.

**Lure Placement:** The lure type is a rubber septum. The lure should be placed inside a lure holder, which is usually included with the trap. The lure holder should be stapled to the underside of the top of the trap on a non-sticky area.



Fig. 37. Wing trap (Image courtesy of John Crowe, USDA-APHIS-PPQ).

Trap Spacing: When trapping for more than one species of moth, separate traps for different moth species by at least 20 meters (65 feet).

### **Literature-Based Methods:**

#### Trapping:

Previously, the adults were surveyed for using light traps (Billings 1991). Black light traps were typically used, but drawbacks included lack of species specificity and difficulty in finding power sources for lights (Zhang et al. 2003). Population monitoring in Vietnam was done through permanent survey plots (100m<sup>2</sup>) that were surveyed once per generation for insect abundance. In addition, 1m<sup>2</sup> excrement traps were placed beneath samples trees for 10 day periods to collect larval frass and estimate larval populations per tree (Billings 1991).

A synthetic sex pheromone has since been developed to use in surveying for this pest. Traps baited with a 25:10:28 ratio of Z5,E7-12:Ac; Z5, E7-12:Pr, and Z5,E7-12:OH (over 97% pure) were used in Qianshan County, China to survey for *D. punctatus* males with positive results (Zhang et al., 2003). The trap used was a two-layer plastic cymbiform sticky trap which is both waterproof and allows for pheromone release in all directions (Zhang et al. 2003). Trapping results from 1999 showed that lower traps (<5.5 m; 18 ft) in *P. massoniana* stands caught significantly more male *D. punctatus* when populations were at low levels (Zhang et al., 2003). This information agrees with results obtained by Chen (1990) who found that females preferred laying eggs on younger and shorter *P. massoniana* versus older and taller trees (Zhang et al. 2003).

#### Survey site and selection:

In its native range, outbreaks are common in young, pure pine stands and plantations ranging from 8 to 15 years (Ciesla 2001). Planting stock may also be targeted for survey.

#### Time of year to survey:

Depending on climate, this species can be found throughout the year. In southern China, the first generation moth flight peaks in early to mid-August (Zhang et al. 2003).

#### Trap Placement:

Zhang et al. (2003) found that traps that were lower than 5.5 m (18 feet) in *P. massoniana* canopies caught significantly more *D. punctatus* males than traps placed higher during surveys for the overwintering generation and for the first generation flight periods.

### **Key Diagnostics**

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

Morphological. Genitalia dissection is required to get to the genus level. Identification to species level requires confirmation by Lepidoptera specialist.

### Easily Confused Pests

This species is similar to *Dendrolimus punctatus tabulaeformis* (CABI 2010) as well as other *Dendrolimus* species. There are no other *Dendrolimus* species present in the United States.

### References

- AQAS. 2011.** Interception data on *Dendrolimus* spp. from 1-1-2000 to 12-31-2010; Accessed on 22 March, 2011 from: <https://mokcs14.aphis.usda.gov/aqas/HomePageInit.do>.
- Billings, R. F. 1991.** The pine caterpillar *Dendrolimus punctatus* in Viet Nam; recommendations for integrated pest management. *Forest Ecology and Management* 39: 97-106.
- CABI. 2010.** Crop Protection Compendium Wallingford, UK: CAB International. [www.cabicompendium.org/cpc](http://www.cabicompendium.org/cpc)
- Chang, Y. C. and J. C. Sun. 1984.** Insect pests of economic tree (or bamboo) species in Taiwan. (V) The important insect pests of *Pinus* species [abstract]. *Quarterly Journal of Chinese Forestry* 17(4): 37-45.
- Chen, C. J. 1990.** The species, geographic distribution and biological characteristics of pine caterpillar in China. In *Integrated Management of Pine Caterpillar in China* (C. J. Chen ed.). China Forestry Press, Bei Jing, pp. 5–18 (in Chinese).
- Ciesla, W. M. 2001.** *Dendrolimus punctatus*. EXFOR Database Pest Reports. Accessed April 12, 2011 from: <http://spfnic.fs.fed.us/exfor/index.cfm>.
- Ge, Q. J., I. Q. Guan, Z. Z. Li, X. Q. Xue, and X. G. Zhou. 1988.** A study on the control threshold of *Dendrolimus punctatus* Walker [abstract]. *Journal of Nanjing Forestry University* 94-100.
- Ji, Y.-J., Y.-P. Hua, Y.-D. Liu, H.-T. Liu, C.-M. Shi, D.-M. Li, and D.-X. Zhang. 2005.** Ten polymorphic microsatellite markers developed in the masson pine moth *Dendrolimus punctatus* Walker (Lepidoptera: Lasiocampidae). *Molecular Ecology Notes* 5: 911-913.
- Lawson, J. P., F. R. C. R. M. B., and M. D. Yong-mo Lui. 1986.** Pinemoth caterpillar disease. *Skeletal Radiology* 15: 422-427.
- Matsumura, S. 1926.** On the five species of *Dendrolimus* injurious to conifers in Japan, with their parasitic and predaceous insects. *Journal of the College of Agriculture, Hokkaido Imperial University, Sapporo, Japan* 18(1): 1-42.
- Speight, M. R. and F. R. Wylie. 2001.** *Insect Pests in Tropical Forestry*. CABI Publishing Oxfordshire, UK. 307 pp.
- USDA-CPHST. 2010.** Commodity Acreage Map, Pine Species, *Pinus* spp. USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST.
- USDA-NRCS. 2011.** The PLANTS Database (<http://plants.usda.gov>, 22 March 2011). National Plant Data Center, Baton Rouge, LA 70874-4490 USA.

- Ying, S.-L. 1986.** A decade of successful control of pine caterpillar, *Dendrolimus punctatus* Walker (Lepidoptera: Lasiocampidae), by microbial agents. *Forest Ecology and Management* 15: 69-74.
- Zhang, A.-B., Z.-J. Wang, S.-J. Tan, and D.-M. Li. 2003.** Monitoring the masson pine moth, *Dendrolimus punctatus* (Walker) (Lepidoptera: Lasiocampidae) with synthetic sex pheromone-baited traps in Qianshan County, China. *Japanese Society of Applied Entomology and Zoology* 38(2): 177-186.

## ***Dendrolimus sibiricus***

### **Scientific Name**

*Dendrolimus sibiricus* (Tschetverikov 1908)

### **Common Names**

**Siberian silk moth**, Siberian moth, Larch caterpillar

**NOTE:** This datasheet is currently under development. Trap and lure information can be found in the “Approved Methods” section of the CAPS website, found here: [http://caps.ceris.purdue.edu/approved\\_methods](http://caps.ceris.purdue.edu/approved_methods).

## ***Dendrolimus superans***

### **Scientific Name**

*Dendrolimus superans* (Butler)

### **Common Names**

**Sakhalin silk moth**

**NOTE:** This survey target is unavailable for the 2012 and 2013 survey seasons due to a lack of an available survey method.

## *Lymantria mathura*

E.E. Davis, E.M. Albrecht, and R.C. Venette

### Scientific Name

*Lymantria mathura* Moore

### Synonyms:

*Portheria mathura* (Moore)

*Ocneria mathura* (Moore)

*Lymantria aurora* Butler

*Lymantria fusca* Leech

*Lymantria mathura aurora* Butler

(reviewed in EPPO 2005)



UGA1277091

Fig. 38. Adult female *Lymantria mathura*.  
Image from David Mohn, <http://www.bugwood.org>

### Common Names

Pink gypsy moth, Rosy gypsy moth

### Type of Pest

Moth, defoliator

### Taxonomic Position

**Kingdom:** Animalia, **Phylum:** Arthropoda, **Order:** Lepidoptera,

**Family:** Lymantriidae

### Reason for Inclusion in Manual

CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2013)

Exotic Forest Pest Information System – classified as a very high risk pest

*Lymantria mathura* has posed a serious threat to North American trees for some time. We previously summarized the basic morphology, known biology, damage potential, and survey techniques for this insect (e.g., Davis et al. 2005, 2008a, 2008b); subsequently; little new information about *L. mathura* has been published. Rather than repeat information available in other summaries, this truncated data sheet refers to relevant publications and emphasizes the impact this pest may have on pines, in particular.

### Pest Description

Davis et al. (2008a) provide useful excerpts from Roonwal (1979) and Moore (1865) to identify larvae and adults. Female and male adults are depicted in Figures 38 and 40, respectively.

### Biology and Ecology

Davis et al. (2005) provide a review of the general biology and ecology of *L. mathura*. No details about the specific life history of *L. mathura* on *Pinus* spp. have been reported.

### **Pest Importance**

*Lymantria mathura* is a significant defoliator of deciduous trees but is a minor pest of pine, if it achieves pest status at all. The importance of *L. mathura* as a defoliator of deciduous forests is reviewed in Davis et al. (2005). On pines, larvae survived poorly when forced to feed on pine foliage under laboratory conditions (Zlotina et al. 1998, reviewed in Rosovsky 2001). Lee and Lee (1996) suggested pine is a preferred host for oviposition, but Roonwal (1979) explained that *L. mathura* will oviposit on rough surfaces including non-target or secondary host tree species, particularly when population density is high. No other reports have described *L. mathura* as a pest of pine.

### **Symptoms**

Feeding damage by *L. mathura* on pines has not been described. Damage is likely to be similar to damage caused by other pine defoliators. Egg masses and larvae may occur on the trunks of trees (reviewed in Rosovsky 2001).

### **Known Hosts**

*Lymantria mathura* has a broad host range and seems to prefer deciduous trees. However in reviewing the work of Yurchenko (1995), Zlotina et al. (1998) conclude that *Pinus koraiensis* can support development of larvae. In separate experiments, Zlotina et al. (1998) found that larvae will feed on needles of *Pinus strobus* but will not develop beyond the second instar. Lee and Lee (1996) indicate *Pinus* spp. can be used for oviposition. Davis et al. (2005) provide a complete list of hosts as reported in the literature.

### **Known Vectors**

*Lymantria mathura* is not known to vector any pathogens.

### **Known Distribution**

*Lymantria mathura* is present throughout much of Asia, east of Russia (inclusive). Davis et al. (2005) provide a complete summary of countries that have reported *L. mathura*.

### **Potential Distribution within the United States**

In general, *L. mathura* occurs in cool to warm climates with variable seasonal rainfall and dry periods. Approximately one third of the contiguous United States has a suitable climate for *L. mathura*. Suitable areas occur in the East and Pacific Northwest. Additional details are provided in Davis et al. (2005).

In a recent risk analysis by USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST, most of the continental United States has a low to moderate risk of *L. mathura* establishment. Areas that are at highest risk are the eastern and gulf states as well as portions of the West Coast.

### **Survey**

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

The CAPS-approved method is a trap and lure combination. The trap is a wing trap. The lure is effective for 84 days (12 weeks).

Any of the following Trap Product Names in the IPHIS Survey Supply Ordering System may be used for this target:

Wing Trap Kit, Paper  
Wing Trap Kit, Plastic

The Lure Product Name is “*Lymantria mathura* Lure.”

The lure (a string dispenser) should be stapled to the inside of the upper half (lid) of the trap on the non-sticky area.

**IMPORTANT:** Placing lures for two or more target species in a trap should never be done unless otherwise recommended.

**Trap spacing:** When trapping for more than one species of moth, separate traps for different moth species by at least 20 meters (65 feet).

#### **Literature-Based Methods:**

**Baited traps:** Pheromone-baited traps are particularly useful for regional surveys. The major sex pheromone components include a blend of (9*R*,10*S*)-*cis*-9,10-epoxy-*Z*3,*Z*6-nonadecadiene (named (+)-mathuralure) and (9*S*,10*R*)-*cis*-9,10-epoxy-*Z*3,*Z*6-nonadecadiene (named (-)-mathuralure) in a 1:4 ratio (Gries et al. 1999). Neither component is attractive alone (Gries et al. 1999). The pheromone is most effectively deployed using PVC-coated string dispensers with 64 µg pheromone per cm (Khrimian et al. 2004). Traps baited with (+)-disparlure will also attract male *L. mathura* (Odell et al. 1992).

Pheromone lures have been used with Delta sticky traps (Gries et al. 1999) or 3.8-L milk carton traps (Odell et al. 1992). Traps are generally hung 1.5-2 m [ca. 5-6.5 ft] above ground (Odell et al. 1992, Gries et al. 1999).

#### **Key Diagnostics**

##### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

Confirmation of *L. mathura* is by morphological identification. Adults and late instar larvae are easily identified.

##### **Literature-Based Method:**

Identification depends on examination of adult morphological characters. *Lymantria mathura* is not likely to be confused with other lymantrids, particularly if a specimen is an adult or late instar larva (reviewed in EPPO 2005). Eggs or neonates



Fig. 39. Adult male *Lymantria mathura* with yellow hind wings. Image from W. Wallner, <http://www.inspection.gc.ca/english/sci/surv/data/lymmate.shm>

are incredibly difficult to distinguish, and molecular tools are being developed to aid with identification (Armstrong et al. 2003).

### Easily Confused Pests

*L. mathura* may be confused with *L. monacha* (not known to occur in the United States) or *L. dispar*.

### References

- Armstrong, K. F., P. McHugh, W. Chinn, and F. E.R. 2003.** Tussock moth species arriving on imported used vehicles determined by DNA analysis. *New Zealand Plant Protection* 56: 16-20.
- Davis, E. E., S. French, and R. C. Venette. 2005.** Mini Risk Assessment. Pink Gypsy Moth, *Lymantria mathura* Moore [Lepidoptera: Lymantriidae]. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service. Available on-line at: [http://www.aphis.usda.gov/plant\\_health/plant\\_pest\\_info/pest\\_detection/downloads/pral/mathurapra.pdf](http://www.aphis.usda.gov/plant_health/plant_pest_info/pest_detection/downloads/pral/mathurapra.pdf). Accessed 1 September 2007.
- Davis, E. E., R. C. Venette, and E. M. Albrecht. 2008a.** Chapter 6. Diagnostic Methods, pp. 45-79, *Preserving Oaks: Survey Guidelines to Detect Exotic Invasive Species*. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northern Research Station, St. Paul, MN. (In Press).
- Davis, E. E., R. C. Venette, and E. M. Albrecht. 2008b.** Chapter 5. Detailed Survey Tables, pp. 22-44, *Preserving Oaks: Survey Guidelines to Detect Exotic Invasive Species*. U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Northern Research Station, St. Paul, MN. (In Press).
- EPPO. 2005.** Data sheets on quarantine pests: *Lymantria mathura*. European and Mediterranean Plant Protection Organization. Available on-line at: [http://www.eppo.int/QUARANTINE/insects/Lymantria\\_mathura/DS\\_Lymantria\\_mathura.pdf](http://www.eppo.int/QUARANTINE/insects/Lymantria_mathura/DS_Lymantria_mathura.pdf). Accessed 29 September 2005.
- Gries, G., R. Gries, P. W. Schaefer, T. Gotoh, and Y. Higashiura. 1999.** Sex pheromone components of pink gypsy moth, *Lymantria mathura*. *Naturwissenschaften* 86: 235-238.
- Khrimian, A., J. E. Oliver, R. C. Hahn, N. H. Dees, J. White, and V. C. Mastro. 2004.** Improved synthesis and deployment of (2S,3R)-2-(2Z,5Z-Octadienyl)-3-nonyloxirane, a pheromone of the pink moth, *Lymantria mathura*. *Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry* 52: 2890-2895.
- Lee, J. H., and H. P. Lee. 1996.** Parasites and phenology of *Lymantria mathura* Moore (Lymantriidae: Lepidoptera) in Kyonggi Province, Korea. *Korean Journal of Entomology* 26: 393-401.
- Moore, F. 1865.** On the Lepidopterous insects of Bengal. *Proceedings of the Scientific Meetings of the Zoological Society of London*.
- Odell, T. M., C. Xu, P. W. Schaefer, B. A. Leonhardt, D. Yao, and X. Wu. 1992.** Capture of gypsy moth, *Lymantria dispar* (L.), and *Lymantria mathura* (L.) males in traps baited with disparlure enantiomers and olefin precursor in the People's Republic of China. *Journal of Chemical Ecology* 18: 2153-2159.

- Roonwal, M. L. 1979.** Field-ecological studies on mass eruption, seasonal life-history, nocturnal feeding and activity rhythm, and protective behavior and coloration in the sal defoliator, *Lymantria mathura* (Lepidoptera: Lymantriidae), in sub-Himalayan forests. Records of the Zoological Survey of India 75: 209-236.
- Rosovsky, J. 2001.** EXFOR Database Pest Report: *Lymantria mathura*. USDA Forest Service. Available on-line at: <http://www.spfnic.fs.fed.us/exfor/data/pestreports.cfm?pestidval=113&langdisplay=english>. Accessed 4 August 2005.
- Zlotina, M. A., V. C. Mastro, D. E. Leonard, and J. S. Elkinton. 1998.** Survival and development of *Lymantria mathura* (Lepidoptera: Lymantriidae) on North American, Asian, and European tree species. Journal of Economic Entomology 91: 1162-1166.

## *Panolis flammea*

T. P. Molet

### Scientific Name

*Panolis flammea* Denis & Schiffermüller

### Synonyms:

*Bombyx spreta* Fabricius

*Noctua flammea* Denis & Schiffermüller

*Noctua piniperda*

*Panolis griseovariegata*

*Panolis griseovariegatus*

*Panolis piniperda*

*Phalaena griscovariegata* Goeze

*Phalaena pini* Villers

*Phalaena piniperda* Loschege

*Phalaena Noctua telifera* Paykull

*Trachea piniperda*

### Common Names

Pine beauty moth

### Type of Pest

Moth

### Taxonomic Position

**Kingdom:** Animalia, **Phylum:** Arthropoda, **Order:** Lepidoptera, **Family:** Noctuidae

### Reason for Inclusion in Manual

CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2013)

### Pest Description

#### Egg

"The flattened, circular eggs are centripetally notched, and each has a small declivity in its middle. At first the eggs are whitish but later turn violet-brown. The size of an egg is 0.6 mm x 0.8 mm [0.02 x 0.03 in]" (Novak 1976).

#### Larva

"The yellow-green larvae of the 1<sup>st</sup> instar are 2 to 3 mm [0.08 to 0.11 in] long and have a large conspicuous yellow head (mean width



Fig. 41. Adult female of *P. flammea* (Image courtesy of Stanislaw Kinelski, [www.bugwood.org](http://www.bugwood.org))



Fig. 42. Fifth instar larva of *P. flammea* on *P. sylvestris* (Image courtesy of Hannes Lemme, [www.bugwood.org](http://www.bugwood.org))

0.4 mm [0.02 in]). The fully grown caterpillars are 37 to 40 mm [1.06 to 1.57 in] long, dark green with a brown head, and are about 3 mm [0.11 in] wide.

A broad white band occurs in the middle of the dorsum. On both sides there are narrow white bands and on the underside there are wide orange bands” (Novak, 1976). “It is not until the fifth or final stage (instar) that the caterpillar develops the characteristic bright orange stripe on either side” (Heritage 1997).

### Pupa

“The free shiny brown pupa is 16 to 18 mm [0.63 to 0.71 in] long and ends with two thin spines. On the dorsal side of the abdomen is a characteristic declivity” (Novak 1976).

### Adult

“This night moth has a wing span of 30 to 35 mm [1.18 to 1.38 in]. The basic colour of the thorax and wings changes from red-brown to gray-brown. The bristle-shaped antennae of the males are composed of segments which resemble saw-like points while the antennae of the females are simple. The front edge of the thorax is decorated with a pale coloured band and on both sides there are some light coloured patches. The abdomen is yellow-gray. The end of the male is angularly broad, whereas the end of the female is conical and has a blunt point. The fore-wings are decorated with almost round or kidney-shaped patches. The dark moth has markings consisting of dark, transverse and zigzagging bands. The hind wings are gray. The resting moths sit with their roof-like wings folded. In the pine bark they coalesce in colour with the surroundings (mimicry)” (Novak 1976).

### **Biology and Ecology**

Adults swarm after sunset for about one hour (Kolk and Starzyk 1996). Adults feed on honeydew (a liquid excretion produced by aphids) (Kolk and Starzyk 1996) and also *Salix* (willow) blossoms (Kimber, 2011). Mating occurs in the tree crown (Kolk and Starzyk 1996). After mating, females lay 2-25 eggs in a line on host needles and can produce 100-210 throughout their lifetime (Kolk and Starzyk 1996). Eggs are laid on needles from previous years (Hicks et al. 2001) with dense foliage preferred (Anonymous 1960). They are usually laid on needles towards the tops of the trees (Heritage 1997). Although females usually lay eggs on trees at least 25 years of age, “larvae may migrate to younger trees” after hatching (Carter 1984).

In the United Kingdom, this moth flies from March to April and is found in coniferous forests and plantations (Kimber 2011). When at rest, adults are hard to see as they are well camouflaged (Kimber 2011).

Incubation of eggs requires about 14 days (Novak 1976), although larval hatch can occur anywhere from 9 to 30 days later (Kolk and Starzyk 1996). In Scotland, larvae emerge from the end of May to early June (Hicks et al. 2001).

Afterwards, the larvae climb up into the crown and feed on buds, needles and the bark of young shoots (Kolk and Starzyk 1996). Larvae “begin to feed on new growth where they consume the internal tissues at the base of developing needle pairs with their heads within the needle and their abdomens exposed” (Hicks et al. 2001). Older larvae will feed on old host needles (Kolk and Starzyk 1996). Larvae go through five instars (Novak 1976). If disturbed, larvae can drop to the ground suspended by a silken thread (Anonymous 1960).

*P. flammea* overwinters as a pupa (Kolk and Starzyk 1996). Pupation occurs in the litter or soil (Kolk and Starzyk 1996) or in bark crevices in a silken cocoon (Carter 1984). In Scotland, pupation begins by about mid-July (Hicks et al. 2001).

### Pest Importance

This species is considered a severe pest of certain pine species (*P. sylvestris*) in parts of Europe (Watt 1988). In Scotland, outbreaks of *P. flammea* occur on *P. contorta* (lodgepole pine) (Watt 1988). *P. flammea* is considered the most important forest defoliator in the British Isles and *Pinus contorta* monocultures are no longer planted in the area because of the damage caused by *P. flammea* (Watt and Hicks 2000).

When outbreaks occur, they usually last from two to three years (Kolk and Starzyk 1996). Heavy infestations can cause host mortality (Hicks et al. 2001) and two successive attacks can kill a pine forest (Anonymous 1960).

### Symptoms

This species is considered a severe defoliator of certain *Pinus* spp. throughout many parts of Europe. Larvae can be observed feeding on new growth at the base of developing needle pairs (Hicks et al. 2001).

Larval feeding on young buds can be very damaging to the host trees (Kolk and Starzyk 1996). Larvae can consume approximately 200 needles throughout this stage (Kolk and Starzyk 1996). Older larvae can consume entire needles (Novak 1976). Complete defoliation of host plants can occur in serious outbreaks of this pest. In addition, tree growth may be retarded and trees may die (Carter 1984).

The most commonly attacked pine stands are aged from 30 to 60 years (Novak 1976).

### Known Hosts

| Host                                   | Reference                |
|--|--------------------------|
| <i>Picea abies</i> (Norway spruce)*    | (Kolk and Starzyk 1996)  |
| <i>Pinus</i> spp. (pine)               | (Carter 1984)            |
| <i>Pinus contorta</i> (lodgepole pine) | (Carter 1984, Watt 1989) |
| <i>Pinus pinaster</i> (maritime pine)  | (Carter 1984)            |

| Host                                 | Reference                                       |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> (Scots pine) | (Carter 1984, Watt 1989, Kolk and Starzyk 1996) |
| <i>Salix caprea</i> (pussy willow)** | (Kurir 1986)                                    |

Anonymous (1960) states that *P. flammea* will also attack *Abies alba* (silver fir), *Juniperus* spp. (juniper), *Larix decidua* (European larch), *Pseudotsuga* spp. (Douglas-fir), and some broad-leaved trees. Carter (1984) included and *Betula* spp. (birch) as well as *Chamaecyparis* spp. and *Quercus* spp. (oak) as other host plants. These plants do not seem to be main hosts of this species and damage of these hosts could not be found in the literature.

\*Sporadic host (Kolk and Starzyk, 1996).

\*\*Adult food plant (Kurir 1986)

### Known Vectors

This pest is not currently known to vector any pathogens or other associated organisms.

### Known Distribution

This species is found throughout Europe and Asia (Novak 1976). The northern range of *P. flammea* is limited by climate (Novak 1976).

| Location                              | Reference                                   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| <b>Asia</b>                           |   |
| Japan                                 | (Novak 1976, Kolk and Starzyk 1996)         |
| Russia (including Kaliningrad Oblast) | (Novak 1976, Fibiger and Skule 2011)        |
| <b>Europe</b>                         |   |
| Andorra                               | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                    |
| Austria                               | (Schimitschek 1932, Fibiger and Skule 2011) |
| Belarus                               | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                    |
| Belgium                               | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                    |
| Bosnia and Herzegovina                | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                    |
| Bulgaria                              | (Slivov 1984, Fibiger and Skule 2011)       |
| Channel Island                        | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                    |
| Croatia                               | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                    |
| Czech Republic                        | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                    |
| Denmark                               | (Novak 1976, Fibiger and Skule 2011)        |
| Estonia                               | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                    |
| Finland                               | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                    |
| France                                | (Novak 1976, Fibiger and Skule 2011)        |

| Location                              | Reference   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| Germany                               | (Walter and Wawrzyniak 1986, Fibiger and Skule 2011)        |
| Gibraltar                             | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                                    |
| Greece                                | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                                    |
| Hungary                               | (Szabóky 2004, Fibiger and Skule 2011)                      |
| Italy (including Sardinia and Sicily) | (Novak 1976, Fibiger and Skule 2011)                        |
| Kosovo                                | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                                    |
| Latvia                                | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                                    |
| Lithuania                             | (Zolubas 2003, Fibiger and Skule 2011)                      |
| Luxembourg                            | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                                    |
| Macedonia                             | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                                    |
| Moldova                               | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                                    |
| Montenegro                            | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                                    |
| The Netherlands                       | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                                    |
| Norway                                | (Novak 1976, Austara 1982, Fibiger and Skule 2011)          |
| Poland                                | (Johansson et al. 2002, Fibiger and Skule 2011)             |
| Romania                               | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                                    |
| Serbia                                | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                                    |
| Slovakia                              | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                                    |
| Slovenia                              | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                                    |
| Spain                                 | (Novak 1976, Fibiger and Skule 2011)                        |
| Sweden                                | (Novak 1976, Johansson et al. 2002, Fibiger and Skule 2011) |
| Switzerland                           | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                                    |
| Ukraine                               | (Fibiger and Skule 2011)                                    |
| United Kingdom                        | (Novak 1976, Austara 1982, Watt 1988)                       |

### Potential Distribution within the United States

This species is most likely to cause damage throughout many parts of the United States if it were to become established. *P. flammea* has caused serious damage to *Pinus contorta* (lodgepole pine) in Scotland (Hicks et al. 2001) which is originally native to parts of North America. *P. contorta* is present in at least 11 states in the western portion of the country while *P. sylvestris*, another main host, is present in at least 18 states in the northeastern and upper Midwest portion of the United States (USDA-NRCS 2011).

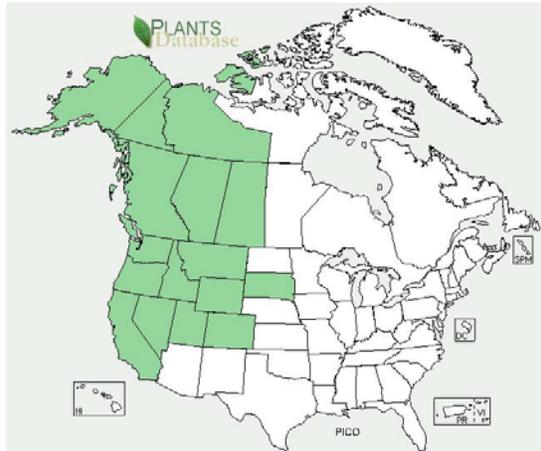


Fig. 43. Distribution of *Pinus contorta* throughout North America (USDA-NRCS, 2011; accessed 23 March, 2011)

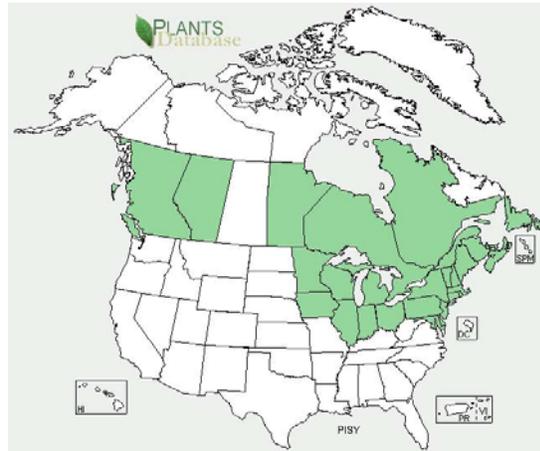


Fig. 44. Distribution of *Pinus sylvestris* throughout North America (USDA-NRCS, 2011; accessed 24 March, 2011)

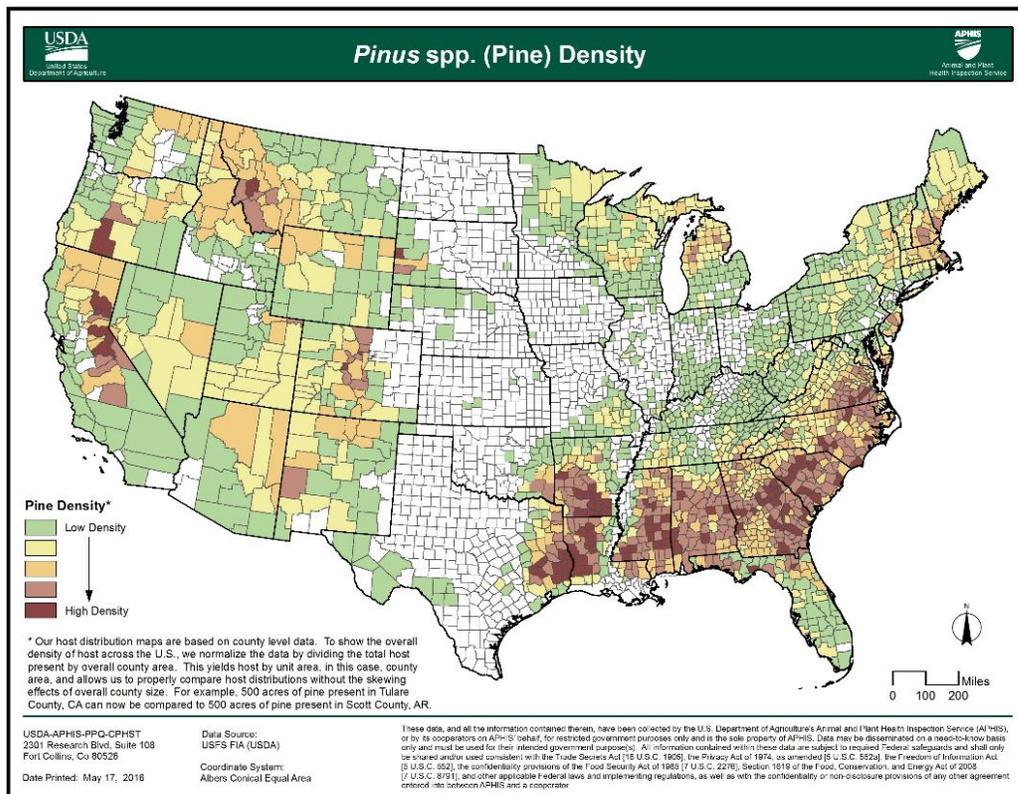


Fig. 45. Commodity acreage map of pine species (*Pinus spp.*) within the continental United States. Values from low to high indicate increased commodity density. Map courtesy of USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST.

## Pathway

There are no records of this genus being intercepted at any United States ports of entry (AQAS 2011, queried March 24, 2011).

This species may be introduced into the United States through nursery stock. Eggs are laid on pine needles and may be able to survive international trade as they usually take around 14 days to mature before hatch. Pupae may also move through international trade if soil is present on host plants, although this is unlikely as movement of soil is restricted in trade to the United States.

## Survey

### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

The CAPS-approved method is a trap and lure combination. The Trap Product Name in the IPHIS Supply Ordering System is the “Plastic Bucket Trap” (also known as a “Unitrap” or universal moth trap). Refer to the [Plastic Bucket Trap Protocol](#) (Brambila et al., 2010) for detailed instructions on how to use the trap. The lure is effective for 6 weeks (4 weeks in very hot climates).

The Lure Product Name is “*Panolis flammea* Lure.”

IMPORTANT: Do not place lures for two or more target species in a trap unless otherwise recommended.

### Trap spacing:

When trapping for more than one species of moth, separate traps for different moth species by at least 20 meters (65 feet).

### **Literature-Based Methods:**

#### Trapping:

In Scotland from 1993 on, monitoring surveys for *P. flammea* were carried out using pheromone traps (Hicks et al. 2001). “Funnel traps...were baited with a lure containing 25µg Z-9-tetradecenyl acetate + 2.5µg Z-11-tetradecenyl acetate. The traps were placed in the forests during the third or fourth week of March and left until early May” (Hicks et al. 2001). Funnel traps were used to ensure that traps did not become oversaturated with moths (Hicks et al. 2001).

#### Survey site and selection:

The most commonly attacked pine stands are aged from 30 to 60 years (Novak, 1976). The host *Pinus contorta* is found throughout the western part of the United States, while *Pinus sylvestris* is found throughout the northeastern and upper Midwestern parts of the United States (USDA-NRCS 2011).

#### Time of year to survey:

In Scotland, *P. flammea* adults fly from mid-March to May (Heritage 1997, Hicks et al. 2001). In England, adults fly as early as the end of February (Hicks et al.

2001). The time of year at which the adult stage is found is dependent on temperature (Heritage 1997).

#### Trap Placement:

Bradshaw et al. (1983) states that traps should not be obstructed by vegetation and that the height of traps from 1 to 2 m (3.28 to 6.56 feet) caught the most target insects. Traps placed at 0.5 m (1.64 feet) had less total catches, but this may be because the undergrowth at the site was 0.3 to 0.5 m (0.98 to 1.64 feet) high.

#### Visual:

In Scotland, *P. flammea* populations were monitored using annual pupal surveys from 1977 to 1993 (Watt and Hicks 2000). Within sites selected for survey “11 positions were randomly selected within an area of about 0.3 ha [0.74 acre] and a portable frame, 30 cm x 30 cm x 15 cm deep [11.8 in x 11.8 in x 5.91 in deep], was used to sample the forest litter and peat” (Hicks et al. 2001). Today pheromone traps are used to monitor populations in Scotland, although they are augmented by selective pupal surveys (Hicks et al. 2001).

### Identification

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

Morphological. A brief description of all life stages can be found in Carter (1984). Both South (1961) and USDA (1958) include a description of the adult and larvae. South (1961) also includes a colored plate of the adult male and female. Descriptions of this pest can also be found in Hampson (1905) and Novak (1976).

Adults have hairy eyes (as do all Hadeninae) which can be seen even in sticky trap material. Forward any specimens with hairy eyes to your regional domestic identifier for identification.

Images of male and female can be found at the following links:

Male genitalia: <http://www.dissectiongroup.co.uk/page1448.html>

Female genitalia: <http://www.dissectiongroup.co.uk/page1447.html>

### Easily Confused Pests

The pupae of *P. flammea* are similar to both *Semiothisa liturata* and *Bupalus piniarius* and can be frequently found in the soil together in the United Kingdom (Bevan and Brown 1978).

### Commonly Encountered Non-targets

When trapping in the United Kingdom, *Orthosia gothica* (Hebrew character [moth]) was the only similar species caught in large numbers. This species is similar in size but is grey in color instead of orangish-brown like *P. flammea* (Bradshaw et al. 1983).

## References

- Anonymous. 1960.** Insects not known to occur in the United States: pine moth (*Panolis flammea* (Denis and Schiffermuller)). Cooperative Economic Insect Report 8:1017-1018.
- AQAS. 2011.** Interception data on *Panolis* spp. for all time. Accessed 24 March 2011 from: <https://mokcs14.aphis.usda.gov/aqas/HomePageInit.do>.
- Austara, O. 1982.** Survey of the pine beauty moth *Panolis flammea* in Norway in 1980 and 1981 using traps with synthetic pheromone analogues [abstract]. Fauna Norvegica, B 29(2): 105-109.
- Bevan, D. and R. M. Brown. 1978.** Pine looper moth [abstract]. Forest Record 119: 13pp.
- Bradshaw, J. W. S., R. Baker, C. Longhurst, J. C. Edwards, and J. C. Lisk. 1983.** Optimization of a monitoring system for the pine beauty moth, *Panolis flammea* (Denis & Schiffermüller), using sex attractants. Crop Protection 2(O1): 63-73.
- Brambila, J., L. D. Jackson, and R. L. Meagher. 2010.** Plastic Bucket Trap Protocol. USDA-APHIS-Cooperative Agricultural Pest Survey Program.
- Carter, D. J. 1984.** Pest Lepidoptera of Europe with special reference to the British Isles. Dr. W. Junk Publishers. Dordrecht, the Netherlands. 431 pp.
- Fibiger, M. and B. Skule. 2011.** Fauna Europaea: *Panolis flammea*. In Karsholt, O. and Nieukerken, E. J. van (eds.) Fauna Europaea version 2.4, <http://www.faunaeur.org>.
- Hampson, G. F. 1905.** Catalogue of the Lepidoptera Phalaenae in the British Museum, Vol. 5. British Museum of Natural History, London. 634 pp.
- Heritage, S. 1997.** Pine beauty moth: its biology, monitoring and control. Forestry Commission. Research Information Note 290. Research Division of the Forestry Commission.
- Hicks, B. J., D. A. Barbour, H. F. Evans, S. Heritage, S. R. Leather, R. Milne, and A. D. Watt. 2001.** The history and control of the pine beauty moth, *Panolis flammea* (D. & S.) (Lepidoptera: Noctuidae), in Scotland from 1976 to 2000. Agricultural and Forest Entomology 3: 161-168.
- Johansson, B. G., O. Anderbrant, and A. Sierpinski. 2002.** Multispecies trapping of six pests of scots pine in Sweden and Poland. Journal of Applied Entomology 126: 212-216.
- Kimber, I. 2011.** 2179 Pine Beauty *Panolis flammea*. UK Moths. Accessed on 23 March, 2011 from: <http://ukmoths.org.uk/show.php?bf=2179>.
- Kolk, A. and J. R. Starzyk. 1996.** The Atlas of Forest Insect Pests. The Polish Forest Research Institute. Multico Warszawa. 705 pp.
- Kurir, A. 1986.** List of food plants, visited flowers and natural enemy complex of *Panolis flammea* in Europe [abstract]. Anali za Šumarstvo 12(2): 15-55.
- Novak, V. 1976.** Atlas of Insects Harmful to Forest Trees. Volume 1. Elsevier Scientific Publishing Company. Amsterdam, The Netherlands. 125 pp.
- Schimitschek, E. 1932.** Observations during the occurrence and control of the pine noctuid, *P. flammea*, in lower Austria [abstract]. Zentralblatt für das gesamte Forstwesen 57: 321-342; 391-406.

- Slivov, A. V. 1984.** Species of moths of the family Noctuidae (Lepidoptera) new and little-known to the fauna of Bulgaria [abstract]. *Acta Zoologica Bulgarica* 25: 56-66.
- South, R. 1961.** *The Moths of the British Isles*, Vol. 1. Frederick Warne & Co. Ltd., Great Britain. 427 pp.
- Szabóky, C. 2004.** Pine beauty moth (*Panolis flammea* Denis and Schiffermüller, 1775), in Hungary [abstract]. *Növényvédelem* 40(12): 618.
- USDA. 1958.** Insects not known to occur in the United States. Cooperative Economic Insect Report, Vol. 8. USDA-ARS-Plant Pest Research Service. p. 67-68.
- USDA-NRCS. 2011.** The PLANTS Database. National Plant Data Center, Baton Rouge, LA 70874-4490 USA. Accessed 23-24 March, 2011 from: <http://plants.usda.gov>.
- Walter, C. and H. Wawrzyniak. 1986.** Winter soil sampling for the monitoring and forecasting of population gradations of *Panolis flammea* in central regions of East Germany [abstract]. *Beiträge für die Forstwirtschaft* 20(3): 116-118.
- Watt, A. D. 1988.** Effects of stress-induced changes in plant quality and host-plant species on the population dynamics of the pine beauty moth in Scotland: partial life tables of natural and manipulated populations. *Journal of Applied Ecology* 25: 209-221.
- Watt, A. D. 1989.** The growth and survival of *Panolis flammea* larvae in the absence of predators on Scots pine and lodgepole pine. *Ecological Entomology* 14: 225-234.
- Watt, A. D. and B. J. Hicks. 2000.** A reappraisal of the population dynamics of the pine beauty moth, *Panolis flammea*, on lodgepole pine, *Pinus contorta*, in Scotland. *Population Ecology* 42: 225-230.
- Zolubas, P. 2001.** Pine beauty moth outbreak in Lithuania, 1999-2002 [abstract]. *Journal of Forest Science* 47(2): 46-47.

# Arthropods: Sawflies

## *Diprion pini*

T. P. Molet

### Scientific Name

*Diprion pini* (Linnaeus)

### Synonyms:

*Diprion butovitshci* (Hedqvist)

*Diprion pini* var. *klugi* (Enslin)

*Diprion pini* var. *nigristernis* (Enslin)

*Diprion pini* var. *nigroscutellatum*  
(Enslin)

*Lophyrus pini* var. *nigripectus*  
(Matsumura)

*Tenthredo dorsata* (Fabricius)

*Tenthredo eques* (Scrank)

*Tenthredo pectinata major* (Retzius)

*Tenthredo pini* (Linné)

*Tenthredo pineti* (Bechstein & Scharfenberg)



**Figure 46.** Adult female of *Diprion pini* (Image courtesy of Daniel Adam, Office National des Forêts, Bugwood.org)

### Common Names

**Pine sawfly**, Common pine sawfly

### Type of Pest

Sawfly

### Taxonomic Position

**Kingdom:** Animalia, **Phylum:** Arthropoda, **Order:** Hymenoptera, **Family:** Diprionidae

### Reason for Inclusion in Manual

CAPS Target: AHP Prioritized Pest List for FY 2012

### Pest Description

**Egg:** The eggs are elongated, “somewhat kidney-shaped and are about 1.4 mm [0.06 in] long” (Novak, 1976).

**Larva:** “The light yellow to yellow-green larvae have three pairs of dark thoracic legs, seven pairs of short prolegs, which have a transitional line along the abdominal segments, and one pair of anal prolegs. The



**Figure 47.** Larva of *D. pini* on *Pinus sylvestris* (Scots pine) (image courtesy of Louis-Michel Nageleisen, Département de la Santé des Forêts, Bugwood.org).

head is small and brown. The fully grown larva is 26 mm [1.02 in] long” (Novak, 1976).

Pupa: “The pupae look similar to the adults; pupae are surrounded by a yellow-brown cocoon 8 to 12 mm [0.31 to 0.47 in] in length” (Novak, 1976).

Adult: Have a strongly arched body and range from 7 to 10 mm long (0.28 to 0.39 in) (Novak, 1976). “The antennae have 26 segments. Sexual dimorphism is marked. The smaller male is mostly black-brown to black. It has strong comb-like (pectinate) antennae. The negligibly larger female is more robust and has saw-like antennae. The pale yellow colour prevails, with some darker patches on the thorax and on the central abdominal segments, which is ended with a saw-like ovipositor” (Novak, 1976).

### **Biology and Ecology**

Females attract males through the use of sex pheromones. After adults mate, females cut grooves into pine needles in dense rows, laying 3 to 20 eggs per site (Novak, 1976). Eggs are usually laid in a cluster occupying about 10 adjacent needles (Sharov, 1993). Females then place a protective coating over the eggs (Novak, 1976). If a female fails to find a mate, she will still produce progeny, but they will all be male (Besemer, 1942). During the spring, only old needles are used, while both new and old needles are used during the summer (Novak, 1976). This could be because juvenile foliage may be toxic to early instars and can lead to high mortality, decreased rate of development, and reduction in weight and fecundity (Géri et al., 1993). Females can lay a total of 100 to 150 eggs (Novak, 1976). Eggs hatch after 14 to 21 days after being laid (Novak, 1976).

Larvae are gregarious feeders and attack the shoots as well as mine the needles from the side. Larvae may also eat the bark of the shoots and may sometimes consume the shoots completely. Older larvae are less gregarious (Novak, 1976). As the growing season continues, larvae will begin to consume needles of all age classes, not just older foliage (Långström et al., 2001). Larvae take at least 4 to 5 days to develop (Novak, 1976). Craig and Mopper (1993) state that males have 5 instars while females have 6 instars.

Larvae spin cocoons and pupation occurs on twigs, bark crevices, and undergrowth (Novak, 1976). Pupation can last two to three weeks or throughout winter depending on the time of year (Novak, 1976). Diapause occurs in the pupal stage (Novak, 1976). Some parts of the population can have a prolonged diapause which lasts more than one year (Sharov, 1993).

This species has one generation per year in northern regions of its range as well as high elevations; two generations per year can occur in its range throughout central and southern Europe (Novak, 1976). In Russia, there is a maximum of two generations a year (Sharov, 1993).

*D. pini* has a complex life history. Parts of the population can have prolonged diapause, which can differ in total length. There can also be differences in the number of generations per year (Knerer, 1993). Because of this, both larvae and adults may be present at the same time (Anderbrant, 1993). In areas with two generations, the first generation swarms around the end of April until the start of May (Novak, 1976). In Russia, the second generation occurs from the end of July to the beginning of August (Sharov, 1993). In the northern region of its range, adults usually emerge during June and July (Novak, 1976). Adults only live a few days and do not feed (Sharov, 1993).

### Pest Importance

According to Sharov (1993), *D. pini* is considered one of the most serious pests of pine in Russia, Ukraine, and Belarus. In Russia, outbreaks usually occur in 3-6 year intervals after hot and dry summers (Sharov, 1993).

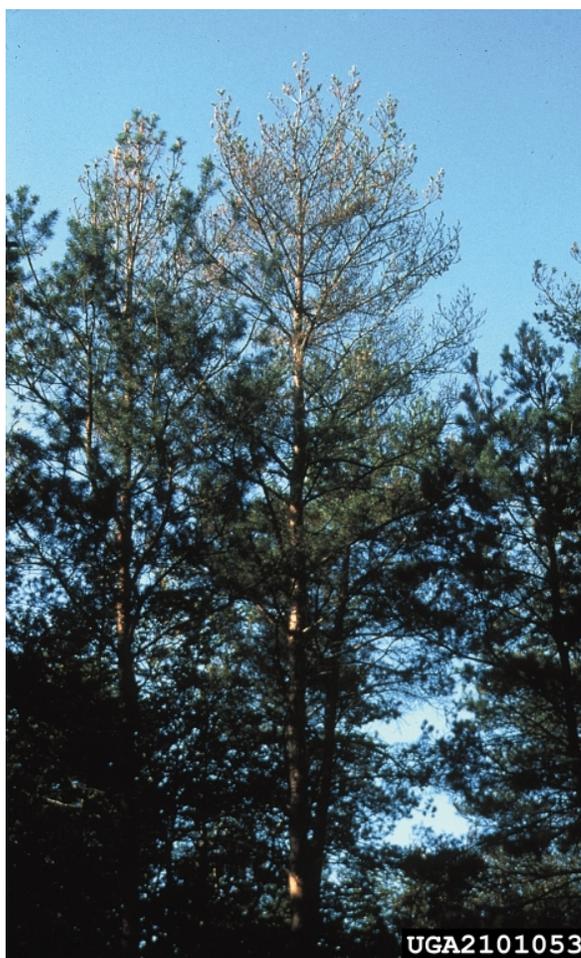
In Germany, mature pine forests are usually attacked (Herz et al., 2000). In the early 1990s, Lithuania had its largest outbreak of *D. pini* on *Pinus sylvestris*. These trees were located on well drained and infertile soils in the southern portion of the country (Augustaitis, 2007).

Lyytikäinen-Saarenmaa and Tomppo (2002) found that *P. sylvestris* increment and timber yield decreased due to defoliation by diprionid sawflies, including *D. pini*. During moderate defoliation by *D. pini*, volume growth was reduced by 86% while heavy defoliation led to 94% reduced volume growth (Lyytikäinen-Saarenmaa and Tomppo, 2002). Mortality of host plants can occur during outbreaks as well. Lyytikäinen-Saarenmaa and Tomppo (2002) estimated 30% tree mortality in defoliated stands during a *D. pini* outbreak in Finland.

Geri et al. (1993) states that fecundity of *P. sylvestris* was significantly reduced when defoliated by *D. pini* the previous year.

### Symptoms

*D. pini* populations can build up suddenly causing defoliation of large forested areas (Knerer, 1993). Outbreaks often occur



**Figure 48.** Damage on *Pinus sylvestris* (Scots pine) caused by *D. pini* (Image courtesy of G. Reboux, Bugwood.org).

after very hot and dry summers (Géri et al., 1993). *D. pini* usually attacks older pines (Géri et al., 1993) and typically causes greater damage in pure stands (Géri, 1988). Outbreaks caused by *D. pini* can lead to heavy defoliation of hosts (*Pinus* spp.) (Herz et al., 2000).

### Known Hosts

| Host  | Reference                   |
|---|-----------------------------|
| <i>Pinus cembra</i> (Swiss stone pine)  | (Barre, 2002; Liston, 1995) |
| <i>Pinus contorta</i> (lodgepole pine)  | (Barre, 2002; Liston, 1995) |
| <i>Pinus montana</i> (dwarf mountain pine)  | (Barre, 2002; Liston, 1995) |
| <i>Pinus nigra</i> (black pine) (including ssp. <i>nigricans</i> var. <i>austriaca</i> , ssp. <i>laricio</i> var. <i>corsicana</i> , ssp. <i>clusiana</i> var. <i>cebennensis</i> ) | (Barre, 2002; Liston, 1995) |
| <i>Pinus radiata</i> (radiata pine)   | (Barre, 2002; Liston, 1995) |
| <i>Pinus strobus</i> (eastern white pine)*  | (Barre, 2002; Liston, 1995) |
| <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> (Scots pine)  | (Barre, 2002; Liston, 1995) |
| <i>Pinus uncinata</i> (mountain pine)   | (Barre, 2002; Liston, 1995) |

\*Seems to be a poor host according to Barre (2002).

The major host of this species is *Pinus sylvestris* (Scots pine). Novak (1976) states that *D. pini* is most likely to occur on 20 to 40 year old *P. sylvestris* pine forests and stands or on hosts found on poor sites in warmer areas.

### Known Vectors

This pest is not currently known to vector any pathogens or other associated organisms, but damage by this pest can lead to trees becoming more susceptible to secondary attack. Secondary attack may be caused by stem-boring insects like the common pine shoot beetle, *Tomicus piniperda* (Långström et al., 2001).

### Known Distribution

| Location      | Reference                |
|---------------|--------------------------|
| <b>Africa</b> |                          |
| Algeria       | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| <b>Asia</b>   |                          |
| Russia        | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Turkey        | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| <b>Europe</b> |                          |
| Albania*      | (Géri, 1988)             |
| Austria       | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Belgium       | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |

| Location                | Reference                |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| Bosnia and Herzegovina* | (Géri, 1988)             |
| Bulgaria                | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Croatia                 | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Czech Republic          | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Denmark                 | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Estonia*                | (Géri, 1988)             |
| Finland                 | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| France                  | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Germany                 | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Greece*                 | (Géri, 1988)             |
| Hungary                 | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Italy                   | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Latvia                  | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Liechtenstein*          | (Géri, 1988)             |
| Lithuania*              | (Géri, 1988)             |
| Luxembourg              | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Macedonia*              | (Géri, 1988)             |
| Moldova*                | (Géri, 1988)             |
| Monaco*                 | (Géri, 1988)             |
| Montenegro*             | (Géri, 1988)             |
| Netherlands             | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Norway                  | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Poland                  | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Portugal                | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Romania                 | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Serbia*                 | (Géri, 1988)             |
| Slovakia                | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Slovenia                | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Spain                   | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Sweden                  | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Switzerland             | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| Ukraine                 | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |
| United Kingdom          | (CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007) |

\*Géri (1988) states that *D. pini* is found throughout Europe and includes these countries in his distribution map.

(CABI, 2008; EPPO, 2007; Tozlu, 2001; Liston, 1995; Géri, 1988; Novak, 1976).

### Potential Distribution within the United States

Sawflies, including *D. pini*, highly prefer pine stands on infertile and well-drained soils as well as stands that are affected by unfavorable climatic or anthropogenic factors (Augustaitis, 2007).

If introduced into the United States, this species may be able to utilize other pine species not present in its native range. A commodity acreage map by USDA-CPHST (2010) illustrates a low to moderate amount of pine material throughout most of the eastern part of the United States and a moderate to high amount of pine material throughout most of the western part of the United States.

Its main host, *P. sylvestris* is found throughout much of the northeastern and Midwestern portion of the United States (USDA-NRCS, 2011).

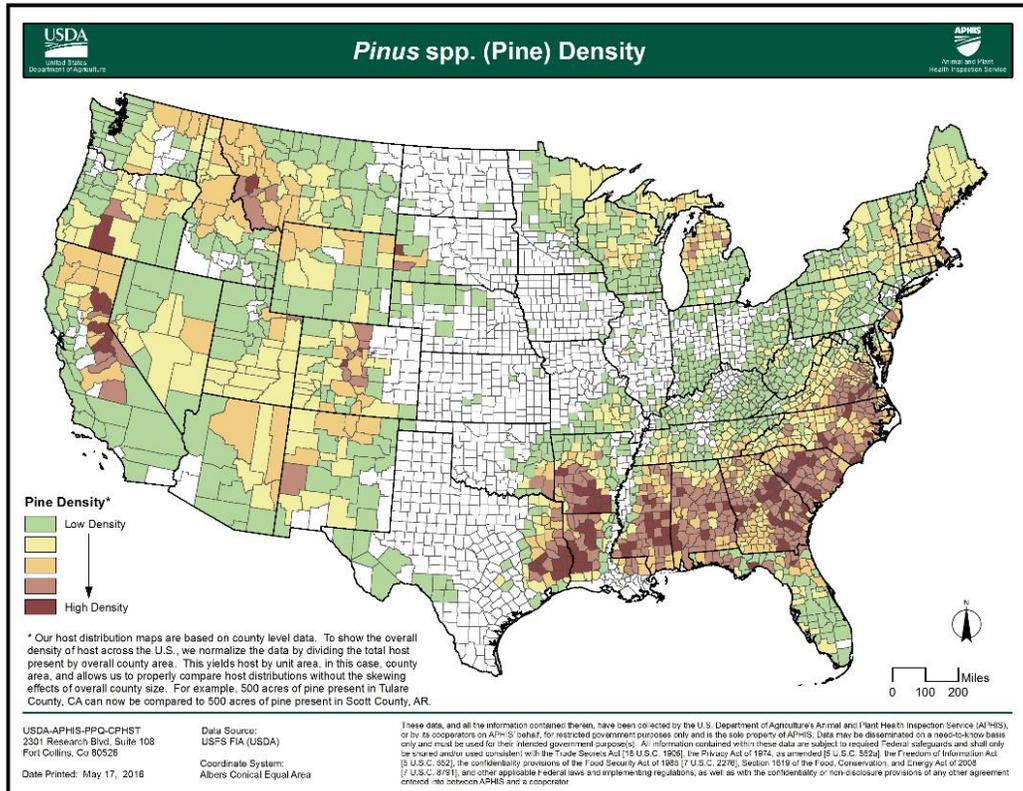
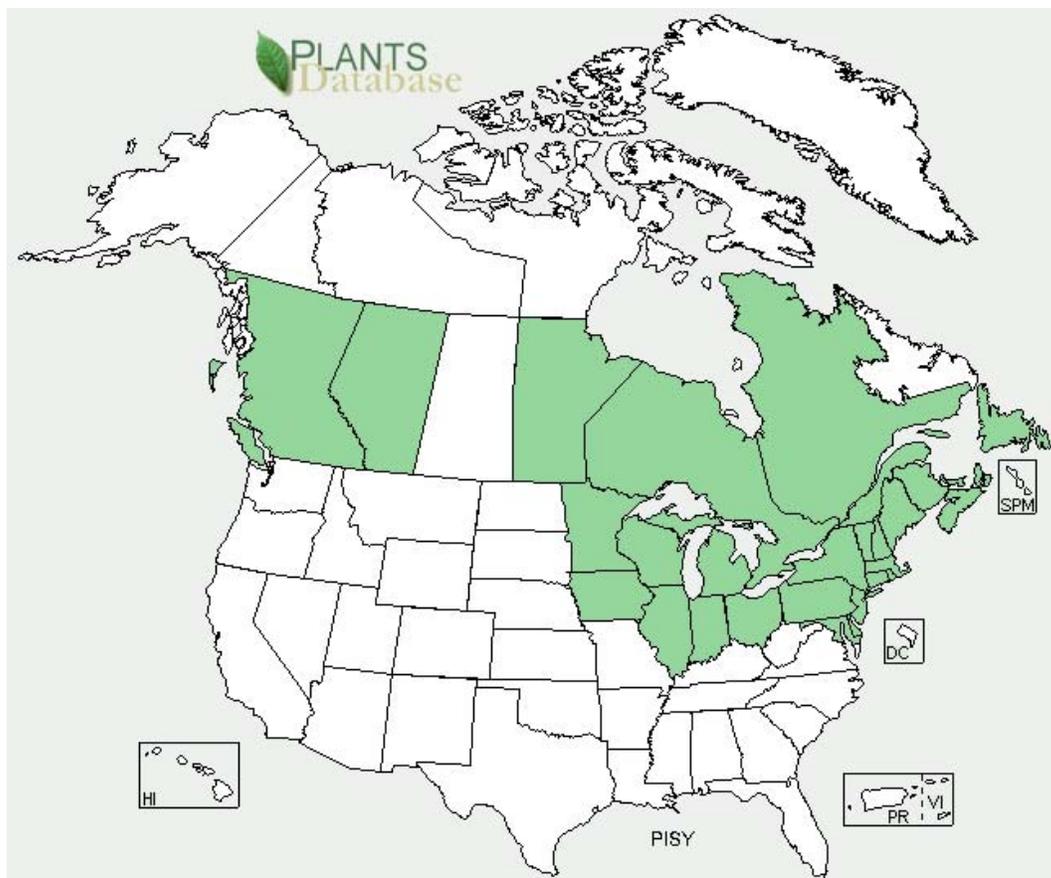


Fig. 49. Commodity acreage map of pine species (*Pinus* spp.) within the continental United States. Values from low to high indicate increased commodity density. Map courtesy of USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST.



**Figure 50.** Distribution of *Pinus sylvestris* throughout North America (USDA-NRCS, 2011; Accessed 24 March, 2011).

### Pathway

No interceptions have been recorded in the last ten years for either this species or the genus *Diprion* (AQAS, 2011; queried 3-11-2011). Neither the genus nor species is listed in the AQAS system. However, the family Diprionidae is listed as reportable. This pest may be able to travel on host plant material in international trade. Pupae of *D. pini* can be found in the bark of host plants as well as surrounding leaf litter and soil while larvae and eggs can be found on the leaves of host plants. As there are certain regulations in place when importing plant material (i.e. no soil attached to plant material) the risk associated with this is most likely low. This species may be moved short distances by man through silvicultural practices (CABI, 2008). Dispersal by adults may also occur.

### Survey

#### **CAPS-Approved Method\*:**

The CAPS-approved method is a trap and lure combination. The trap is the large plastic delta trap. The lure is effective for 28 days.

Any of the following Trap Product Names in the IPHIS Survey Supply Ordering System may be used for this target:

Large Plastic Delta Trap Kits, Orange,  
Large Plastic Delta Trap Kits, Red, or  
Large Plastic Delta Trap Kits, White

Trap color is up to the State and does not affect trap efficacy.

The Lure Product Name is *Diprion pini* Lure.

### **Literature-Based Methods:**

#### **Survey site and selection**

*Pinus sylvestris* may be used in forest stands as wind breaks, timber, and Christmas tree plantations (USDA-NRCS, 2011). Traps should be placed near areas where host trees are abundant.

#### **Time of year to survey**

This species has one generation per year in northern regions of its range as well as high elevations; two generations per year can occur in its range throughout central and southern Europe (Novak, 1976). In areas with two generations, the first generation swarms around the end of April until the start of May (Novak, 1976). In the northern region of its range, adults usually emerge during June and July (Novak, 1976).

In parts of Russia where two generations occur, adults emerge from the end of April to early May and then again from the end of July to early August (Sharov, 1993).

#### **Trap Placement**

In Herz et al. (2000), traps for *D. pini* were hung on twigs of pine trees at heights of 1.8 m (6 feet). A minimum distance of 50 m (164 feet) was used between traps in the same pine stand (Herz et al., 2000).

#### **Trapping**

A sex pheromone for *D. pini* has previously been identified as the acetate or propionate ester of (2*S*,3*R*,7*R*)-3,7-dimethyl-2-tridecanol (Anderbrant et al., 2005; Bergström et al., 1995).

When surveying for *D. pini* in Germany, Herz et al. (2000) used Lund-I traps. These consisted of two horizontal cardboard sheets that were 22 x 22 cm (8.66 in); sheets were separated about 6 cm (2.36 in) from one another by wires. The upper surface of the bottom sheet is covered with insect glue and is exchangeable. Traps were hung on host plants at a height of approximately 1.8 m (5.91 ft) (Herz et al., 2000).

### Visual inspection

Many countries in Europe survey for Diprionidae by either visually inspecting forest stands for damage or by sampling the egg clusters or cocoons in the soil (Herz et al., 2000).

### Identification

#### **CAPS-Approved Method\*:**

Morphological. There are 13 world species in the *Diprion* genus. All *Diprion* are very similar in general appearance and examination of the female ovipositor and male genitalia are the most reliable means for separation of the species.

\*For the most up-to-date methods for survey and identification, see Approved Methods on the CAPS Resource and Collaboration Site, at <http://caps.ceris.purdue.edu/>.

### Easily Confused Pests

The genus *Diprion* is most similar to species of *Neodiprion* and *Gilpinia*. Species of *Gilpinia* are the most similar-looking; species of the two genera are often confused. For a key separating North American genera of Diprionidae, see: Smith (1974).

### Commonly Encountered Non-targets

Similar species that may show up in traps in the United States are species of *Neodiprion*, *Diprion similis*, *Gilpinia hercyniae*, and *Gilpinia frutetorum*.

### References

- Anderbrant, O. 1993.** Pheromone biology of sawflies. In M. Wagner and K. F. Raffa (eds.) Sawfly Life History Adaptations to Woody Plants. Academic Press, Inc. San Diego, California. pp. 119-154.
- Anderbrant, O., F. Östrand, G. Bergström, A. –B. Wassgren, M. –A. Auger-Rozenberg, C. Geri, E. Hedenström, H. –E. Högberg, A. Herz, and W. Heitland. 2005.** Release of sex pheromone and its precursors in the pine sawfly *Diprion pini* (Hym., Diprionidae). Chemoecology 15: 147-151.
- AQAS. 2011.** Interception data on *Diprion pini* from 1-1-2000 to 12-31-2010. Accessed 11 March 2011 from: <https://mokcs14.aphis.usda.gov/aqas/HomePageInit.do>.
- Augustaitis, A. 2007.** Pine sawfly (*Diprion pini* L.)- related changes in Scots pine crown defoliation and possibilities of recovery. Polish Journal of Environmental Studies 16(3): 363-369.
- Bergström, G., A. –B. Wassgren, O. Anderbrant, J. Fägerhag, H. Edlund, E. Hedenström, H. –E. Högberg, C. Geri, M. A. Auger, M. Varama, B. S. Hansson, and J. Löfqvist. 1995.** Sex pheromone of the pine sawfly *Diprion pini* (Hymenoptera: Diprionidae): chemical identification, synthesis and biological activity. Experientia 51: 370-380.
- Besemer, A. F. H. 1942.** The biology of the pine sawfly, *D. pini* [abstract]. Wageningen 48(6): 213-217.

- CABI. 2008.** *Diprion pini* (common pine sawfly) datasheet. Centre for Agriculture and Biosciences International, Crop Protection Compendium.
- Craig, T. P. and S. Mopper. 1993.** Sex ratio variation in sawflies. *In* M. Wagner and K. F. Raffa (eds.) Sawfly Life History Adaptations to Woody Plants. Academic Press, Inc. San Diego, California. pp. 61-92.
- EPPO. 2007.** PQR database (version 4.6). Paris, France: European and Mediterranean Plant Protection Organization. [www.eppo.org](http://www.eppo.org).
- Geri, C. 1988.** The pine sawfly in central France. *In* A. A. Berryman (ed.) Dynamics of Forest Insect Populations. Patterns, Causes, Implications. Plenum Press, New York. pp. 377-405.
- Géri, C., J.-P. Allais, and M.-A. Auger. 2003.** Effects of plant chemistry and phenology on sawfly behavior and development. *In* M. Wagner and K. F. Raffa (eds.) Sawfly Life History Adaptations to Woody Plants. Academic Press, Inc. San Diego, California. pp. 173-210.
- Hedenström, E., H. Edlund, A.-B. Wassgren, G. Bergström, O. Anderbrant, F. Östrand, A. Sierpinski, M.-A. Auger-Rozenberg, A. Herz, W. Heitland, and M. Varama. 2006.** Sex pheromone of the pine sawfly, *Gilpinia pallida*: chemical identification, synthesis, and biological activity. *Journal of Chemical Ecology* 32: 2525-2541.
- Herz, A., W. Heitland, O. Anderbrant, H. Edlund, and E. Hedenström. 2000.** First use of pheromones to detect phenology patterns and density relationships of pine sawflies in German forests. *Agricultural and Forest Entomology* 2: 123-129.
- Knerer G. 1993.** Life history diversity of sawflies. *In* M. Wagner and K. F. Raffa (eds.) Sawfly Life History Adaptations to Woody Plants. Academic Press, Inc. San Diego, California. pp. 33-59.
- Långström, B., E. Annala, C. Hellqvist, M. Varama, and P. Niemelä. 2001.** Tree mortality, needle biomass recovery and growth losses in Scots pine following defoliation by *Diprion pini* (L.) and subsequent attack by *Tomicus piniperda* (L.). *Scandinavian Journal of Forest Research* 16: 342-353.
- Liston, A. D. 1953.** Compendium of European Sawflies. Gottfrieding, Germany. Chalastos Forestry.
- Lyytikäinen-Saarenmaa, P. and E. Tomppo. 2002.** Impact of sawfly defoliation on growth of Scots pine *Pinus sylvestris* (Pinaceae) and associated economic losses [abstract]. *Bulletin of Entomological Research* 92(2): 137-140.
- Novak, V. 1976.** Atlas of Insects Harmful to Forest Trees. Volume 1. Elsevier Scientific Publishing Company. Amsterdam, The Netherlands. 125 pp.
- Ross, H. H. 1937.** A generic classification of the Nearctic sawflies (Hymenoptera, Symphyta). *In* J. T. Buchholz, F. W. Tanner, and H. J. van Cleave (eds.) Illinois Biological Monographs. Urbana, Illinois, University of Illinois. 173 pp.
- Rousselet, J., C. Géri, G. M. Hewitt, and F. Lemeunier. 1998.** The chromosomes of *Diprion pini* and *D. similis* (Hymenoptera: Diprionidae): implications for karyotype evolution. *Heredity* 81: 573-578.

- Sharov, A. A. 1993.** Biology and population dynamics of the common pine sawfly, *Diprion pini* L., in Russia. In M. Wagner and K. F. Raffa (eds.) Sawfly Life History Adaptations to Woody Plants. Academic Press, Inc. San Diego, California. pp. 409-430.
- Smith, D. R. 1974.** Conifer sawflies, Diprionidae: Key to North American genera, checklist of world species, and new species from Mexico (Hymenoptera). Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington. 76: 409-418.
- Taeger, A., S. M. Blank, and A. D. Liston. 2010.** World catalog of Symphyta (Hymenoptera). Zootaxa. 2580: 1–1064.
- Tozlu, G. 2001.** Studies on the pest species belonging to the families Elateridae, Buprestidae, Cerambycidae, Curculionidae (Coleoptera) and Diprionidae (Hymenoptera) in Scotch pine (*Pinus sylvestris* L.) forests of Sarikamiş (Kars), Turkey [abstract]. Türkiye Entomoloji Dergisi 25(3): 193-204.
- USDA-CPHST. 2010.** Commodity Acreage Map, Pine Species, *Pinus* spp. USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST.
- USDA-NRCS. 2011.** The PLANTS Database. National Plant Data Center, Baton Rouge, LA 70874-4490 USA. Accessed 23-24 March, 2011 from: <http://plants.usda.gov>.

# Fungi

## ***Cronartium flaccidum***

M. J. Sullivan

### **Scientific Name**

*Cronartium flaccidum* (Alb. & Schwein) Winter

### **Synonyms:**

*Endocronartium pini* (autoecious form), *Peridermium pini* (autoecious form), *Aecidium asclepiadeum*, *Aecidium paeoniae*, *Aecidium pini*, *Caeoma pineum*, *Cronartium asclepiadeum*, *Cronartium flaccidum* f.sp. *gentianeum*, *Cronartium flaccidum* f.sp. *ruelliae*, *Cronartium flaccidum* f.sp. *typica*, *Cronatrium nemesiae*, *Cronartium paeoniae*, *Cronartium pedicularis*, *Cronartium pini*, *Cronatrium vincetoxici*, *Erineum asclepiadeum*, *Lycoperdon pini*, *Peridermium cornui*, *Sphaeria flaccida*, and *Uredo pedicularis*.

### **Common Names**

Scots pine blister rust, *Cronartium* rust, blister rust, pine-stem rust, resin canker, resin top disease, two-needle pine blister rust

### **Type of Pest**

Fungal pathogen

### **Taxonomic Position**

**Kingdom:** Fungi, **Phylum:** Basidiomycota, **Class:** Urediniomycetes, **Order:** Uredinales, **Family:** Cronartiaceae

### **Reason for Inclusion in Manual**

CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2013)

### **Pest Description**

*Cronartium flaccidum* is a rust fungus that affects several two-needle pine species in Europe and Asia. A rust fungus may produce as many as five distinct fruiting structures with five different spore stages in its life cycle in a definite sequence (Table 1). *Cronartium flaccidum* is macrocyclic and is known to produce all five spore stages. Like all rust fungi, *C. flaccidum* is an obligate parasite that requires living host cells to complete its life cycle.

This fungus is genetically identical to the autoecious rust *Peridermium pini* (*Endocronartium pini*), but is heteroecious (Hantula et al., 2002). Autoecious refers to rust fungi that produce all spore forms on one species of host plant (in this case, pine); while heteroecious refers to rust fungi that require two unrelated host plants for completion of its life cycle (in this case, pine and another host).

Moricca et al. (1996) and Hantula et al. (1998) showed that *C. flaccidum* was very closely related to *P. pini* by examining internal transcribed spacer (ITS) sequences and random amplified microsatellite (RAMS) markers, respectively. Vogler and Bruns (1998) determined that there was a close phylogenetic relationship between *C. flaccidum* and *P. pini*. The aeciospores of *P. pini* and *C. flaccidum* are also morphologically indistinguishable (Kasanen, 1997). Kaitera et al. (1999b) showed that *Peridermium pini* and *Cronartium flaccidum* could not be distinguished based upon germ tube morphology as previously suggested by Hiratsuka (1969). Based on molecular and morphological data, authors now consider the two fungi to be synonymous. *P. pini* was shown to be clonal and it was believed to have its origin as a haploid life cycle mutant of *C. flaccidum*, which has a sexual life cycle (Kasanen et al., 2000; Kasanen, 2001). The two fungi are considered synonymous in this datasheet.

Table 1. The five spore stages of a *Cronartium flaccidum*.

| STAGE | DESCRIPTION  | ROLE  |
|-------|--|---|
| 0     | Spermagonia* bearing spermatia (n) and receptive hyphae (n)  | Formed on pine; Sexual cycle of rust                                |
| I     | Aecia bearing aeciospores (n+n)                              | Formed on pine; Infect alternative hosts                            |
| II    | Uredinia (uredia) bearing urediniospores (uredospores) (n+n) | Formed on alternate host; Reinfests alternate hosts (cycling stage) |
| III   | Telia bearing teliospores (n+n → 2n)                         | Formed on alternate hosts   |
| IV    | Basidia bearing basidiospores (n)                            | Formed on alternate host; Cause of initial infections on pine       |

\*Note: Spermagonia were formally known as pycnia and spermatia were formally known as pycniospores, and some references use the older nomenclature.

### **From Mordue and Gibson (1978):**

Spermagonia and aecia caulicolous, on slightly to moderately swollen fusiform cankers.

Spermagonia: Spreading beneath the periderm, flat, about 40-50 µm deep and 0.5-3mm diameter, at first yellowish, exuding spermatia 1-2 µm diam. in orange droplets, later darkening, gradually disrupted by enlarging aecia.

Aecia: Peridermioid, about 2-7 mm diam., dehiscence circumscissile or irregular. Peridium several cells thick, the cells rhomboid ellipsoid, elongated up to 80 µm long by 38 µm wide, the walls 4-8 µm thick, strongly verrucose (wart-like); rigid hair like peridial filaments are frequently present. Aeciospores are globose to ovoid-ellipsoid, 21-36 x 14-24 µm (mean 26 x 19 µm) with hyaline walls 2-4 µm thick; walls verrucose except for smooth area at base or side, the warts approx. 1 µm diam. and 1-2 µm high.

Uredinia: Hypophyllous (growing on underside of leaves), in groups or scattered, bullate (appearing puckered, blistered), 0.1-0.3 mm diam., peridiate (with protective layer enclosing spores), dehiscing (splitting open) by a central pore. Urediniospores broadly ellipsoid to obovoid, 18-30 x 11-20 µm (mean 24 x 15

µm), wall hyaline, 1.5-2.5 µm thick, echinulate (spiny) with the spines 2-4 µm apart and about 1 µm high, though some spores show almost smooth areas; germ pores inconspicuous.

**Telia:** Develop in the uredinia or separately, producing basally peridiate teliospore columns up to 2 mm long and 0.1-0.2 mm wide, pale orange to cinnamon brown, sometimes closely grouped on clearly defined spots, sometimes more scattered. Teliospores catenate (arranged in chains), firmly adherent, fairly short ellipsoid at apex of telial columns, longer and more cylindrical below, ends rounded or truncate, 20-64 x 10-16 µm (commonly about 55 x 12 µm), wall hyaline, yellowish to golden, about 1 µm thick, often thickened at ends or corners (particularly at apex of spore) to 2-3 µm, smooth. The teliospores germinate without dormancy and the upper part of the telial columns usually has a whitish powdery appearance due to the presence of basidia and basidiospores.

**Basidia:** Mature basidium septate with four cells, 33-40 µm long; each with a conical protuberance called sterigma, about 4 µm in length. Each sterigma has a basidiospore at the apex. In total there are four basidiospores for each basidium. Basidiospores rounded, smooth-surfaced, hyaline, 3-4 µm in diameter (Ragazzi et al., 1987). Basidiospores produce germ tubes that are often ramified. They vary in length (some more than 200 µm after 4 days of incubation) with a diameter of 2-3, 5 µm (Ragazzi et al., 1987).

### Biology and Ecology

Table 1 provides a summary of each spore stage of *Cronartium flaccidum* and its role in the lifecycle of the pathogen. *C. flaccidum* infects hosts (*Pinus* spp.) by basidiospores (Stage IV) that are formed on leaves of alternate hosts and aerially dispersed (Ragazzi and Dellavalle Fedi, 1992). The basidia directly penetrate into the stomata to cause the initial infections on pine (Ragazzi and Dellavalle Fedi, 1992). Symptoms, however, only become apparent later in development in the branch and main stem (Geils et al., 2009). On pine shoots, spermagonia (Stage 0) and aecia (Stage 1) are developed, spreading the rust aerially among alternate hosts by aeciospores (Ragazzi et al., 1986a). A period of several years (2-4 years for the autoecious form but longer for heteroecious form) may elapse between infection and the appearance of the aecial state on infected tissue (Mordue and Gibson, 1978; Ragazzi and Moriondo, 1980; Kaitera, 2000). After successful disease establishment, uredinia (Stage III) are formed on alternate hosts, followed by telia (Stage IV) formation from uredinia or directly through the leaf epidermis (Ragazzi et al., 1987; Kaitera and Nuorteva, 2003a). After germination, basidia are formed on telia followed by basidiospore formation. The cycle then repeats. The pathogen survives as mycelium within host tissues.

Several environmental factors influence the development of the disease and the life cycle of *C. flaccidum*. Ragazzi et al. (1989) evaluated temperature, spore type, and host leaf age as variables in the production of uredia and telia of *C.*

*flaccidum* on the alternate host *Vincetoxicum hirundinaria*. The authors found that 20°C (68°F) was optimal for the production of uredia and telia on host leaves (5-10 days old). The production of uredia was best, however, when urediniospores rather than aeciospores were used as inoculum. Ragazzi (1983) reported that the optimum temperature for formation of uredinia and telial columns was 20-22°C (68-72°F), and temperatures less than 18°C (64°F) or greater than 22°C (72°F) were detrimental to rust fructification.

The temperatures reported for germination of the different spore types are 5-30°C (41-86°F) for aeciospores, 5-30°C (41-86°F) for urediniospores, and 10-25°C (50-77°F) for basidiospores (Mordue and Gibson, 1978; Ragazzi et al., 1986b). The optimum temperature for germination of aeciospores, urediniospores, and basidiospores was reported as 15°C (59°F), 20°C (68°F), and 20°C, respectively (Ragazzi et al., 1986b). High moisture levels and precipitation increase the incidence of disease (CABI, 2005).



In addition, pathogenic variability of *C. flaccidum* strains has been observed. Differences in pathogenicity was correlated to different hosts and habitats with significant differences dependent on the *Pinus* spp. inoculated and the elevation from which *C. flaccidum* strains were obtained (Mitterpergher and Raddi, 1977).

*Cladosporium tenuissimum* has been reported as a hyperparasite of *Cronartium flaccidum*. *Cladosporium tenuissimum* and has been isolated from the aeciospores



Fig. 51. Top: Aecia of *Cronartium flaccidum* on pine. Bottom: Close-up of aecia. Photos courtesy of Ondrej Zincha. [www.biolib.cz/en](http://www.biolib.cz/en)

of *Cronartium flaccidum* and its autoecious form *Peridermium pini* (Moricca et al., 1999; Moricca et al., 2001; Nasini et al., 2004). Based on its ability to reduce aeciospore germination, reduce viability of aeciospores, reduce rust development under greenhouse conditions over 2 years, and survive and multiply in forest ecosystems without rusts being present, *C. tenuissimum* appears to be a promising agent for the biological control of pine stem rusts in Europe (Moricca et al., 2001).

Raddi et al. (1979), Raddi and Ragazzi (1980), and Raddi et al. (1980) discuss current progress and issues with breeding for resistance to *C. flaccidum* in pines.

### **Pest Importance**

Blister rust caused by *C. flaccidum* has been described as 'severe', 'rapidly advancing', and 'dangerous' (Ragazzi and Dellavalle Fedi 1983, Hantula et al. 2002). Blister rust has been a major factor in reducing forest productivity for centuries (Hantula et al., 2002). In the 1960s and 1970s the heteroecious form (*C. flaccidum*) spread epidemically in Mediterranean countries and decimated forests of two-needle pines. The disease is severe on Scots pine (*Pinus sylvestris*). The high numbers of coniferous hosts and the very widespread distribution of one of the main alternate hosts (*Vincetoxicum hirundinaria*), led to great losses in Italy, especially in young pine stands (Hantula et al., 2002).

In Britain, the disease rate on Scots pines caused by the autoecious form (*Peridermium pini*) increased from the 1960s to the 1980s (Greig, 1987) causing considerable volume losses on trees with stem lesions and crown symptoms (Gibbs et al., 1987). In Finland, more than 60% and 20% of Scots pines in single stands may be affected by the heteroecious (Kaitera, 2000) or the autoecious rust forms (Kaitera et al., 1994), respectively. In Greece, in a six year period *C. flaccidum* had infected/killed over 5000 m<sup>3</sup> in a forest of approximately 1000 ha (Diamandis and De Kam, 1986). In Sweden, radial stem increment of Scots pine was reduced 40-70% by severe attacks of *C. flaccidum* and 20-40% by minor attacks (Martinsson and Nilsson, 1987).

Signs of *Cronartium flaccidum* and symptoms of the disease may be latent (inactive, hidden, or dormant) for 2 or more years in infected pine host material and up to a month in leafy hosts. The chance of introduction into the United States is high because visual survey of propagative material may not be effective due to this latency (Geils et al., 2009). According to Geils et al. (2009), Japanese black pine (*Pinus thunbergii*), mugo pine (*Pinus mugo*) or other 2 or 3-needled pines, commonly used for bonsai, pose a significant risk for the introduction of *C. flaccidum* if imported as whole plants.



Fig. 52. Left: Telia of *Cronartium flaccidum* on alternate host. Right: Close-up of telial columns. Photos courtesy of Miroslav Deml. [www.biolib.cz/en](http://www.biolib.cz/en)

### Symptoms

*Cronartium flaccidum* causes blister rust in pines. The first symptoms of disease are yellowish, necrotic spots on the pine needles. Chlorosis and necrosis of the infected sites, yellowing and premature defoliation of leaves/needles, branch death, bark discoloration, cankers (lesions) and deformed growth are also commonly observed symptoms of the disease (CABI, 2005). Resinosis (excessive resin exudation) can be seen in the lesions.

*Cronartium flaccidum* affects plants by growing within the vascular system and impeding nutrient and water uptake. Mycelia grow on young shoots. As the pathogen spreads within the host, it interferes with normal tree growth by killing the cambium and damaging vascular tissue. This damage results in the loss of conductive ability, premature leaf loss, and eventual death of the tree. The pathogen can girdle the part of the tree located above the canker (Mordue and Gibson, 1978).

The disease may occur on pines of all ages. The development of disease is usually rapid and lethal to seedlings and young trees (Martinsson and Nilsson, 1987). Infection, which takes place primarily via needles, leads to swelling of young shoots and to production of blister-like structures in the cortex, which split to reveal masses of orange aeciospores (Fig. 51). The time from infection to visible aeciospores can take several years. In England, the aeciospores are usually observed in early summer (Greig, 1987). Spermogonia with spermatial fluid ('sweetish droplets') also occur on the infected bark. Uredinia and hair-like telia appear on the lower leaf surface of the alternate hosts in mid to late summer (Fig. 52).

## Known Hosts

*Cronartium flaccidum* is known to have many pine hosts, with different levels of susceptibility. *Pinus sylvestris* (Scots pine) is considered a common (although moderately resistant) host, but the pathogen has been shown to cause disease on over 15 pine species. Species in bold are reported by multiple authors as being important hosts of *C. flaccidum*.

### Major Pine Hosts:

***Pinus brutia*** (brutian pine), ***Pinus densiflora*** (Japanese red pine), ***Pinus halepensis*** (aleppo pine), ***Pinus koraiensis*** (fruit pine), *Pinus laricio* (black pine), ***Pinus massoniana*** (masson pine), *Pinus montana* (dwarf mountain pine), *Pinus mugo* (mountain, mugo pine), ***Pinus nigra*** (black, Austrian pine), *Pinus pallasiana*, ***Pinus pinaster*** (maritime pine), ***Pinus pinea*** (stone pine), *Pinus ponderosa* (ponderosa pine), ***Pinus pumila*** (dwarf Siberian pine), *Pinus rotunda*, ***Pinus sylvestris*** (Scots pine), ***Pinus tabuliformis*** (Chinese pine), *Pinus taiwanensis* (Taiwan red pine), *Pinus takahasii*, ***Pinus uncinata*** (mountain pine), ***Pinus wallichiana*** (blue pine), and ***Pinus yunnanensis*** (Yunnan pine) (Mordue and Gibson, 1978; Ragazzi and Dellavalle Fedi, 1982; Moricca et al., 1996; CABI, 2005).

### Alternate hosts:

*Asclepias* spp. (milkweeds), *Asclepias cornuti* (milkweed), *Asclepias purpurascens* (purple milkweed), *Delphinium delavayi* (Delavayi larkspur), *Euphrasia brevipila* (drug eyebright), *Euphrasia maximowiczii* (an-jeun-jop-ssal-pul), *Gentiana asclepiadea* (willow gentian), *Grammatocarpus* spp. (twining grammatocarpus), *Impatiens* spp. (impatiens, touch-me-knots), *Loasa* spp. (loasa), ***Melampyrum* spp.** (cow-wheats), *Melampyrum arvense* (field cow-wheat), *Melampyrum cristatum* (crested cow-wheat), *Melampyrum nemorosum* (wood cow-wheat), *Melampyrum pratense* (common cow-wheat) ***Melampyrum sylvaticum*** (small cow-wheat), *Nemesia* spp. (nemesia), ***Paeonia* spp.** (peony), *Paeonia albiflora* (white peony), *Paeonia anomala* (anomalous peony), *Paeonia arborea* (mu dan), *Paeonia broteri* (Brotero's peony), *Paeonia corallina* (peony), *Paeonia cultorum* (peony), *Peonia daurica* (peony), *Peonia edulis* (peony), *Paeonia japonica* (cao shao yao), *Paeonia lactiflora* (Chinese peony), *Paeonia mascula* (peony), *Paeonia moutan* (peony), *Paeonia obovata* (Chinese peony), *Paeonia officinalis* (common peony), *Paeonia peregrine* (peregrine peony), *Peonia suffruticosa* (Japanese tree peony), *Paeonia taurica* (peony), *Paeonia tenuifolia* (peony), *Paeonia triternata* (peony), ***Pedicularis* spp.** (louseworts), *Pedicularis lapponicum* (Lapland lousewort), *Pedicularis palustris* (marsh lousewort), *Pedicularis resupinata* (fan gu ma xian hao), *Pedicularis sceptrum-carolinum* (lousewort), *Phtheirospermum japonicum* (song hao), *Ruellia* spp. (wild petunia), *Schizanthus* spp. (butterfly flower, poor man's orchid), *Siphonostegia chinensis* (yin xing cao), *Tropaeolum* spp. (nasturtium), *Verbena* spp. (verbena), ***Vincetoxicum* spp.** (swallow wort), *Vincetoxicum albovianum* (swallow wort), *Vincetoxicum fuscatum* (swallow wort), ***Vincetoxicum hirundinaria*** (= *Cynanchum laxum*, *C. vincetoxicum*) (Louise's swallow wort),

*Vincetoxicum mongolicum* (hua bei bai qian), *Vincetoxicum nigrum* (black swallow wort), *Vincetoxicum officinale* (white swallow wort), *Vincetoxicum rossicum* (European swallow wort), and *Vincetoxicum scandens* (Roll-Hansen, 1973; Mordue and Gibson, 1978; Kaitera and Hantula, 1998; Moricca and Ragazzi, 1998; Kaitera, 1999; Kaitera et al., 1999a; Kasanen, 2001; Kaitera and Nuorteva, 2003ab, Kaitera et al., 2005; Farr and Rossman, 2010).

**Note:** Considerable variation has been found in the susceptibility of alternate hosts from different locations and the virulence of *C. flaccidum* spore sources (Roll-Hansen, 1973; Kaitera, 1999; Kaitera et al., 1999a).

Raddi and Fagnani (1978) grew several pines from the United States in Europe, inoculated them with *C. flaccidum*, and found several species with no mycelium in needle tissue and no pycnia, aecia, or mycelium in the stem: *P. clausa* (sand pine), *P. contorta* (lodgepole pine), *P. echinata* (shortleaf pine), *P. elliotii* (slash pine), *P. glabra* (spruce pine), *P. radiata* (Monterey pine), *P. resinosa* (red pine), *P. serotina* (pond pine), *P. taeda* (loblolly pine), and *P. virginiana* (Virginia pine). They considered these pines to have a high degree of resistance to *C. flaccidum*, although some did display 'spotted seedlings'. Kaitera and Nuorteva (2008) showed no disease symptoms on artificially inoculated *P. contorta* (lodgepole pine), *P. peuce* (Balkan pine), *P. strobus* (eastern white pine), *P. resinosa* (red pine), *P. banksiana* (jack pine), and *P. cembra* (swiss, arolla pine).

### Known Vectors

Insects may play a role in mating in *C. flaccidum* based on the similarity of its life cycle to that of *Cronartium ribicola* (Mordue and Gibson, 1978). Insects are attracted to sweet liquid produced from the spermatogonia of *Cronartium ribicola* and appear to promote fertilization by carrying spermatia between them.

Outbreaks of Scots pine blister rust are often associated with insect infestations (*Myleophilus piniperda*, *Bupalus piniaria*, *Pissodes notatus*), which aggravate the damage caused. Egg laying of *P. notatus* is localized on pines attacked by *C. flaccidum* (Mordue and Gibson, 1978). Aeciospores have been shown to be artificially transmitted by *Pissodes piniphilus* (Pappinen and von Weissenberg, 1994). *Pissodes pini*, *Dioryctria splendidella*, *Laspeyresia coniferana*, *Lagria hirta*, and *Doryctria abietella* are reported as possible vectors for the rust on the basis of their occurrence and because they feed on *C. flaccidum* aecia (CABI, 2005).

### Known Distribution

**Asia:** China, Japan, and Korea. **Europe:** Armenia, Austria, Azerbaijan, Belgium, Bosnia and Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Croatia, Czech. Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Georgia, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Italy, Kosovo, Lithuania, Macedonia, Montenegro, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Russia, Scotland, Serbia, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland,

Ukraine, and United Kingdom (Diamandis and De Kam, 1986; Gibbs et al., 1988; CABI, 2005; Geils et al., 2009).

A report from India is considered an invalid record (CABI, 2005). According to Farr and Rossman (2010) there is a record of a synonym of this pathogen (*Cronartium asclepiadeum*) from Vermont in 1898. The validity of this record is not known. All other sources indicate that *C. flaccidum* is exotic to the United States.

### Potential Distribution within the United States

With the exception of Ponderosa pine, most United States species were considered to have a high degree of resistance to *C. flaccidum* by Raddi and Fagnani (1978) by artificial and natural inoculation. If this rust has or gains the capacity to infect North American pines, the economic and ecological impact would be incalculable (Geils et al., 2009). For example, it has taken over 1 billion in current U.S. dollars to control white pine blister rust (caused by *C. ribicola*) since its introduction into North America in the 1900s, and this disease has caused much greater losses in forest productivity and ecological impacts.

In the United States, Scots pine (a known, common host) has been planted for erosion control and as an ornamental and also harvested for pulp and timber; however, its primary economic value is currently for Christmas trees (although other conifers are more recently favored). It has been widely planted in the colder regions of North America and is naturalized in the U.S. Northeast, Midwest, and Pacific Northwest (Geils et al., 2009). In 2002, Oregon, North Carolina, Michigan, Pennsylvania, Wisconsin, Washington, New York, and Virginia were the top Christmas tree producing states. The most Scots pine was grown primarily in the Lake States. Michigan was the top producer of Christmas trees in 1998 (Geils et al., 2009). These areas would be at high risk based on host availability.

A recent risk analysis by USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST indicates that southeastern United States and portions of the western and northeastern United States have the greatest risk for *C. flaccidum* establishment based on host availability (all pine species), climate, and pathway within the continental United States.

### Survey

**CAPS-Approved Method:** The CAPS-approved method is visual survey, spore trapping, or a combination of these methods to survey for *C. flaccidum*. For visual survey, collect twigs, bark, or leaves from symptomatic plants with signs (fruiting bodies) of the pathogen. Spore traps, similar to those used for soybean rust monitoring, can be used to detect spores.

**Literature-Based Methods:** Visually examine two-needle pines, especially Scots pine, for fruiting bodies (spermagonia and aecia) of the pathogen. Alternate hosts can also be examined for uredinia and telia of the pathogen.

*Cronartium flaccidum* can be detected in the tree most easily when fruiting. Spermogonia with spermatial fluid occur on the infected bark (next to the aecial scars of early summer) in late summer; aecia appear on the bark in the early summer, and uredinia and hair-like telia appear on the lower leaf surface of the alternate hosts in mid-to-late summer. The infected part of the shoot (lesion) is often swollen. The disease is also revealed by resinosis in the lesion. After the leader of the shoot carrying the lesion is killed, the top of the tree is dead, but green shoots below the lesion are visible. As an indication of infection in the shoot, the color of the needles above the lesion may turn light green to yellow (CABI, 2005).

### Key Diagnostics

**CAPS-Approved Method:** Confirmation of *C. flaccidum* requires a morphological identification. Characteristics of pycnia, aecia, aeciospores, uredinia, urediniospores, telia, and teliospores can be used to distinguish from other rust fungi (Mordue and Gibson, 1978).

*C. flaccidum* can be cultured (axenically) by seeding aeciospores on modified Schenk and Hildebrandt's and Harvey and Grasham's media and incubating at 23-25°C (73-77°F) in the dark (Moricca and Ragazzi, 1994).

Further study is possible *in vitro* on *Pinus* spp. callus tissue (Ragazzi et al., 1995).

### Literature-Based Methods:

The recovery plan for Scots pine blister rust suggests a morphological identification to genus and DNA sequencing to determine species (Geils et al., 2009).

**Morphological:** *C. flaccidum* can be cultured by seeding aeciospores on modified Schenk and Hildebrandt's (1972) and modified Harvey and Grasham's (1974) media incubated at 21-24°C (70-75°F) (Moricca and Ragazzi, 1994, 1996). Incubation in the dark is suggested since the germ tubes of *C. flaccidum* are light sensitive. For *C. flaccidum*, the optimal seeding rate was found to be 400-1200 aeciospores/mm<sup>2</sup> (Moricca and Ragazzi, 1994). Growth is slow and may take weeks to months to develop colonies. High variation was observed in hyphal length and morphology, and in colony appearance, margin, and morphology (Moricca and Ragazzi 1994, 1996).

The modified Schenk and Hildebrandt's medium (SH1) contained the following ingredients per liter: 300 mg NH<sub>4</sub>H<sub>2</sub>PO<sub>4</sub>; 5 mg H<sub>3</sub>BO<sub>3</sub>; 151 mg CaCl<sub>2</sub>; 0.100 mg CoCl<sub>2</sub> · 6H<sub>2</sub>O; 0.200 mg CuSO<sub>4</sub> · 5H<sub>2</sub>O; 20 mg Na<sub>2</sub> · EDTA · 2H<sub>2</sub>O; 15 mg FeSO<sub>4</sub> · 7H<sub>2</sub>O ; 194.5 mg MgSO<sub>4</sub>; 10 mg MnSO<sub>4</sub> · H<sub>2</sub>O ; 1 mg KI; 2.5 g KNO<sub>3</sub>; 0.100 mg Na<sub>2</sub>MoO<sub>4</sub> · 2H<sub>2</sub>O; 1 mg Zn SO<sub>4</sub> · 7H<sub>2</sub>O; 8 g Difco Bacto agar; 3 g oxoid broth; 1 g malt extract; 30 g sucrose; 2 mg kinetin, and 0.5 mg 2,4 D (Moricca and Ragazzi, 1994, 1996).

The modified Harvey and Grasham's medium (HG1) contained the following ingredients per liter: 500 mg  $\text{CaNO}_3 \cdot 4\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; 281.73 mg  $\text{MgSO}_4 \cdot 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; 25 mg  $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$ ; 250 mg  $\text{Fe}_2(\text{SO}_4)_3 \cdot 7\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; 140 mg  $\text{KH}_2\text{PO}_4$ ; 4.14 mg  $\text{MnSO}_4 \cdot 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ; 8 g Difco Bacto agar; 4 g oxoid broth; and 30 g sucrose (Moricca and Ragazzi, 1994, 1996). The pH of both media was adjusted to 5.7-5.8 with 1N HCL and 1N NaOH before autoclaving at 121°C for 20 minutes (Moricca and Ragazzi, 1994). In general, isolates from Italy grew better at 21 than at 24°C and better on the HG1 medium than on the SH1 medium, but neither temperature nor medium significantly affected colony appearance and shape, sporulation, spore type, or hyphal type (Moricca and Ragazzi, 1996).

Moricca and Ragazzi (2001) developed a technique to grow mycelial clones axenically of *C. flaccidum* from basidiospores from single telia on HG1 medium containing 2 g/l of yeast extract, 0.5 g/l  $\text{CaCO}_3$ , and 10 g/l bovine serum albumin. Ragazzi et al. (1995) grew axenic cultures of *C. flaccidum* on pine callus tissue. The authors grew the pine calli on MS medium (Murashige and Skoog, 1962) supplemented 0.5 mg/l 2,4 D and used basidiospores to inoculate the callus tissue.

Biochemical: Cheng et al. (1995) were able to differentiate three *Cronartium* spp. (*C. ribicola*, *C. flaccidum*, and *C. quercum*) using isozyme analyses on the aeciospores.

Molecular: Kaitera and Hantula (1998) provide a protocol to compare restriction fragment length polymorphisms (RFLP) in ITS-region DNA based on digestion of PCR products with the restriction enzyme *Alu I*. This protocol was used to separate *C. fraxinea* and *C. ribicola* telia from 'alternate hosts' and to confirm aecia collected from Scots pine. *C. ribicola* showed two bands with apparent sizes of 220 bp and 450 bp, *C. fraxinea* showed three bands with apparent sizes of 130 bp, 230 bp, and 350 bp. The 220 and 230 bp bands appeared to be twice as intense as the other bands, and assuming these two represent double restriction fragments, the summed fragment sizes of the two patterns were 890 and 940 bp, indicating the digestions were complete.

### **Easily Confused Pests**

At least eleven *Cronartium* species and six species of *Peridermium* occur in North America on pine (Chalkey, 2010). To a certain extent, these can be distinguished by the aeciospore and urediniospore morphology, as well as by symptomatology. While some cause stem cankers, other rusts produce galls or witches brooms in infected stems or branches. Others cause no symptoms at all (Chalkey, 2010). *C. flaccidum* belongs to a distinct group of *Cronartium* species distinguished by their aeciospores (in which an echinulate surface alternates with smooth areas) (Moricca and Ragazzi, 1996). *Cronartium comandrae*, a widespread North American pine stem rust that also infects two-needle species like *C. flaccidum*, produces unique tear-drop shaped aeciospores on pine

(Chalkey, 2010)

Symptoms can be confused with those of *C. ribicola*, the causal agent of white pine blister rust. *C. ribicola* does not infect *Pinus sylvestris*, whereas *C. flaccidum* does not infect five-needle pines or *Ribes* species (Kaitera and Nuorteva, 2006b). Kaitera and Nuorteva (2006a) conducted inoculation studies with *C. ribicola* on the main alternate hosts of *C. flaccidum*. The authors found that neither uredinia nor telia developed on the leaves of *Vincetoxicum hirundinaria*, *V. nigrum*, *Melampyrum sylvaticum*, *M. pretense*, *M. nemorosum*, *M. arvense*, *M. cristatum*, or *M. polonicum*.

In Europe, other rust that can attack pines also have a heteroecious life cycle similar to *C. flaccidum*, but usually infect different alternate hosts. *Coleosporium tussilaginis*, the pine needle rust, shares a few telial hosts with blister rust, but produces its spermogonia and aecia on pine needles, not on the stems. Also, teliospores of this rust on species of *Melampyrum* are single to cylindrical, produced not in long columns but in waxy crusts. *Melampsora populnea* infects the shoots of two-needle pines, causing shoot bending and/or tip death. Its linear aecia lack a peridium and the aeciospores are significantly smaller than those of *C. flaccidum* (Chalkey, 2010).

## References

- CABI. 2005.** Forestry Compendium. Wallingford, UK: CAB International.  
<http://www.cabi.org/compedia/fc/>
- Chalkley, D. 2010.** Systematic Mycology and Microbiology Laboratory, ARS, USDA. Invasive Fungi. Scots stem pine rust -*Cronartium flaccidum*.  
<http://nt.ars-grin.gov/sbmlweb/fungi/index.cfm>
- Cheng, D.S., Xue, Y., and Shao, L.P. 1995.** Differentiation among *Cronartium* species from northeast China by isozyme analysis. Proceedings of the Fourth Rust of Pines Working Party Conference. Pp. 71-75. Institute of Agriculture and Forestry. University of Tsukuba, Tsukuba, Japan.
- Diamandis, S., and De Kam, M. 1986.** A severe attack of Scots pine by resin top disease in N. Greece. Eur. J. For. Path. 16L 247-249.
- Farr, D.F., and Rossman, A.Y. 2010.** Fungal Databases, Systemic Mycology and Microbiology Laboratory, ARS. <http://nt.ars-grin.gov/fungaldatabases/>
- Geils, B.W., Klopfenstein, N.B., Kim, M.-S., Spaine, P., Richardson, B.A., Zambino, P.J., Shaw, C.G., Walla, J., Bulluck, R., Redmond, L., and Smith, K. 2009.** Recovery plan for Scots pine blister rust caused by *Cronartium flaccidum* (Alb. & Schwein.) G. Winter and *Peridermium pini* (Pers.) Lev. [syn. *C. asclepiadeum* (Willd.) Fr., *Endocronartium pini* (Pers.) Y. Hiratsuka].  
[http://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs\\_other/rmrs\\_2009\\_geils\\_b001.pdf](http://www.fs.fed.us/rm/pubs_other/rmrs_2009_geils_b001.pdf)
- Gibbs, J.N., Greig, J.W., and Hickman, I.T. 1987.** An analysis of *Peridermium* stem rust of Scots pine in Thetford forest in 1984 and 1985. Forestry 60(2): 203-218.

- Gibbs, J.N., England, N., and Wolstenholme, R. 1988.** Variation in the pine stem rust fungus *Peridermium pini* in the United Kingdom. *Plant Pathology* 37: 45-53.
- Greig, J.W. 1987.** History of *Peridermium* stem rust of Scots pine (*Pinus sylvestris* L.) in Thetford Forest, East Anglia. *Forestry* 60(2): 193-202.
- Hantula, J., Niemi, M., Kaitera, J., Jalkanen, R., and Kurkela, T. 1998.** Genetic variation of the resin top fungus in Finland as determined by random amplified microsatellites (RAMS). *Eur. J. For. Path.* 28: 361-372.
- Hantula, J., Kasanen, R., Kaitera, J., and Moricca, S. 2002.** Analyses of genetic variation suggest that pine rust *Cronartium flaccidum* and *Peridermium pini* belong to the same species. *Mycol. Res.* 106(2): 203-209.
- Harvey, A.E., and Grasham, J.L. 1974.** Axenic culture of the mononucleate stage of *Cronartium ribicola*. *Phytopathology* 64: 1028-1035.
- Hiratsuka, Y. 1969.** *Endocronartium*, a new genus for autoecious pine stem rusts. *Can. J. Bot.* 47: 1493-1495.
- Kaitera, J. 1999.** *Cronartium flaccidum* fruitbody production on *Melampyrum* spp. and some important alternate hosts to pine. *Eur. J. For. Path.* 29: 391-398.
- Kaitera, J. 2000.** Analysis of *Cronartium flaccidum* lesion development on pole-stage Scots pine. *Silva Fennica* 34(1): 21-27.
- Kaitera, J., and Hantula, J. 1998.** *Melampyrum sylvaticum*, a new alternate host for pine stem rust *Cronartium flaccidum*. *Mycologia* 90(6): 1028-1030.
- Kaitera, J., and Nuroteva, H. 2003a.** *Cronartium flaccidum* produces uredinia and telia on *Melampyrum nemorosum* and on Finnish *Vincetoxicum hirundinaria*. *For. Path.* 33: 205-213.
- Kaitera, J., and Nuorteva, H. 2003b.** Relative susceptibility of four *Melampyrum* species to *Cronartium flaccidum*. *Scand. J. For. Res.* 18: 499-504.
- Kaitera, J., and Nuorteva, H. 2006a.** Finnish *Cronartium ribicola* does not infect alternate hosts of *Cronartium flaccidum*. *For. Path.* 36: 247-252.
- Kaitera, J., and Nuorteva, H. 2006b.** Susceptibility of *Ribes* spp. to pine stem rusts in Finland. *For. Path.* 225-246.
- Kaitera, J., and Nuorteva, H. 2008.** Inoculation of eight *Pinus* species with *Cronartium* and *Peridermium* stem rusts. *For. Ecol. Man.* 255: 973-981.
- Kaitera, J., Aalto, T., and Jalkanen, R. 1994.** Effect of resin-top disease caused by *Peridermium pini* on the volume and value of *Pinus sylvestris* saw timber and pulpwood. *Scand. J. For. Res.* 9: 376-381.
- Kaitera, J., Seitamaki, I., Hantula, J., Jalkanen, R., and Kurkela, T. 1999a.** Inoculation of known and potential alternate hosts with *Peridermium pini* and *Cronartium flaccidum*. *Mycol. Res.* 103(2): 235-241.
- Kaitera, J., Seitamaki, I., Hantula, J., Jalkanen, R., and Kurkela, T. 1999b.** Morphological variation of *Peridermium pini* and *Cronartium flaccidum* aeciospores. *Mycol. Res.* 103(6): 677-683.
- Kaitera, J., Nuroteva, H., and Hantula, J. 2005.** Distribution and frequency of *Cronartium flaccidum* on *Melampyrum* spp. in Finland. *Can. J. For. Res.* 35: 229-234.

- Kasanen, R. 1997.** Aeciospores of *Cronartium flaccidum*, *Endocronartium pini*, and *C. ribicola* show no differences in morphology. *Eur. J. For. Path.* 27: 251-260.
- Kasanen, R. 2001.** Relationship between *Cronartium flaccidum* and *Peridermium pini*. Academic dissertation. University of Helsinki.
- Kasanen, R., Kaitera, J., and Hantula, J. 2000.** The genetic composition of *Peridermium pini* and *Cronartium flaccidum* cankers on Scots pine as revealed by two multi-allelic loci. *For. Path.* 30: 221-230.
- Martinsson, O., and Nilsson, B. 1987.** The impact of *Cronartium flaccidum* on the growth of *Pinus sylvestris*. *Scand. J. For. Res.* 2: 349-357.
- Mitterpergher, L., and Raddi, P. 1977.** Variation of diverse sources of *Cronartium flaccidum*. *Eur. J. For. Pathol.* 7(2): 93-98.
- Mordue, J.E.M., and Gibson, I.A.S. 1978.** *Cronartium flaccidum*. CMI Descriptions of Pathogenic Fungi and Bacteria. No. 680.
- Moricca, S., and Ragazzi, A. 1994.** Axenic culture of the aecial state of *Cronartium flaccidum* from Italy. *Mycol. Res.* 98: 1258-1262.
- Morica, S., and Ragazzi, A. 1996.** Culture characteristics and variation of *Cronartium flaccidum* isolates. *Can. J. Bot.* 74(6): 924-933.
- Moricca, S., and Ragazzi, A. 1998.** Use of RFLP and SSCP analysis to differentiate the pine rusts *Cronartium flaccidum* and *Peridermium pini*. *Mycol. Res.* 102: 666-670.
- Moricca, S., and Ragazzi, A. 2001.** Establishment of single-genotype axenic cultures from the haploid stage of the pine blister rust *Cronartium flaccidum*. *Mycol. Res.* 105(12): 1527-1532.
- Moricca, S., Kasuga, T., Mitchelson, K., Ragazzi, A., and Diamandis, S. 1996.** Heterogeneity in intergenic regions of the ribosomal repeat of the pine-blister rusts *Cronartium flaccidum* and *Peridermium pini*. *Curr. Genet.* 29: 388-394.
- Moricca, S., Ragazzi, A., and Mitchelson, K.R. 1999.** Molecular and conventional detection and identification of *Cladosporium tenuissimum* on two-needle pine rust aeciospores. *Can. J. Bot.* 77: 339-347.
- Moricca, S., Ragazzi, A., Richard Mitchelson, K., and Assante, G. 2001.** Antagonism of the two-needle pine stem rust fungi *Cronartium flaccidum* and *Peridermium pini* by *Cladosporium tenuissimum* *in vitro* and *in planta*. *Phytopathology* 91: 457-468.
- Murashige, T., and Skoog, F. 1962.** A revised medium for the rapid growth and bioassay with tobacco tissue cultures. *Physiologia Plantarum* 15: 473-497.
- Nasini, G., Arnone, A., Assante, G., Bava, A., Moricca, S., and Ragazzi, A. 2004.** Secondary mould metabolites of *Cladosporium tenuissimum*, a hyperparasite of rust fungi. *Phytochemistry* 65: 2107-2111.
- Pappinen, A., and von Weissenberg, K. 1994.** The ability of the pine-top weevil to carry spores and infect Scots pine with *Endocronartium pini*. *European Journal of Forest Pathology* 24(5): 258-263.
- Raddi, P., and Fagnani, A. 1977.** Relative susceptibility to blister rust caused by *Cronartium flaccidum* of several species of pine. *Eur. J. For. Path.* 8(1): 58-61.

- Raddi, P., and Ragazzi, A. 1980.** Italian studies on resistance to pine blister rust (*Cronartium flaccidum*). Resist. Dis. Pests. for Trees. Pp. 435-440.
- Raddi, P., Mittmpergher, L., and Moriondo, F. 1979.** Testing of *Pinus pinea* and *P. pinaster* progenies for resistance to *Cronartium flaccidum*. Phytopathology 69: 679-681.
- Raddi, P., Mittempergher, L., and Fagnani, A. 1980.** Artificial inoculation of large numbers of pine seedlings with *Cronartium flaccidum*. Phytopath. Medit. 19: 44-50.
- Ragazzi, A. 1983.** Development of *Cronartium flaccidum* (Alb. et Schw.) Wint. on *Vincetoxicum officinale* Moench in connection with some environmental factors. Phytopath. Z. 108: 160-171.
- Ragazzi, A., and Dellavalle Fedi, I. 1982.** Observations under fluorescence on progress of basidiospore germination in *Cronartium flaccidum* (Alb. Et. Schw.) Wint. on the needle surface of certain pine species. Eur. J. For. Pathol. 12(4/5): 246-251.
- Ragazzi, A., and Dellavalle Fedi, I. 1983.** Effect of a fluorescent brightener on the germinative power of basidiospores of *Cronartium flaccidum*. Eur. J. For. Pathol. 13(5/6): 372-376.
- Regazzi, A., and Dellavalle Fedi., I. 1992.** Penetration of *Cronartium flaccidum* into pine needles. Eur. J. For. Path. 22: 278-283.
- Ragazzi, A., and Moriondo, F. 1980.** Results of *Cronartium flaccidum* (Alb. Et Schw. Wint. inoculations on eight-year old plants of *Pinus pinea* (L.) Phytopath. Medit. 19: 51-56.
- Ragazzi, A., Dellavalle Fedi, I., and Mesturino, L. 1986a.** *Cronartium flaccidum* on *Pinus* spp.: relation of inoculum concentration to symptom development. Eur. J. For. Pathol. 16(1): 16-21.
- Ragazzi, A., Dellavalle Fedi, I., and Mesturino, L. 1986b.** *Cronartium flaccidum* (Alb. et. Schw.) Wint. spores: temperature requirements for germination. Phytopath. Medit. 25: 57-60.
- Ragazzi, A., Fagnani, A., and Dellavalle Fedi, I. 1987.** Telial and basidiospore stages of *Cronartium flaccidum*: light and scanning electron microscopy observations. Phytopath. Medit. 26(2): 113-116.
- Ragazzi, A., Dellavalle Fedi, I., and Mesturino, L. 1989.** The effects of some variables on the production of uredinia and telia of *Cronartium flaccidum*. Phytopath. Medit. 28: 43-45.
- Ragazzi, A., Morrica, S., and Dellavalle Fedi, I. 1995.** Growth of axenic cultures of *Cronartium flaccidum* on callus tissue of *Pinus nigra* var. *laricio* and *Pinus sylvestris*. Eur. J. For. Path. 25: 31-37.
- Roll-Hasen, F. 1973.** Resistance of *Paeonia* cultivars to *Cronartium flaccidum* in Norway. Eur. J. For. Pathol. 3(3): 142-145.
- Schenk, R.U., and Hildebrandt, A.C. 1972.** Medium and techniques for induction and growth of monocotyledonous and dicotyledonous plant cell cultures. Can. J. Bot. 50: 199-204.
- Vogler, D.R., and Bruns, T.D. 1998.** Phylogenetic relationships among the pine stem rust fungi (*Cronartium* and *Peridermium* spp.). Mycologia 90(2): 244-257.

# *Leptographium truncatum*

E.M. Albrecht and R.C. Venette

## Scientific Name

*Leptographium truncatum* (Wingf. and Marasas) Wingf.

## Synonyms:

*Leptographium lundbergii* Lagerb. and Melin

*Scopularia lundbergii* (Lagerb. and Melin) Goid.

*Scopularia venusta* Preuss

*Verticicladiella truncata* Wingf. and Marasas

(Kirk 2004, reviewed in Hildebrand 2005, MycoBank 2006)

## Common Names

Blue stain, root disease, vascular wilt

## Type of Pest

Fungal pathogen

## Taxonomic Position

**Kingdom:** Fungi,

**Phylum:** Ascomycota,

**Order:** Ophiostomatales,

**Family:** Ophiostomataceae

## Reason for Inclusion in Manual

Previous CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2008)

## Pest Description

*Leptographium truncatum* (Fig. 54) was originally described as *Verticicladiella truncata* by Wingfield and Marasas (1983), based on samples collected from the roots of dying *Pinus radiata*, *P. strobus*, and *P. taeda* in South Africa and New Zealand. Kaneko and Harrington (1990) later described *L. truncatum* from dying *P. densiflora* and *P. thunbergii* in Japan. Jacobs and Wingfield (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001) described *L. lundbergii* from strains that are now considered to represent *L. truncatum* (Jacobs et al. 2005).

The following descriptions relate to the appearance of *L. truncatum* grown in isolation in a laboratory. Color nomenclature follows Ridgway (1912).

**Colony** "diameter on corn meal agar (CMA) at 24° [75°F], 52 mm [2 in] after 4 days. Growth rate similar at 20° [68°F] and 24° [75°F] but reduced considerably

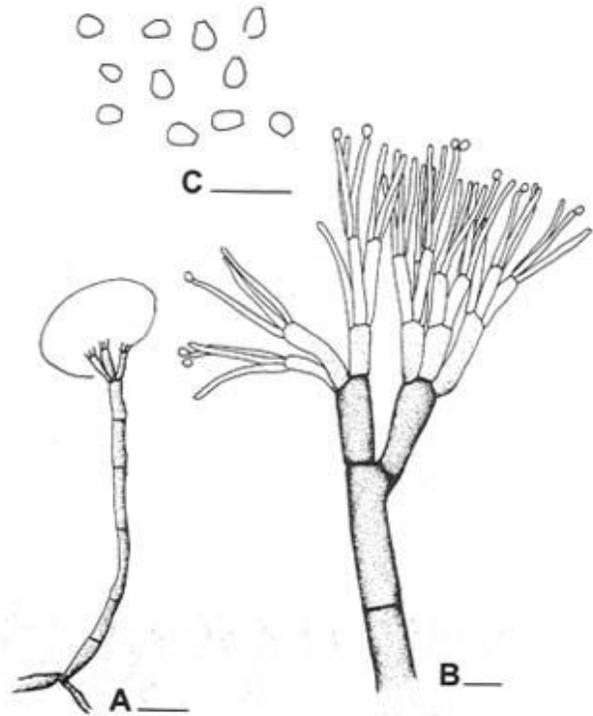


Fig. 54. Conidiophores and conidia of *L. truncatum*. A. Habit sketch (general appearance of conidiophore) (bar=100µm). B. Conidiogenous apparatus (bar=10µm). C. Conidia (bar=10µm).

at lower and higher temperatures. Colonies hyaline at first, becoming dark olivaceous to black. Aerial mycelium absent on CMA but well developed on Difco potato dextrose agar (PDA)” (Wingfield and Marasas 1983).

”Colonies with optimal growth at 25°C [77°F] on 2% MEA, reaching 39 mm [1.5 in] in diam. in 7 days. No growth below 5°C [41°F] or above 35°C [95°F]. Cycloheximide tolerant with a 21% reduction in growth on 0.5 g/l cycloheximide after 8 days at 20°C [68°F] in the dark. Colonies dark mouse gray (15”k). Colony margin smooth” (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001).

Hyphae “immersed, septate, straight, smooth-walled, at first hyaline, becoming rougher with deposits and dark olivaceous, 1.8-3.7 µm diam with short branches often branching repeatedly, sometimes appearing knob-like” (Wingfield and Marasas 1983).

“Hyphae submerged in agar with very little aerial mycelium except on the edges of the colony, greenish olivaceous (23”) to olivaceous (21”m), smooth, straight, occasionally constricted at the septa, (3-)4-8(-14) µm wide” (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001).



Fig. 55. Light micrograph of conidiophores and conidia of *L. truncatum*. Conidiophore (bar=50µm). Image from Jacobs and Wingfield (2001).

Conidiophores (Fig. 54A, 55) “produced abundantly over the entire colony in cultures incubated at 20° in the dark for 10 days on CMA. One to several celled short rhizoids arise from the basal cells of the stipe and from the hyphal cells giving rise to the conidiophores” (Wingfield and Marasas 1983).

“Conidiophores occurring singly or in groups of up to six, arising directly from the mycelium, erect, macronematous, mononematous, (90-)246-409(-685) µm in length” (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001).

Stipe “erect, variable in length, 25.0-447.2 µm, with 1-11 septa and hyaline to dark olivaceous in colour. Base of stipe 3.6-12.7 µm wide and apex slightly swollen, 3.6-10.9 µm with attachment points for primary metulae well-developed, commonly branched, with branches varying from a single primary metula to well-developed side apparatus” (Wingfield and Marasas 1983).

“Stipes light olivaceous (21”k), not

constricted, cylindrical, simple, 1-16-septate, (35-)214-306(-635)  $\mu\text{m}$  long, 2-5  $\mu\text{m}$  wide below primary branches, apical cell not swollen, 2-5 (-6)  $\mu\text{m}$  wide at base, basal cell occasionally swollen" (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001).

Conidiogenous apparatus (Fig. 54B) "18.2-103.7  $\mu\text{m}$  long, excluding the conidial mass and comprising 2-4 primary metulae 2.7-9.1  $\mu\text{m}$  wide and 10.2-28.0  $\mu\text{m}$  long. Two to four additional series occur above the primary metulae, each giving rise to 1-3 further metulae at the apex or from the side walls. Primary metulae paler in colour than the stipe, subsequent metulae hyaline" (Wingfield and Marasas 1983).

"Conidiogenous apparatus (35-)42-85(-150)  $\mu\text{m}$  long, excluding the conidial mass, with 2 to 3 series of cylindrical branches. Primary branches, 2-3, light olivaceous (21"K), smooth, cylindrical, 0-2-septate, 11-41(-57)  $\mu\text{m}$  long and 4-9(-11)  $\mu\text{m}$  wide, arrangement of the primary branches on the stipe-type B (more than two branches), secondary branches hyaline to light olivaceous (21"K), 0-1-septate, 8-30(-39)  $\mu\text{m}$  long, 3-7 (-9)  $\mu\text{m}$  wide, tertiary branches hyaline to light olivaceous (21"K), aseptate, (8-)14-17(-22)  $\mu\text{m}$  long, (3-)4-6(-8)  $\mu\text{m}$  wide" (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001).

Conidiogenous cells "discrete, hyaline, tapering from base to apex but widest at their centre, 7.3-50.0  $\mu\text{m}$  long, 1.8-4.1  $\mu\text{m}$  wide, appearing to elongate considerably in the apical region, distinctly roughened possibly to abscission scars which resemble annellations when viewed with the [scanning electron microscope] SEM" (Wingfield and Marasas 1983).

"Conidiogenous cells discrete, 2-3 per branch, cylindrical, tapering slightly at the apex, (11-)16-25(-37)  $\mu\text{m}$  long and 1-3  $\mu\text{m}$  wide" (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001).

Conidia (Fig. 54C, 55) "hyaline, smooth, one-celled and pyriform to subglobose or clavate with broadly truncate bases. Under the SEM appearing hat-shaped due to a wide point of attachment at the base, ranging from 2.7-10.9  $\mu\text{m}$  x 1.8-4.6  $\mu\text{m}$  and often budding to produce secondary conidia. Conidia accumulate around the sporogenous apparatus in a hyaline mucilaginous mass, becoming yellow with age. Groups of conidiophores may form on aerial hyphae on PDA and primary metulae sometimes elongate, giving rise to an additional stipe and conidiogenous apparatus" (Wingfield and Marasas 1983).

"Conidia hyaline, aseptate, broadly ellipsoid with truncate bases and rounded apices, 3-5 x 2-4  $\mu\text{m}$ . Conidial droplet hyaline at first, becoming cream-coloured (19'f) with age" (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001).

### Biology and Ecology

*Leptographium truncatum* is a weakly pathogenic sapstain fungus associated with root disease of pine (Wingfield and Marasas 1983, Kaneko and Harrington 1990, Wingfield and Gibbs 1991, Zambino and Harrington 1992, Zhou et al.

2002, Eckhardt et al. 2004). It is considered a secondary pathogen and is introduced by the scolytids *Hylastes angustatus*, *Hylastes ater*, *Hylastes opacus*, *Hylurgops palliatus*, *Hylurgus ligniperda*, and *Tomicus piniperda* to trees that are already dead or dying (Wingfield and Marasas 1983, Harrington 1988, Wingfield and Gibbs 1991, Anon. 2000, Wingfield et al. 2001, Zhou et al. 2002, Hausner et al. 2005, Reay et al. 2005). *L. truncatum* is also associated with the nematode *Bursaphelenchus xylophilus*, which causes pine wilt disease in *Pinus densiflora* and *P. thunbergii* (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001). However, the exact role of *Leptographium* spp. in tree decline and death is not well understood. A combination of abiotic and biotic factors may contribute to the demise of a tree infected with *Leptographium* spp. Eckhardt et al. (2004) suggest fungi are introduced into the root system by rhizophagous insects. The lesions grow, further stressing the tree. Other scolytids are attracted to volatiles released by the stressed tree and may introduce other fungi during subsequent attacks.

### Pest Importance

*L. truncatum* is a weak pathogen with a preference for highly stressed, wounded, or dying trees (Harrington 1988, Kaneko and Harrington 1990, USDA 1992, Wingfield et al. 2001). In an inoculation study by Zhou et al. (2002), seedlings of *Pinus elliotii*, *P. radiata*, and *P. elliotii* x *P. caribaea* developed cambial lesions an average of 29.3 mm [1.15 in] in length [range, 15.4-37.2 mm] after 6 wk. However, the seedlings were not killed outright nor did they exhibit any dieback (Zhou et al. 2002). Eckhardt et al. (2004) report similar findings on *P. taeda*, which developed lesions an average of 34.1 mm [1.34 in] in length 4 mo after inoculation with *L. truncatum*. Wingfield and Marasas (1983) found roots of *P. elliotii* “developed lesions up to 8 cm [~3 in] on either side of the inoculation point after 5 mo.” Kaneko and Harrington (1990) inoculated three-year-old *P. densiflora* with *L. truncatum* and exposed them to two levels of light intensity (200 lux and 20000 lux). Four inoculated seedlings under low-light conditions died 2 mo after *L. truncatum* was introduced, with 4 more showing mild symptoms of infection. All other inoculated and healthy seedlings remained healthy (Kaneko and Harrington 1990). Zhou et al. (2002) note that *L. truncatum* was not “pathogenic to living healthy trees” and “should not be considered [a] serious pathogen of above ground parts of [*Pinus* spp.] in South Africa.”

In temperate areas, sapstain fungi generally do not alter the structural properties of wood. However, other fungi may grow alongside them, leading to decay and loss of strength (Seifert 1993, Uzunovic et al. 1999, Bruce et al. 2003, Byrne et al. 2005).

Risks associated with *L. truncatum* in North American forests has been evaluated previously (USDA 1992, Hildebrand 2005). Hildebrand (2005) considered the fungus to pose a very high risk, but this assessment was very uncertain. The potential for establishment, spread, and economic damage were all rated high. The virulence of *L. truncatum* on potential North American hosts is unknown, but even as a weak pathogen it may contribute to the decline of stressed and

damaged trees. Accordingly, the potential for environmental damage in North America is low (Hildebrand 2005). A USDA Forest Service evaluation of the risks associated with importation of *P. radiata* from New Zealand identified the primary economic threat as the removal of dead *P. radiata*, at a 30-yr cost ranging from 7 million to 69 million U.S. dollars (USDA 1992). Wood discolored by sapstain may cause economic losses as well, as the stained wood is unsightly and may be rejected by customers (Uzunovic et al. 1999, Byrne et al. 2005). *Pinus* spp. are especially susceptible to staining (Uzunovic and Webber 1998).

### Symptoms

The progression of disease caused by *L. truncatum* is poorly known. Hildebrand (2005) suggests *L. truncatum* root disease may follow a course similar to *L. procerum*, which causes root decline of white pine, *Pinus strobus* (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001). Wingfield (1986) lists the symptoms of white pine root decline as “decreased shoot growth, delayed bud break, needle wilt, exudation of resin from the root collar, and resin soaking of affected wood.” Externally, trees infected with *L. truncatum* may exhibit these and other symptoms of decline, including chlorosis, thinning of crowns, dieback, and browning and retention of needles (Alexander et al. 1988, reviewed in Hildebrand 2005). Internally, lesions develop on the roots and root collar and conidiophores may be visible between sapwood and bark. *L. truncatum* also produces a dark blue to brownish, wedge-shaped stain (“sapstain” or “bluestain”) of the sapwood. Sapstain, a blue, grey, or black discoloration of sapwood, is caused by pigmented hyphae that penetrate the ray parenchyma, resin ducts, and cell lumens of affected wood (Fig. 56; Seifert 1993, Uzunovic et al. 1999, Jacobs and Wingfield 2001, Bruce et al. 2003).



Fig. 56. Cross-section of *Pinus taeda* with wedge-shaped bluestain caused by *Ophiostoma ips*. *Leptographium truncatum* has a similar effect. Image from R.F. Billings, <http://www.bugwood.org>

### Known Hosts

*Leptographium truncatum* is known mainly from *Pinus* spp. Reports from *Larix* spp., *Picea* spp., and *Pseudotsuga* sp. may be a result of confusion with *Leptographium lundbergii*.

| Host  | Reference                   |
|---|-----------------------------|
| <i>Larix</i> spp. (larch)   | (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001) |
| <i>Larix leptolepis</i> (= <i>L. kaempferi</i> ) (Japanese larch) | (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001) |
| <i>Picea</i> spp. (spruce)  | (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001) |
| <i>Picea abies</i> (Norway spruce)                                | (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001) |

| <b>Host</b>                                   | <b>Reference</b>   |
|---|--|
| <i>Pinus</i> spp. (pine)                      | (Wingfield and Gibbs 1991, Jacobs and Wingfield 2001, Zhou et al. 2002)  |
| <i>Pinus densiflora</i> (Japanese red pine)   | (Kaneko and Harrington 1990, Strydom et al. 1997, Jacobs and Wingfield 2001, reviewed in Hildebrand 2005, reviewed in Farr et al. 2006)  |
| <i>Pinus elliotii</i> (slash pine)            | (Wingfield and Marasas 1983, Zhou et al. 2002)   |
| <i>Pinus elliotii</i> x <i>P. caribaea</i>    | (Zhou et al. 2002)   |
| <i>Pinus patula</i> (Mexican weeping pine)    | (Zhou et al. 2002, reviewed in Farr et al. 2006)   |
| <i>Pinus pinaster</i> (maritime pine)         | (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001)  |
| <i>Pinus ponderosa</i> (ponderosa pine)       | (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001)  |
| <i>Pinus radiata</i> (Monterey pine)          | (Wingfield and Marasas 1983, USDA 1992, Strydom et al. 1997, Jacobs and Wingfield 2001, Zhou et al. 2002, reviewed in Hildebrand 2005, Reay et al. 2005, Thwaites et al. 2005)               |
| <i>Pinus resinosa</i> (red pine)              | (Harrington 1988, USDA 1992, Zambino and Harrington 1992, Strydom et al. 1997, reviewed in Hildebrand 2005, reviewed in Farr et al. 2006)  |
| <i>Pinus strobus</i> (Eastern white pine)     | (Wingfield and Marasas 1983, USDA 1992, Zambino and Harrington 1992, Jacobs and Wingfield 2001, reviewed in Hildebrand 2005, Jacobs et al. 2005, reviewed in Farr et al. 2006)               |
| <i>Pinus sylvestris</i> (Scots pine)          | (Zambino and Harrington 1992, Jacobs and Wingfield 2001, reviewed in Hildebrand 2005, reviewed in Farr et al. 2006)  |
| <i>Pinus taeda</i> (loblolly pine)            | (Wingfield and Marasas 1983, USDA 1992, Strydom et al. 1997, Jacobs and Wingfield 2001, Eckhardt et al. 2004, reviewed in Hildebrand 2005, Jacobs et al. 2005, reviewed in Farr et al. 2006) |
| <i>Pinus thunbergii</i> (Japanese black pine) | (Kaneko and Harrington 1990, Strydom et al. 1997, Jacobs and Wingfield 2001)   |
| <i>Pseudotsuga</i> spp. (Douglas-fir)         | (USDA 1992)  |

### Known Vectors

*Leptographium truncatum* is introduced by associated scolytids (*Hylastes angustatus*, *Hylastes ater*, *Hylastes opacus*, *Hylurgops palliatus*, *Hylurgus ligniperda*, and *Tomicus piniperda*) attacking dead or dying host trees (Wingfield and Marasas 1983, Harrington 1988, Kaneko and Harrington 1990, Wingfield and Gibbs 1991, Anon. 2000, Wingfield et al. 2001, Zambino and Harrington 1992, Zhou et al. 2002, Eckhardt et al. 2004, Hausner et al. 2005, Reay et al. 2005). *L. truncatum* is also associated with the nematode *Bursaphelenchus xylophilus*, which causes pine wilt disease in *Pinus densiflora* and *P. thunbergii* (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001).

### Known Distribution

*Leptographium truncatum* was originally isolated from diseased roots of pines in New Zealand and South Africa (Wingfield and Marasas 1983). It has since been found on *P. densiflora* and *P. thunbergii* in Japan (Kaneko and Harrington 1990) and on *P. taeda* in the southern United States (Eckhardt et al. 2004). *L. truncatum* may also be present in California (T.C. Harrington, pers. comm.).

| Location           | Reference  |
|--------------------|--|
| <b>Africa</b>      |  |
| South Africa       | (Wingfield and Marasas 1983, Harrington 1988, Wingfield and Gibbs 1991, USDA 1992, Strydom et al. 1997, Jacobs and Wingfield 2001, Zhou et al. 2002, reviewed in Hildebrand 2005, Jacobs et al. 2005, reviewed in Farr et al. 2006)  |
| <b>Australasia</b> |  |
| New Zealand        | (Wingfield and Marasas 1983, Harrington 1988, Wingfield and Gibbs 1991, USDA 1992, Zambino and Harrington 1992, Strydom et al. 1997, Anon. 2000, Jacobs and Wingfield 2001, reviewed in Hildebrand 2005, Jacobs et al. 2005, Reay et al. 2005, Thwaites et al. 2005, reviewed in Farr et al. 2006) |
| <b>Asia</b>        |  |
| Japan              | (Kaneko and Harrington 1990, Strydom et al. 1997, Jacobs and Wingfield 2001, reviewed in Hildebrand 2005, Jacobs et al. 2005, reviewed in Farr et al. 2006)  |

| Location             | Reference  |
|----------------------|--|
| <b>Europe</b>        |  |
| England <sup>1</sup> | (reviewed in Hildebrand 2005, reviewed in Farr et al. 2006)  |
| <b>North America</b> |  |
| Canada               | (Harrington 1988, USDA 1992, Zambino and Harrington 1992, Strydom et al. 1997, Anon. 2000, Hausner et al. 2005, reviewed in Hildebrand 2005, reviewed in Farr et al. 2006) |
| United States        |  |
| AL <sup>2</sup>      | (Eckhardt et al. 2004)   |
| CA                   | (T.C. Harrington, pers. comm.)   |
| MI                   | (reviewed in Hildebrand 2005)  |

1. Possible taxonomic confusion with *L. lundbergii*.
2. Reported in Eckhardt et al. (2004) as *L. lundbergii*, though molecular data from Jacobs et al. (2005) suggest the isolate in question is actually *L. truncatum*.

### Potential Distribution within the United States

The known distribution of *L. truncatum* suggests that the pathogen may be most closely associated with two biomes, both of which occur in the United States: (1) Mediterranean scrub; and (2) temperate broadleaf and mixed forests. Collectively, these biomes account for approximately 29% of the area of the contiguous United States. These biomes are generally found in the eastern United States and portions of California.

A recent host analysis by USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST, illustrates the abundance of host material in the southeast as well as portions of the western United States.

### Survey

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

A CAPS-approved method for this species has not been evaluated at this time.

#### **Literature-Based Methods:**

**Visual inspection:** Visual surveys for *L. truncatum* likely will be difficult, as outward signs of infection may not be readily apparent. Trees may exhibit symptoms of decline, including chlorosis, wilting and browning of needles, thinning of crowns, delayed bud break, and resin exudation (Wingfield 1986, Alexander et al. 1988, Jacobs and Wingfield 2001, reviewed in Hildebrand 2005). The most conspicuous evidence of *L. truncatum* is the presence of a dark blue to brownish, wedge-shaped stain of the sapwood. *L. truncatum* conidiophores may be present between bark and sapwood, in galleries created by bark beetles, or in diseased roots (Seifert 1993).

**Alternative Method:** *L. truncatum* can also be isolated from its beetle vectors. The beetles are washed for 5 min in a solution of 1% sodium hypochlorite and polysorbate 80 (Tween 80), crushed, and placed on CSMA. Another method involves grinding the beetles in sterile distilled water and plating the diluted sample on CSMA (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001). Wingfield and Marasas (1983) and Jacobs and Wingfield (2001) have recorded optimal growth of cultures between 20-25°C [68-77°F], with no growth between <5°C [41°F] and >35°C [95°F].

### Key Diagnostics

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

A CAPS-approved method for this species has not been evaluated at this time.

#### **Literature-Based Methods:**

To confirm the presence of *L. truncatum*, samples of diseased host tissue are placed on cycloheximide-streptomycin-malt-agar (CSMA). After conidiophores develop, a sterile needle is used to transfer conidia to 1-2% malt extract agar (MEA) or water agar (WA). Potato dextrose agar (PDA) is not recommended. Alternately, hyphal tips can be cut and transferred to other media (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001). Final diagnosis is made based on morphological features. DNA sequences may be used to support a final diagnosis (Jacobs et al. 2005).

### Easily Confused Pests

Significant confusion exists between *Leptographium truncatum* and *L. lundbergii*. Taxonomists have treated the two as synonyms because of their morphological similarity and have suggested *L. truncatum* as a synonym for *L. lundbergii*, the type species of the genus (Wingfield and Gibbs 1991, Strydom et al. 1997). Despite their similar appearance, *L. truncatum* is not synonymous with *L. lundbergii*. Jacobs et al. (2005) compared DNA sequences from several strains of *L. lundbergii* and *L. truncatum* and found them to be discrete species. The most significant morphological characters separating the two species are conidiophore length and conidia shape (Jacobs et al. 2005). *L. truncatum* has longer conidiophores and smaller, rounder conidia than *L. lundbergii* (Jacobs et al. 2005). Zambino and Harrington (1992) and Jacobs et al. (2005) also recognize differences in hyphae, with those of *L. lundbergii* being convoluted and those of *L. truncatum* being straight or slightly curved. *L. truncatum* also resembles *L. pyrinum* and *L. yunnanensis*, but has more structured conidiophores and no granular material around the hyphae (Jacobs and Wingfield 2001).

### References

**Alexander, S. A., W. E. Horner, and K. J. Lewis. 1988.** *Leptographium procerum* as a pathogen of pines, pp. 97-112. In T. C. Harrington and F. W. Cobb, Jr. [eds.], *Leptographium Root Diseases on Conifers*. APS Press, St. Paul.

- Anon. 2000.** New Introduction: The red-haired pine beetle, *Hylurgus ligniperda* (Fabricius) (Coleoptera: Scolytidae), Pest Alert, NA-PR-03-02, pp. 2. USDA Forest Service, Northeastern Area, Morgantown, WV.
- Bruce, A., D. Stewart, S. Verrall, and R. E. Wheatley. 2003.** Effect of volatiles from bacteria and yeast on the growth and pigmentation of sapstain fungi. *International Biodeterioration and Biodegradation* 51: 101-108.
- Byrne, T., K. L. Woo, A. Uzunovic, and P. A. Watson. 2005.** An annotated bibliography on the effect of bluestain on wood utilization with emphasis on mountain pine beetle-vectored bluestain. Pulp and Paper Research Institute of Canada, Vancouver.
- Eckhardt, J. G., J. P. Jones, and K. D. Klepzig. 2004.** Pathogenicity of *Leptographium* species associated with loblolly pine decline. *Plant Disease* 88: 1174-1178.
- Farr, D. F., A. Y. Rossman, M. E. Palm, and E. B. McCray. 2006.** Systematic Botany and Mycology: Fungal Databases. Systematic Botany & Mycology Laboratory, ARS, USDA. Available on-line at: <http://nt.ars-grin.gov/fungaldatabases/>. Accessed 29 March 2007.
- Harrington, T. C. 1988.** *Leptographium* species, their distributions, hosts and insect vectors, pp. 1-39. In T. C. Harrington and F. W. Cobb, Jr. [eds.], *Leptographium Root Diseases on Conifers*. APS Press, St. Paul.
- Hausner, G., M. Iranpour, J. J. Kim, C. Breuil, C. N. Davis, E. A. Gibb, J. Reid, P. C. Loewen, and A. A. Hopkin. 2005.** Fungi vectored by the introduced bark beetle *Tomicus piniperda* in Ontario, Canada, and comments on the taxonomy of *Leptographium lundbergii*, *Leptographium terebrantis*, *Leptographium truncatum*, and *Leptographium wingfieldii*. *Canadian Journal of Botany* 83: 1222-1237.
- Hildebrand, D. M. 2005.** EXFOR Database Pest Report: *Leptographium truncatum*. USDA Forest Service. Available on-line at: <http://spfnic.fs.fed.us/exfor/data/pestreports.cfm?pestidval=22&langdisplay=english>. Accessed 14 March 2007.
- Jacobs, K., and M. J. Wingfield. 2001.** *Leptographium* species: tree pathogens, insect associates and agents of blue-stain. APS Press, St. Paul.
- Jacobs, K., H. Solheim, B. D. Wingfield, and M. J. Wingfield. 2005.** Taxonomic re-evaluation of *Leptographium lundbergii* based on DNA sequence comparisons and morphology. *Mycological Research* 109: 1149-1161.
- Kaneko, S., and T. C. Harrington. 1990.** *Leptographium truncatum* isolated from Japanese red and black pines. *Reports of the Tottori Mycological Institute* 28: 171-174.
- Kirk, P. 2004.** *Leptographium lundbergii* Lagerb. & Melin. Index Fungorum. Available on-line at: <http://www.indexfungorum.org/>. Accessed 24 March 2007.
- MycoBank. 2006.** MycoBank Fungal nomenclature website. Available on-line at: <http://www.mycobank.org>. Accessed 24 March 2007.

- Reay, S. D., J. M. Thwaites, and R. L. Farrell. 2005.** A survey of *Ophiostoma* species vectored by *Hylastes ater* to pine seedlings in New Zealand. *Forest Pathology* 35: 105-113.
- Ridgway, R. 1912.** Color Standards and Color Nomenclature, Washington, D.C.
- Seifert, K. A. 1993.** Sapstain of commercial lumber by species of *Ophiostoma* and *Ceratocystis*, pp. 141-151. In M. J. Wingfield, K. A. Seifert and J. F. Webber [eds.], *Ceratocystis* and *Ophiostoma*: Taxonomy, Ecology, and Pathogenicity. APS Press, St. Paul.
- Strydom, R. C., B. D. Wingfield, and M. J. Wingfield. 1997.** Ribosomal DNA sequence comparison of *Leptographium lundbergii* and *L. truncatum* and neotypification of *L. lundbergii*. *Systematic and Applied Microbiology* 20: 295-300.
- Thwaites, J. M., R. L. Farrell, S. M. Duncan, S. D. Reay, R. A. Blanchette, E. Hadar, Y. Hadar, T. C. Harrington, and D. McNew. 2005.** Survey of potential sapstain fungi on *Pinus radiata* in New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Botany* 43: 653-663.
- USDA. 1992.** Pest risk assessment of the importation of *Pinus radiata* and Douglas-fir logs from New Zealand. USDA Forest Service. Miscellaneous Publication No. 1508.
- Uzunovic, A., and J. F. Webber. 1998.** Comparison of bluestain fungi grown *in vitro* and in freshly cut pine billets. *European Journal of Forest Pathology* 28: 323-334.
- Uzunovic, A., D. Q. Yang, P. Gagné, C. Breuil, L. Bernier, A. Byrne, M. Gignac, and S. H. Kim. 1999.** Fungi that cause sapstain in Canadian softwoods. *Canadian Journal of Microbiology* 45: 914-922.
- Wingfield, M. J. 1986.** Pathogenicity of *Leptographium procerum* and *L. terebrantis* on *Pinus strobus* seedlings and established trees. *European Journal of Forest Pathology* 16: 299-308.
- Wingfield, M. J., and W. F. O. Marasas. 1983.** Some *Verticicladiella* species, including *V. truncata* sp. nov., associated with root diseases of pine in New Zealand and South Africa. *Transactions of the British Mycological Society* 80: 231-236.
- Wingfield, M. J., and J. N. Gibbs. 1991.** *Leptographium* and *Graphium* spp. associated with pine-infesting bark beetles in England. *Mycological Research* 95: 1257-1260.
- Wingfield, M. J., B. Slippers, X. D. Zhou, W. de Beer, P. Govender, and B. D. Wingfield. 2001.** Global spread of insect-associated fungi on exotic plantation pines. In R. Alfaro, K. Day, S. Salom, K. S. S. Nair, H. Evans, A. Liebhold, F. Lieutier, M. Wagner, K. Futai and K. Suzuki [eds.], *Protection of World Forests from Insect Pests: Advances in Research*, Malaysia.
- Zambino, P. J., and T. C. Harrington. 1992.** Correspondence of isozyme characterization with morphology in the asexual genus *Leptographium* and taxonomic implications. *Mycologica* 84: 12-25.
- Zhou, X. D., W. De Beer, B. D. Wingfield, and M. J. Wingfield. 2002.** Infection sequence and pathogenicity of *Ophiostoma ips*, *Leptographium serpens* and *L. lundbergii* to pines in South Africa. *Fungal Diversity* 10: 229-240.

*Leptographium truncatum*  
Blue stain

Fungal

Diseases

## *Mycosphaerella gibsonii*

M. J. Sullivan

### Scientific Name

*Mycosphaerella gibsonii* H. Evans (Teleomorph)  
*Cercoseptoria pini-densiflorae* Deighton (Anamorph)  
*Asteromella* spp. (spermatial anamorph)

### Synonyms:

*Cercospora pini-densiflorae*, *Pseudocercospora pini-densiflorae*

### Common Names

Needle blight of pine, brown needle blight of pine, brown needle disease, *Cercospora* blight of pine, *Cercospora* needle blight

### Type of Pest

Fungal

### Taxonomic Position

**Class:** Ascomycetes, **Order:** Mycosphaerellales, **Family:** Mycosphaerellaceae

### Reason for Inclusion in Manual

CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2013)

### Pest Description

Needle blight of pine (Fig. 58) was first recorded in Japan in 1913 and subsequently in neighboring countries. Since 1960, it has been reported from many other countries in Asia and Africa and from indigenous forests in Central America. It is thought to be indigenous to pine forests in eastern Asia and Central America (Ivory, 1987).

A detailed description of *Mycosphaerella gibsonii* and its anamorphs is provided by Evans (1984). The description is quoted for technical accuracy:

**Ascomata:** Ascstromata variable, dark brown to black, innate, discrete, subepidermal, uniloculate, globose, (50-) 70-90 (-120) µm diam, to erumpent, linear, multiloculate, 150-800 (-1400) µm in length, 70-125 (-160) µm wide and 90-150 µm deep, occasionally uniting laterally in bands; stroma of pseudoparenchymatous, thick-walled cells, 3-8 (-12) µm diam.



Fig. 58. Needle blight of two-year old *Pinus thunbergii* caused by *Mycosphaerella gibsonii* in Japan. Photo courtesy of H. Hashimoto. [www.bugwood.org](http://www.bugwood.org)

Locules globose to flask-shaped, (45-) 50-75 (-95) x 55-75 µm, ostiolate, periphysate, often with an apical stromatic shield, 70-90 µm diam, in longitudinal series. Asci bitunicate, clavate to cylindrical, (33-) 35-38 x 5.5-7 µm, with a thickened, bluntly rounded apex, rarely saccate, 32-36 x 6-8 µm, 8-spored, obliquely biseriolate. Interthecial tissue present or absent. Ascostromatal morphology is highly variable and probably governed by both host and climate.

Ascospores: hyaline, 1-septate, ellipsoidal to cuneate, (7.5-) 8.5-11(-12.5) x (1.8) 2.2-2.8 µm, guttulate.

Conidiophores: Conidiomata stromatic, silvery-grey to dark green or black, substomatic and emerging through the stomata, or initiating from an extensive, deep-seated stroma, composed of dark, thick-walled pseudoparenchyma which ruptures the epidermis with a median or two longitudinal slits. Conidiogenous cells developing directly on this stroma in a dense fascicle or from a well-defined sporodochium up to 150 µm diam and 60 µm in height; subhyaline to green or pinkish brown, clavate to cylindrical, 20-30 x 2.5-3.5 µm, producing grey-green conidial tufts, polyblastically, sympodially.

Conidia: Conidia hyaline at first, then grey-green-pale brown, smooth, thin-walled, cylindrical, (12-) 20-60 (-80) x 2-4 µm, 1-6 (-10) septate, rounded to pointed at apex with a truncate base. Conidiogenesis holoblastic, initially solitary, becoming polyblastic, sympodial. Faint annellations infrequently present on old conidiogenous cells from the host and in culture indicating that percurrent development also occurs. Conidia appear to be produced in dry fascicles but a faint mucilaginous covering is sometimes evident.

Cultures: Colonies grey to greyish-green or black, attaining 1.8-2.2 cm after 15 days on PCA-UV at 25°C; low, compact, grey mycelium becoming pulvinate in centre, black reverse. Most isolates non-sporulating but IMI 281637 formed either lilac-grey mycelial segregants with ill-defined conidiophores or compact, green, sporodochial-like aggregations bearing olivaceous, narrow cylindrical conidia, 3-10 septate, (32-) 40-65 (-90) x 1.8-2.5 µm. On PCA seeded with sterile pine needles, this isolate and IMI 250111 become strongly stromatic producing rows of spermatogonial stromata on the needle surface, 140-180 x 70-100 µm.

Spermatogonia: Discrete, unilocular stromata, or as locules in upper parts of large stromata, referred to as *Asteromella* spp. (Ivory, 1987). They consist of a thin dark-brown wall enclosing white contents. The spermatia form on conidiogenous cells lining the walls lining the inner wall of the locules, are hyaline, rod-shaped, and 2-3 x 1 µm. They often become exuded in tiny hyaline droplets (CABI, 2007). Spermatia are more commonly produced with Asian isolates than African isolates.

Nambu's (1917) original species description of *Cercospora pini-densiflorae* was translated into English by Ito (1972): 'Conidiophores in fascicle arising from the

stomatal openings, dark brown, 44 x 4.4 µm. Conidia filiform or long-clavate, slightly curved or straight, light yellow, 4-6 septate, 41.49-50.7 x 1.23-4.6 µm'. Ito (1972) revised the description as follows: stomata dark brown, tuberculated, filled with stomatal openings 60-96 µm in diameter. Conidiophores dense fascicle, straight or slightly curved, olivaceous brown, rarely septate, not branched, usually attenuated toward the apex, 11-36 x 2.5-4 µm. Conidia obclavate to obclavate-cylindric, straight or curved, rounded to obconically truncate base, obtuse tip, 3-7 septate (mostly 4-5 septate), light olivaceous 28-64 x 2.2-2.7 µm.

### Biology and Ecology

The disease spreads to new areas on infected nursery stock (Diekman et al., 2002). Hyphae overwinter in affected needles, or sometimes, as latent infections in sound needles (if needles are infected late in the year). The latent infections give rise to symptoms in the spring of the following year. The fungus can remain viable for many months in dry infected foliage and subsequently produce large numbers of conidia when wetted (Ivory, 1987).

Conidia are liberated and dispersed aerially by rain splash during wet weather or by overhead irrigation and require two or three days of moist humid conditions for dispersal and infection (Ivory and Wingfield, 1986; Ivory, 1987). Sujan Singh et al. (1988) showed that the spread of disease in India under field conditions was directly correlated with high rainfall. Conidia are easily dispersed within and between neighboring plants when they are closely-spaced in nursery beds. Dispersal is less efficient between trees in plantations (Ivory, 1987). Conidia remain viable for approximately one month, but under moist conditions will germinate on needle surfaces within 24-40 hours and penetrate via stomata within a further two or three days. Conidia germinate between 10 and 35°C (50 and 95°F), with 25°C (77°F) being optimal. A period of approximately three to seven days can suffice for the production of spores, their dispersal, and needle infection to occur (Ivory, 1987).

Although symptoms may appear within two weeks on highly susceptible species, they usually appear after about five weeks (Ivory and Wingfield, 1986). The production of fungal stomata and the formation of conidia then occurs soon afterwards. In response to unknown stimuli, however, one of the two other spore forms can be formed, in addition to, or instead of conidia. The spermatia probably effect fertilization and the subsequent development of the teleomorph (Ivory, 1987). Ascospores are sometimes produced in stomata, but the role of ascospores in development of epidemics is unknown (Diekman et al., 2002). In culture, the fungus grows slowly to produce dark, compact, olive-grey colonies, which if exposed to black light produce conidia.

Isolates from Asia differ distinctly from African and Jamaican isolates. A third type, which has similarities with cultures of *Mycosphaerella dearnessii*, was found on *Pinus caribaea* in the Philippines (Ivory, 1994). Due to the differences in

conidial morphology, Ivory (1994) suggested that there are probably three ecotypes (Asia, Africa-Central America, and Philippines).

The fungus produces large amounts of abscisic acid that may be partly responsible for the premature leaf loss in the host (Okamoto et al., 1988).

Soil and tissue nutrient levels may affect the incidence of pathogen infection, but the patterns are variable. Ito (1972) reports a slight increase in infection in two-year old seedlings of *Pinus thunbergii* that have been deprived of nitrogen, phosphorus, and potassium for four weeks. Dela Cruz et al. (1984), however, report a negative correlation between percent needle blight and nitrogen and phosphorus tissue concentration in four-year old *Pinus kesiya*.

### Pest Importance

*Mycosphaerella gibsonii* causes a serious needle blight of both exotic and native pines, particularly at the later nursery stage. This disease has become a major obstacle to production of pine seedlings (especially *P. pinaster*, *P. thunbergii*, and *P. densiflora*) in Japan and Taiwan. Under epidemic conditions, approximately 100% of seedlings are infected with 50-80% mortality (Ito, 1972). Severe defoliation in young plantations of *P. radiata* occurs in Tanzania, resulting in reduced growth and sometimes even death of trees. The disease is important on *P. merkusii* and *P. caribaea* nurseries in West Malaysia (CABI, 2007).

Since seedlings and saplings are the most severely affected by *M. gibsonii*, this pathogen may impeded recruitment of pines and alter the course of forest succession. The pathogen may also interfere with reforestation efforts.

### Symptoms

The pathogen causes brown-needle disease. The pathogen targets older leaves in young saplings (1-2 yrs. old), forming lesions on the needles (Fig. 59). The infection starts as light yellow-green bands (5-10 mm long) around the needles and spreads from the lower crown to the tips of branches. The lesions fade to yellow then brown then to a gray-brown color. Needles DO NOT exhibit the reddish tint that is characteristic of other diseases.



Fig. 59. Symptoms of *M. gibsonii* on one-year old *Pinus thunbergii*. Photo courtesy of EPPO.

Fruiting bodies of *M. gibsonii* form and look like dirty areas on the lesions (Fig. 59).

The stroma of the fungus erupts through stomata, and under humid conditions dark olive brush-like tufts of elongate conidia develop on the stromata.

This pathogen causes severe defoliation, leading to stunted growth, and sometimes plant death. Dead foliage usually remains on the tree for many months but can be shed during high wind or heavy rain (Ivory and Wingfield, 1986).

### Known Hosts

*Mycosphaerella gibsonii* affects many types of pine. It usually affects older seedlings in tree nurseries with most plants developing mature plant ('effective') resistance by two-three years of age (Ivory, 1994). It should be noted, however, that there are examples where the pathogen has harmed mature trees of highly susceptible species, including *P. roxburghii*, *P. radiata*, *P. canariensis*, and *P. pinaster* (Ivory and Wingfield, 1986; Ivory, 1994).

### Major Hosts

*Pinus aristata* (Rocky Mountain bristle cone pine), *Pinus armandii* (Chinese white pine), *Pinus attenuata* (knobcone pine), *Pinus ayacahuite* (Mexican white pine), *Pinus canariensis* (Canary Island pine), *Pinus caribaea* (Caribbean pine), *Pinus cembra* (swiss or arolla pine), *Pinus clausa* (Alabama pine), *Pinus contorta* (lodgepole pine), *Pinus densiflora* (Japanese red pine), *Pinus echinata* (shortleaf pine), *Pinus eliottii* (slash pine), *Pinus flexilis* (limber pine), *Pinus greggii* (Gregg's pine), *Pinus halepensis* (aleppo pine), *Pinus hartwegii* (Hartweg pine), *Pinus jeffreyi* (Jeffrey pine), *Pinus kesiya* (Khasi pine), *Pinus kesiya* var. *langbianensis*, *Pinus lambertiana* (sugar pine), *Pinus luchuensis* (luchu pine), *Pinus massoniana* (masson pine), *Pinus mugo* (Montana pine), *Pinus muricata* (bishop pine), *Pinus murrayana* (Sierra lodgepole pine), *Pinus nigra* (Austrian pine), *Pinus oocarpa* (Nicaraguan pitch pine), *Pinus parviflora* (Japanese white pine), *Pinus patula* (Mexican weeping pine), *Pinus pinaster* (maritime, cluster pine), *Pinus pinea* (stone pine), *Pinus ponderosa* (ponderosa pine), *Pinus pseudostrobus* (smooth-back Mexican pine), *Pinus radiata* (radiata pine), *Pinus resinosa* (red pine), *Pinus rigida* (pitch pine), *Pinus roxburghii* (chir pine), *Pinus strobus* (white pine), *Pinus sylvestris* (Scots pine), *Pinus taeda* (loblolly pine), *Pinus taiwanensis* (Taiwan red pine), *Pinus thunbergii* (black pine), and *Pinus wallichiana* (Bhutan, blue pine).

### Minor Hosts

*Pinus griffithii* (Himalayan pine), *Pinus merkusii* (merkus pine), and *Pinus tabulaeformis* (= *tabuliformis*) (Chinese red pine).

**Note:** Other conifers, such as *Abies veitchii*, *A. sachalinensis*, *Cedrus deodara*, *Picea glehnii*, *P. jezoensis*, *Pseudotsuga menziesii*, and *Larix leptolepis*, were shown to be susceptible after artificial inoculation (Suto, 1979).

Different species are reported to be 'resistant' to *M. gibsonii* in certain countries. Many of these species are reported, however, to be susceptible to *M. gibsonii* or

its anamorphs in other countries. *Pinus kesiya*, *P. elliottii*, and *P. clausa* have been reported as 'resistant' to the pathogen or 'completely recovering from disease' in India (Sujan-Singh and Khan, 1988). *P. rigida*, *P. taeda*, *P. caribaea*, *P. griffithii*, *P. torreyana*, and *P. patula* are reported to be resistant in Japan (Ito, 1972). These differences are most likely due to differences in pathogenicity of specific isolates.

### Known Vectors

*Mycosphaerella gibsonii* is not known to be a vector, is not known to be vectored by another organism, and does not have any associated organisms.

### Known Distribution

**Africa:** Kenya, Madagascar, Malawi, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe. **Asia:** Bangladesh, China, India, Japan, Korea, Malaysia, Nepal, Philippines, Sri Lanka, Taiwan, Thailand, and Vietnam. **Caribbean:** Jamaica. **Central America:** Costa Rica, Honduras, and Nicaragua. **Oceania:** Papua New Guinea. **South America:** Brazil, Chile.

Records of *M. gibsonii* from Australia and New Zealand are considered invalid (CABI, 2007). The teleomorph (sexual stage) occurs in some localities in Africa and Asia: India, Philippines, Japan, Nepal, South Africa, Bangladesh, Madagascar, Papua New Guinea, Swaziland, Thailand, and Zambia.

### Potential Distribution within the United States

Susceptible hosts are present in the United States. Young *Pinus radiata*, introduced from the United States into Africa and India, were shown to be severely infected or killed by *M. gibsonii* (Suto, 1979). Nurseries growing pine seedlings and saplings would be at the greatest risk.

In a recent risk analysis by USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST, most of the continental United States has a low level to moderate risk of *M. gibsonii* establishment based on host availability, climate, and pathway. Areas of Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, and Mississippi have the highest risk for establishment of *M. gibsonii*.

### Survey

**CAPS-Approved Method:** The CAPS-approved method is visual survey. Conduct a visual survey for symptoms and collect symptomatic (blighted) needles.

### Signs:

Fruiting bodies of *M. gibsonii* form and look like dirty areas on the lesions.

### Symptoms:

Brown-needle disease develops. The pathogen targets older leaves in young saplings (1-2 yrs. old), forming lesions on the needles.

The infection starts as light yellow-green bands (5-10 mm) around the needles and spreads from the lower crown to the tips of branches. The lesions fade to yellow then to a gray-brown color.

Needles DO NOT exhibit the reddish tint that is characteristic of other diseases.

This pathogen causes severe defoliation, leading to stunted growth, and sometimes plant death.

**Literature-Based Methods:** Survey for *M. gibsonii* consists of visual inspection for symptoms, tissue sampling, and pathogen isolation. Symptomatic needles can be used to isolate the pathogen. Several agar media have been used to culture the pathogen including: 2% agar containing 800 or 900 cc of pine needle decoction (pine needle 300 g/L) and 200 or 1000 cc of V8 juice, incubated at 25°C (77°F) (day), 0-10°C (32-50°F) (night) temperatures and 8 hours of room light (Suto, 1971); potato-carrot agar with near ultraviolet light (Ito, 1972); potato-dextrose agar at 25°C (Ito, 1972; Evans 1984); and 2% malt extract (Ivory and Wingfield, 1986).

Although reproductive structures such as conidia are needed to identify the species, success rate of *in vitro* sporulation is highly variable (Suto, 1971; Ito 1972). In general, drying, peeling and cutting the mycelia of the colony stimulates sporulation of the fungus *in vitro*. Kioyhara and Tokushige (1969) discuss the procedure for inducing sporulation of *Cercospora pini-densiflorae in vitro*: 1) Culture the fungus on potato dextrose agar in a test tube for 15 days at 25°C; 2) Pull out the mycelial colony on agar slant from the tube, remove the agar medium beneath the colony, and then place the colony on filter paper in a dessicator for about one week; 3) Cut the mycelial colony into small pieces (four to six mg per piece); 4) Allow the small pieces of the mycelial colony to absorb water by keeping them at 28°C and 55% or 88% relative humidity, and then 5) Conidia production takes place on the under surface of the mycelial colony. Suto (1971) was able to produce abundant conidia in culture media by fragmentation of the young colony and successive transplantation of the fungal suspension (conidia and fragmented hyphae) on pine-needle decoction plus V8 juice agar.

### **Key Diagnostics**

**CAPS-Approved Method:** Morphological: The fungus may be cultured on V8 juice + pine needle decoction agar, in natural light at 25°C (day), 0-10°C (night) from symptomatic material (Suto, 1971). Higher night temperatures (15°C) cause abnormal conidial formation.

Pathogen may be identified morphologically by examination of the ascoma, ascii, and ascospores (if sexual stage present) or conidia (if asexual stage present) (Evans, 1984; Ivory, 1987).

**Literature-Based Methods:** Characteristic the asexual and/or sexual structures can enable identification of *M. gibsonii* or its anamorphs (Evans, 1984; Ivory, 1987).

### Easily Confused Pests

May be confused with *Dothistroma* blight (*Mycosphaerella pini*), but the pathogen may be distinguished by examination of the conidia. Symptoms may also be masked by or confused with *Sphaeropsis sapinea* (Ivory and Wingfield, 1986).

### References

- CABI. 2007.** Crop Protection Compendium. Wallingford, UK: CAB International.  
<http://www.cabi.org/compendia/cpc/>.
- Dela Cruz, R.E., Llanto, S.L., and Teodoro, L.M. 1984.** Relationships between nutrient content in soils and tissues and the incidence of needle blight and shoot moth in Benguet pine. Sylvatrop 9: 1-9.
- Diekmann, M., Sutherland, J.R., Nowell, D.C., Morales, F.J., and Allard, G., Editors. 2002.** FAO/IPGRI Technical Guidelines for the Safe Movement of Germplasm. No. 21. *Pinus* spp. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome/International Plant Genetic Resources Institute, Rome.
- Evans, H.C. 1984.** The genus *Mycosphaerella* and its anamorphs *Cercoseptoria*, *Dothistroma*, and *Lecanosticta* on pines. Mycological Papers 153: 60-84.
- Ito, K. 1972.** Cercospora needle blight of pines in Japan. Bulletin of the Government Forestry Experimental Station Tokyo 246: 21-33.
- Ivory, M.H. 1987.** Diseases and disorders of pines in the tropics. Overseas Research Publication No. 31. Overseas Development Administration. Oxford Forestry Institute, UK.
- Ivory, M.H. 1994.** Records of foliage pathogens of *Pinus* species in tropical countries. Plant Pathology 43: 511-518.
- Ivory, M.H., and Wingfield, M.J. 1986.** First report of *Mycosphaerella gibsonii* in South Africa. Phytophylactica 18: 51-53.
- Kioyara, T., and Tokushige, Y. 1969.** Sporulation of *Cercospora pini-densiflorae* Hori et Nambu and *C. sequoiae* Ellis et. Everhalt on culture media. Jap. Forest. Soc. J. 51: 98-101 (In Japanese, summarized in English by Ito (1972)).
- Nambu, N. 1917.** Diseases of forest trees in nurseries. Journal of Plant Protection, Tokyo 4: 353-354.
- Okamoto, M., Hirai, N., and Koshimizu, K. 1988.** Biosynthesis of abscisic acid from  $\alpha$ -lonylideneethanol in *Cercospora pini-densiflorae*. Phytochemistry 27(11): 3465-3469.
- Sujan Singh, and Khan, S.N. 1988.** Relative resistance of pines to *Cercoseptoria* needle blight in India. Indian For. 114: 84-88.

- Sujan Singh, Khan, S.N., and Misra, B.M. 1988.** *Cercoseptoria* needle blight of pines in nurseries: disease spread and control strategies. *European Journal of Forest Pathology* 18: 397-400.
- Suto, Y. 1971.** Sporulation of *Cercospora gibsonii* on culture medium. *Journal of the Japanese Forestry Society* 33: 319-326. (English summary).
- Suto, Y. 1979.** Pathogenicity of *Cercospora pini-densiflorae* Hori et Nambu to various coniferous seedlings. *J. Jap. For. Soc.* 61(5): 180-183.

## *Phellinus noxius*

E.M. Albrecht and R.C. Venette

### Scientific Name

*Phellinus noxius* (Corner) G.H. Cunn.

### Synonyms:

*Fomes noxius* Corner

*Phellinidium noxium* (Corner) Bondartseva & S. Herrera

*Phellinus sublamaensis* (Lloyd) Ryvarden

*Poria luteo-fulvus* Clel. & Rodw.

*Poria setuloso-crocea* Clel. & Rodw.  
(Cunningham 1965)

### Common Names

Brown root rot, brown tea root disease,  
brown cocoa root rot, stem rot

### Type of Pest

Fungal pathogen

### Taxonomic Position

**Kingdom:** Fungi, **Phylum:** Basidiomycota, **Order:** Hymenochaetales,  
**Family:** Hymenochaetaceae

### Reason for Inclusion in Manual

Previous CAPS Priority Pest (FY 2012)

### Pest Description

In the field, "*Phellinus noxius* forms a thick, dark brown to black crust of mycelium around infected roots and lower stems [Fig. 61]. The leading edge of the crust is creamy white [and] glistens with drops of clear, brownish exudate" (Brooks 2007).

Culture on potato dextrose agar (Fig. 62) "[Mycelial] growth rapid, 5.8 cm in 1 week. Advancing zone white, uneven, raised. Mat white to 'naples' to 'straw yellow' in loose-cottony areas, 'amber brown' to 'Sudan brown' to 'antique brown' in farinaceous-felty areas, dark brown to 'sayal brown' in crustose areas, loose-cottony to cottony-woolly at first, floccose to farinaceous-cottony becoming farinaceous-felty later. Brown crustose areas formed within one week at some places. Reverse 'blister' to 'sepia brown' in the major portion 'pale-pinkish buff' in the rest. Odour none" (MycoBank 2006).

Basidiocarp "perennial, solitary or imbricate, sessile with a broad basal attachment, commonly resupinate" (Pegler and Waterston 1968).



Fig. 61. *Phellinus noxius* mycelial crust on a multi-trunked tree. Image by F.E. Brooks, <http://www.bugwood.org>

**Pileus** “5-13 x 6-25 x 2-4 cm, applanate, dimidiate or appressed-reflexed; upper surface deep reddish-brown to umbrinous, soon blackening, at first tomentose, glabrescent, sometimes with narrow concentric zonation, developing a thick crust; margin white then concolorous, obtuse” (Pegler and Waterston 1968).

**Context** “up to 1 cm thick, golden brown, blackening with [potassium hydroxide], silky-zonate fibrous, woody” (Pegler and Waterston 1968).

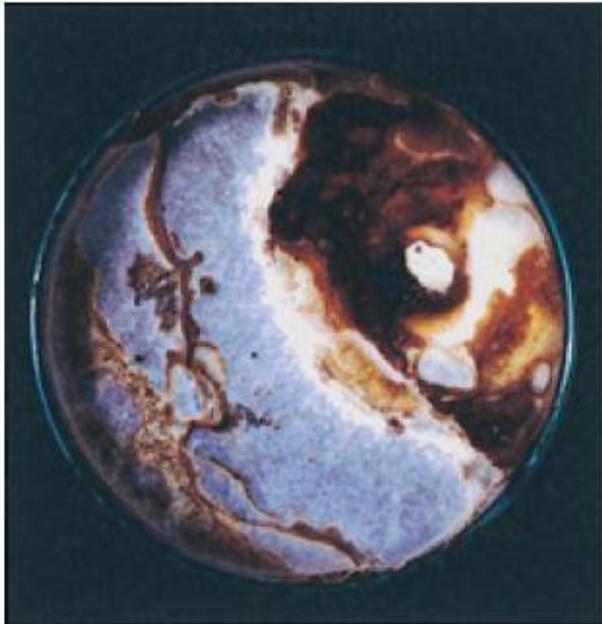


Fig. 62. Colony morphology of *P. noxius* on potato dextrose agar (PDA). Image reproduced with permission from Ann et al. (2002).

**Pore surface** “greyish-brown to umbrinous; pores irregular, polygonal, 6-8/mm, 75-175  $\mu\text{m}$  diameter, dissepiments 25-100  $\mu\text{m}$  thick, brittle and lacerate; tubes stratified, developing 2-5 layers, 1-4 mm to each layer, darker than context, carbonaceous” (Pegler and Waterston 1968).

**Basidiospores** “[about] 4 x 3  $\mu\text{m}$ , ovoid to broadly ellipsoid, hyaline, with a smooth, slightly thickened wall, and irregular guttulate contents. Basidia 12-16 x 4-5  $\mu\text{m}$ , short clavate, 4-spored” (Pegler and Waterston 1968).

**Setae** “absent” (Pegler and Waterston 1968).

**Setal hyphae** “present both in the context and the dissepiment trama. Context setal hyphae radially arranged, up to 600 x 4-13  $\mu\text{m}$ , unbranched or rarely branching, with a thick dark chestnut brown wall and capillary lumen; apex acute to obtuse, occasionally nodulose. Tramal setal hyphae diverging to project into the tube cavity, 55-100 x 9-18  $\mu\text{m}$ , with a thick dark chestnut-brown wall (2.5-7.5  $\mu\text{m}$  thick) and a broad obtuse apex” (Pegler and Waterston 1968).

**Hyphal system** “dimitic with generative and skeletal hyphae, non-agglutinated in the context, but strongly agglutinated in the dissepiments” (Pegler and Waterston 1968).

**Generative hyphae** “1-6.5  $\mu\text{m}$  diameter, hyaline or brownish, wall thin to somewhat thickening, freely branching, simple septate” (Pegler and Waterston 1968).

Skeletal hyphae “5-9 µm diameter, unbranched, of unlimited growth, with a thick reddish-brown wall (up to 2.5 µm thick) and continuous lumen, non-septate” (Pegler and Waterston 1968).

### Biology and Ecology

Originally considered a brown root rot, *P. noxius* is now classified as a white rot due to its ability to degrade lignin along with cellulose and hemicellulose (Nicole et al. 1982, Geiger et al. 1986, Brooks 2002, GISD 2006). The brown to black surface appearance of *P. noxius*-infected roots comes from a crust of mycelia and soil; the decayed inner tissue is white and laced with reddish-brown to black hyphae (Brooks 2002).

In the laboratory, optimal growth on potato dextrose agar (PDA) occurs between 25-31°C [77-88°F]. No growth is observed below 4°C [39°F] or above 40°C [104°F] (Abe et al. 1995, Ann et al. 1999, Brooks 2007). Maximum rate of growth on PDA can be as high as 34 mm/d (Ann et al. 1999).

*P. noxius* thrives in sandy, loamy sand, and sandy loam soils, though it has also been found in other soil types with <50% clay or silt (Chang and Yang 1998). Soils with a high proportion of sand tend to be well-drained. *P. noxius* has been isolated from soils with pH between 4 and 9 (Chang and Yang 1998) but thrives in soils with pH <5 (Ann et al. 1999). This pathogen does not grow in neutral to alkaline soils (pH >7.5) (Ann et al. 1999).

*P. noxius* is spread via root-to-root contact, contact with infected woody debris, and through infected soil. Wind may also disperse basidiospores, but this is a less common means of dispersal since fruiting bodies are rare (Brooks 2002, reviewed in Hodges 2005, GISD 2006). Transmission via root-to-root contact is slower than for similar root rot fungi like *Rigidoporus lignosus*, which has rhizomorphs capable of penetrating several meters through soil. Since *P. noxius* lacks these structures, an infected root must directly contact a healthy root or stump in order for the pathogen to be transmitted. Growth rates of the mycelial encrustation on roots of *Hevea brasiliensis* have been estimated at up to 0.7 m/y [2¼ ft] (Nandris et al. 1987). *P. noxius* does not form resting spores or sclerotia but can remain viable in woody debris in soil for many years, even after infected trees have been removed (Nandris et al. 1987, Chang 1996, Ann et al. 2002, reviewed in Hodges 2005, Brooks 2007). Mycelia in the soil can infect trees replanted on a cleared site (Ann et al. 1999). Movement of infected wood may also transmit this fungus (Hodges 2005).

In certain hosts (e.g., *Acacia* spp.), *P. noxius* causes heart rot. Wounds created by pruning or mechanical damage are infected by basidiospores. Heart rot caused by this pathogen has not been reported for *Pinus* spp.

## Pest Importance

*P. noxius* is a widely distributed, opportunistic fungal pathogen that appears to have little or no host specificity (Chang 1995a, reviewed in CAB 2005). Indeed, over 120 genera of plants have been reported as hosts for this pathogen. The pathogenicity of *P. noxius* on *Pinus* spp. is not currently known, though one species of pine, *Pinus luchuensis* (Luchu pine), appears to be less susceptible than other species (Abe et al. 1995). Economically important crops such as *Camellia sinensis* (tea), *Coffea* spp. (coffee), *Elaeis guineensis* (oil palm), *Hevea brasiliensis* (rubber), *Swietenia* spp. (mahogany), and *Theobroma cacao* (cocoa) are particularly susceptible and infection can lead to considerable economic losses (Pegler and Waterston 1968, Ann et al. 1999, Brooks 2002, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005, reviewed in MycoBank 2006). Hosts vary in their susceptibility to *P. noxius* infection, ranging from 20-100% mortality in <1 y in pathogenicity tests by Chang (1995a) and Ann et al. (1999). Certain species, such as *Acacia confusa*, *Dimocarpus longana*, and *Salix babylonica*, may possess some resistance to the deleterious effects of *P. noxius* (Chang and Yang 1998, Ann et al. 1999). Environmental consequences from the establishment of this pathogen in North America are uncertain (Hodges 2005). In forests within its native range, *P. noxius* is a natural cause of mortality.

## Symptoms

Aboveground symptoms of *P. noxius* infection are typical of root and collar rot disease. Leaves turn yellow and wilt as the roots die, followed by dieback of branches. In most species decline occurs rapidly, with chlorosis and browning of leaves developing in as few as 2-3 mo. A thick brown encrustation of mycelia, soil, and small stones (Figs. 58 and 61) develops around affected roots and up stems to a height of 1-2 m [3-6 ft]. The margin of this mycelial “sleeve” is creamy white and coincides with the extent of internal damage. The crust that forms on infected roots and stems is diagnostic of *P. noxius* infection. Decaying wood is white and crumbly and laced with reddish-brown hyphal strands that become brittle and black with age. Though rarely found, basidiocarps growing from the mycelial crust are crustose, irregularly zoned, and brownish-black, with a grey-brown pore surface (Figs. 58 and 61). These fruiting bodies can be reflexed (shelf-like), effused (flat), or effused-reflexed (a combination of the two). There are no rhizomorphs. Felty mats of mycelia grow between the



Fig. 63. Mycelial crust and basidiocarps on *Leucaena* spp. Image from CAB (2005).

bark and sapwood, causing girdling and eventual death of the tree (Brooks 2001, Ann et al. 2002, Brooks 2002, 2007). See 'Survey' for additional descriptions of signs and symptoms of *P. noxius* infection.

### Known Hosts

*P. noxius* has a very wide host range and can infect numerous forest, fruit, and ornamental trees and herbaceous plants (Pegler and Waterston 1968, Ann et al. 2002, Brooks 2002). Currently, there are 286 hosts in 124 genera listed for *P. noxius* and its synonym, *Fomes noxius*, in the USDA-ARS Systematic Botany and Mycology Laboratory online database (Farr et al. 2006). Ann et al. (2002) list 121 susceptible species from Taiwan, many of which have a cosmopolitan distribution. The species listed below are primarily economically important crops.

| Host   | Reference   |
|--|---|
| <i>Acacia</i> spp. (acacia)                      | (reviewed in Hodges 2005)   |
| <i>Acacia confusa</i> (Taiwan acacia)            | (Chang and Yang 1998, reviewed in CAB 2005)                         |
| <i>Anacardium occidentale</i> (cashew)           | (Supriadi et al. 2004)  |
| <i>Annona squamosa</i> (sugar-apple)             | (Ann et al. 1999)   |
| <i>Araucaria</i> spp. (araucaria)                | (reviewed in Hodges 2005)   |
| <i>Araucaria bidwillii</i> (bunya pine)          | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Araucaria cunninghamii</i> (hoop pine)        | (Hattori et al. 1996, Brooks 2002, reviewed in CAB 2005)            |
| <i>Artocarpus altilis</i> (breadfruit)           | (Brooks 2002, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005, 2006)  |
| <i>Bauhinia racemosa</i> (mountain ebony)        | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Camellia sinensis</i> (tea)                   | (reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005)                     |
| <i>Canarium indicum</i> (galip nut)              | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Casuarina equisetifolia</i> (Australian pine) | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Ceiba pentandra</i> (kapok)                   | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Coffea</i> spp. (coffee)                      | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Cordia alliodora</i> (Ecuador laurel)         | (Neil 1986, Hattori et al. 1996, Brooks 2002, reviewed in CAB 2005) |
| <i>Delonix regia</i> (flame tree)                | (Hattori et al. 1996, reviewed in Hodges 2005)                      |
| <i>Dimocarpus longana</i> (longan)               | (Ann et al. 1999)   |
| <i>Diospyros kaki</i> (persimmon)                | (Ann et al. 1999)   |
| <i>Elaeis guineensis</i> (African oil palm)      | (reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005)                     |
| <i>Eriobotrya japonica</i> (loquat)              | (Ann et al. 1999)   |
| <i>Eucalyptus</i> spp. (eucalyptus)              | (reviewed in Hodges 2005)   |
| <i>Flueggea flexuosa</i> (bushweed)              | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Garcinia mangostana</i> (mangosteen)          | (reviewed in CAB 2005)  |
| <i>Gmelina arborea</i> (white teak)              | (Brooks 2002)   |

| Host   | Reference  |
|--|--|
| <i>Hevea brasiliensis</i> (rubber)                         | (Nandris et al. 1987, Hattori et al. 1996, Brooks 2002, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005) |
| <i>Khaya ivorensis</i> (African mahogany)                  | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Liquidambar formosana</i> (Formosan sweetgum)           | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Litchi chinensis</i> (litchi)                           | (Ann et al. 1999)  |
| <i>Ochroma lagopus</i> (balsa)                             | (Dennis 1992)  |
| <i>Ochroma pyramidale</i> (balsa)                          | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Pinus</i> spp. (pine)                                   | (reviewed in Hodges 2005)  |
| <i>Pinus elliotii</i> (slash pine)                         | (Farr et al. 2006)   |
| <i>Pinus elliotii</i> var. <i>elliotii</i> (Honduras pine) | (Farr et al. 2006)   |
| <i>Pinus thunbergii</i> (Japanese black pine)              | (Farr et al. 2006)   |
| <i>Prunus mume</i> (Japanese apricot)                      | (Ann et al. 1999)  |
| <i>Pyrus pyrifolia</i> var. <i>culta</i> (Asian pear)      | (Ann et al. 1999)  |
| <i>Pyrus pyrifolia</i> var. <i>yokoyama</i> (Asian pear)   | (Ann et al. 1999)  |
| <i>Salix babylonica</i> (weeping willow)                   | (Chang and Yang 1998)  |
| <i>Swietenia</i> spp. (mahogany)                           | (reviewed in Hodges 2005)  |
| <i>Swietenia macrophylla</i> (mahogany)                    | (Brooks 2002)  |
| <i>Taiwania cryptomerioides</i> (taiwania)                 | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Tectona grandis</i> (teak)                              | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| <i>Theobroma cacao</i> (cocoa)                             | (Brooks 2002, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005)   |
| <i>Thespesia populnea</i> (Pacific rosewood)               | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |

### Known Vectors

There are no known vectors of *P. noxius*.

### Known Distribution

*P. noxius* has a pantropical distribution and can be found throughout Africa, southeast Asia, Australasia, and the Pacific (reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005, GISD 2006). Currently, the northernmost extent of this pathogen's distribution is Okinawa, Japan. In Taiwan, *P. noxius* has not been recorded at elevations greater than 800 m (Chang and Yang 1998).

| Location      | Reference                        |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>Africa</b> |                                  |
| Angola        | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005) |
| Benin         | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005) |

| <b>Location</b>               | <b>Reference</b>   |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Burkina Faso                  | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Cameroon                      | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in MycoBank 2006)  |
| Central African Republic      | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Congo, Democratic Republic of | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in MycoBank 2006)  |
| Côte d'Ivoire                 | (CAB 1980, Nandris et al. 1987, reviewed in CAB 2005, Farr et al. 2006, reviewed in MycoBank 2006)                           |
| Gabon                         | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Ghana                         | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in MycoBank 2006)  |
| Kenya                         | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in MycoBank 2006)  |
| Liberia                       | (Nandris et al. 1987)  |
| Nigeria                       | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, Farr et al. 2006, reviewed in MycoBank 2006)  |
| Sierra Leone                  | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Tanzania                      | (reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in MycoBank 2006)  |
| Togo                          | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Uganda                        | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
|                               |  |
| <b>Australasia</b>            |  |
| Australia                     | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, Farr et al. 2006, reviewed in MycoBank 2006)  |
| New Zealand                   | (Farr et al. 2006)   |
| Papua New Guinea              | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, Farr et al. 2006, reviewed in MycoBank 2006)  |
|                               |  |
| <b>Asia</b>                   |  |
| China (incl. Taiwan)          | (Ann et al. 1999, Ann et al. 2002, reviewed in CAB 2005, Farr et al. 2006)   |
| India                         | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005, Farr et al. 2006, reviewed in MycoBank 2006)                       |
| Indonesia                     | (CAB 1980, Supriadi et al. 2004, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005, Farr et al. 2006, reviewed in MycoBank 2006) |

| <b>Location</b>                        | <b>Reference</b>   |
|--|--|
| Japan                                  | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Malaysia                               | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005, Farr et al. 2006, reviewed in MycoBank 2006) |
| Myanmar                                | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Pakistan                               | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005)  |
| Philippines                            | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005, Farr et al. 2006)                            |
| Singapore                              | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Sri Lanka                              | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in MycoBank 2006)  |
| Vietnam                                | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
|  |  |
| <b>Central America &amp; Caribbean</b> |  |
| Costa Rica                             | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005)  |
| Cuba                                   | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005)2005(reviewed in Hodges 2005, Farr et al. 2006)                        |
| Puerto Rico <sup>1</sup>               | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005, Farr et al. 2006)                            |
|  |  |
| <b>Pacific Islands</b>                 |  |
| American Samoa                         | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005, Brooks 2006)                                 |
| Federated States of Micronesia         | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Fiji                                   | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, Farr et al. 2006)   |
| Guam                                   | (reviewed in Hodges 2005)  |
| Niue                                   | (reviewed in CAB 2005)   |
| Northern Mariana Islands               | (reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005)  |
| Samoa                                  | (CAB 1980, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in MycoBank 2006)  |
| Solomon Islands                        | (reviewed in CAB 2005, Farr et al. 2006)   |
| Vanuatu                                | (CAB 1980, Neil 1986, reviewed in MycoBank 2006)   |
|  |  |
| <b>South America</b>                   |  |

| Location | Reference          |
|----------|--------------------|
| Brazil   | (Farr et al. 2006) |

1. Farr et al. (2006) note a record of “brownroot disease with typical sporocarp” from *Codiaeum variegatum* in Puerto Rico, but this report is “suspect” (reviewed in Hodges 2005).

### Potential Distribution within the United States

The known distribution of *P. noxius* suggests that the pathogen may be most closely associated with two biomes, both of which occur in the United States: (1) tropical and subtropical moist broadleaf forests; and (2) tropical and subtropical grasslands, savannahs, and shrublands. Collectively, these biomes account for less than 1% of the area of the contiguous United States and are generally found in southern Florida and southern Texas.

In a recent host analysis by USDA-APHIS-PPQ-CPHST, most of the continental United States has a low density of hosts for *P. noxius*.

### Survey

#### CAPS-Approved Method:

The CAPS-approved method is visual survey.

#### Signs:

A dark brown mycelial mat or sleeve on the surface of the roots and up to the base of the stem is used reliably for field identification of *P. noxius*.

Soil is scraped away around the collar and the main roots and the distinctive mycelial sleeve is often present. Focus on wilted and dead plants.

#### Symptoms:

Similar to those caused by other root rot pathogens including slow plant growth, yellowing and wilting of leaves, defoliation, branch dieback, and plant death.

#### Literature-Based Methods:

Visual inspection: Visual inspection is the only practical means of detecting *Phellinus noxius* in the field. Above-ground signs include chlorosis, wilt, and dieback of branches. These signs are not diagnostic of *P. noxius* and may reflect a variety of biotic and abiotic causes (Brooks 2001, reviewed in CAB 2005, reviewed in Hodges 2005). Externally, the most conspicuous sign of infection by *P. noxius* is the creamy white expanding margin of the mycelial crust that develops on roots and lower stems of affected plants (Figs. 58 and 61). Lateral and tap roots are affected as the infection spreads toward the collar. Diseased

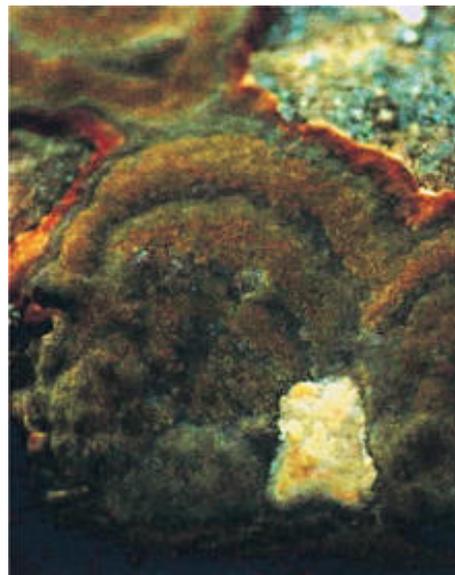


Fig. 64. *Phellinus noxius* basidiocarp cultured on sawdust medium. Basidiocarps of *P. noxius* are rarely found in the field. Image reproduced with permission from Ann et al. (2002).

roots are encrusted with a 1 cm thick “sleeve” of brown mycelium, soil, and small stones that may be visible above ground, especially on exposed lateral roots (Fig. 62). The mycelial crust spreads up the stem to an average height of 1-2 m [3-6 ft], though heights of almost 5 m [16 ft] have been reported. Rarely, lightweight, woody basidiocarps (fruiting bodies) with broad bases can also be found growing from the mycelium (Figs. 63 and 64). The pileus (cap) is rough and brownish-black, with irregular zonation; below, the hymenophore (spore-producing surface) is pale grey-brown. The context (flesh of the basidiocarp) is soft and when divided is golden brown to “yellow cinnamon to ferruginous”, becoming black when potassium hydroxide is applied (Fig. 65). Within a tree, mycelium may be present between bark and sapwood. The decayed wood is soft, friable, and white with reddish-brown hyphal strands that become brittle and black with age (Fig. 65; Pegler and Waterston 1968, Brooks 2002, reviewed in CAB 2005, GISD 2006, reviewed in MycoBank 2006, Brooks 2007). See ‘Pest Description’ for a complete morphological description of *P. noxius*.



Fig. 65. *Dimocarpus longana* root exhibiting symptoms of white rot by *P. noxius*. Image reproduced with permission from Ann et al. (2002).

### Key Diagnostics

#### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

Confirmation of *P. noxius* is by morphological identification. Surface sterilized diseased root tissues are plated on potato dextrose agar amended with ampicillin and benomyl or Chang (1995b) medium. The cultural characteristics of the fungus are examined and compared to photos in Ann et al. (2002) and Brooks (2002). The Key of the Polyporaceae described by Cunningham (1965) is then used for identification of the fungus. These references can be found in Appendix M of the current CAPS National Survey Guidelines.

#### **Literature-Based Methods:**

*P. noxius* can be detected in the field by examining the root collar and exposed roots for the characteristic brown encrustation. Another method entails placing sterilized pieces of host tissue in suspect soil and retrieving them after 3 wk for laboratory study (Nandris et al. 1987). A third method involves keeping the area around the root collar moist with mulch for 3 wk to allow development of mycelia (Nandris et al. 1987, reviewed in CAB 2005). All three methods are labor-intensive, time-consuming, and imperfect.

In the laboratory, *P. noxius* can be cultured on malt agar, potato dextrose agar (PDA), or on a selective medium comprised of 20 g/l malt extract, 20 g/l agar, 10

mg/l benomyl, 10 mg/l dichloran, 100 mg/l ampicillin, 500 mg/l gallic acid, and 1000 mg/l tergitol NP-7 (Chang 1995b, Ann et al. 1999). Small pieces of infected wood (about 5 x 2 x 1 mm) from the expanding margin are surface sterilized in 0.5% sodium hypochlorite for 3 min before placing them on PDA (Ann et al. 1999). *P. noxius* can grow as fast as 35 mm/d on PDA at 30°C (Ann et al. 2002). Cultures of *P. noxius* on malt agar produce raised brown and white plaques and arthrospores (asexual spores) (Nandris et al. 1987, Ann et al. 2002, Brooks 2007). Single hyphal tip isolation can be performed after transferring *P. noxius* to 2% water agar, then culturing the hyphal tips on PDA (Ann et al. 1999).

### Easily Confused Pests

*Phellinus noxius* may be confused with *P. lamaensis*. Both species are morphologically similar and share portions of their host range. *P. lamaensis* is not known from the United States (Cunningham 1965). The two fungi are difficult to distinguish in the field and microscopic identification may be necessary. The expanding margin of the *P. noxius* sporocarp is creamy white, while that of *P. lamaensis* is ochre. Additionally, *P. noxius* tends to grow from a thick mycelial crust, where *P. lamaensis* does not (Brooks 2002). Microscopic examination reveals *P. lamaensis* to have cone-shaped hymenial setae and narrow setal hyphae (5-7 µm wide), while *P. noxius* lacks hymenial setae and possesses wider setal hyphae (7.5-13 µm wide) (Ann et al. 1999, reviewed in MycoBank 2006).

### References

- Abe, Y., T. Kobayashi, M. Onuki, T. Hattori, and M. Tsurumachi. 1995.** Brown root rot of trees caused by *Phellinus noxius* in windbreaks on Ishigaki Island, Japan - incidence of disease, pathogen and artificial inoculation. *Annals of the Phytopathological Society of Japan* 61: 425-433.
- Ann, P. J., H. L. Lee, and T. C. Huang. 1999.** Brown root rot of 10 species of fruit trees caused by *Phellinus noxius* in Taiwan. *Plant Disease* 83: 746-750.
- Ann, P. J., T. T. Chang, and W. H. Ko. 2002.** *Phellinus noxius* brown root rot of fruit and ornamental trees in Taiwan. *Plant Disease* 86: 820-826.
- Brooks, F. E. 2001.** Pests and diseases of American Samoa no. 4: brown root rot disease. American Samoa Community College Agriculture, Human & Natural Resources Cooperative Research & Extension, Pago Pago.
- Brooks, F. E. 2002.** Brown root rot disease in American Samoa's tropical rain forests. *Pacific Science* 56: 377-387.
- Brooks, F. E. 2006.** List of plant diseases in American Samoa. Land Grant Technical Report No. 44. American Samoa Community College Land Grant Program, Pago Pago.
- Brooks, F. E. 2007.** American Phytopathological Society Plant Disease Lesson: Brown Root Rot. APSnet. Available on-line at: <http://www.apsnet.org/education/LessonsPlantPath/BrownRootRot/default.htm>. Accessed 3 August 2007.

- CAB. 1980.** Distribution maps of plant diseases. *Phellinus noxius* (Corner) G.H. Cunn. Map no. 104. Commonwealth Mycological Institute.
- CAB. 2005.** Crop Protection Compendium. CAB International. Available on-line at: <http://www.cabicompendium.org/cpc>. Accessed 1 June 2007.
- Chang, T. T. 1995a.** Decline of nine tree species associated with brown root rot caused by *Phellinus noxius* in Taiwan. *Plant Disease* 79: 962-965.
- Chang, T. T. 1995b.** A selective medium for *Phellinus noxius*. *European Journal of Forest Pathology* 25: 185-190.
- Chang, T. T. 1996.** Survival of *Phellinus noxius* in soil and in the roots of dead host plants. *Phytopathology* 86: 272-276.
- Chang, T. T., and W. W. Yang. 1998.** *Phellinus noxius* in Taiwan: distribution, host plants and the pH and texture of the rhizosphere soils of infected hosts. *Mycological Research* 102: 1085-1088.
- Cunningham, G. H. 1965.** Polyporaceae of New Zealand. New Zealand Department of Scientific and Industrial Research Bulletin 164: 217-240.
- Dennis, J. J. C. 1992.** A new threat from brown root rot of cocoa, caused by *Phellinus noxius*, in Papua New Guinea. *Plant Disease* 76: 642.
- Farr, D. F., A. Y. Rossman, M. E. Palm, and E. B. McCray. 2006.** Systematic Botany and Mycology: Fungal Databases. Systematic Botany & Mycology Laboratory, ARS, USDA. Available on-line at: <http://nt.ars-grin.gov/fungaldatabases/>. Accessed 8 August 2007.
- Geiger, J. P., B. Rio, M. Nicole, and D. Nandris. 1986.** Biodegradation of *Hevea brasiliensis* wood by *Rigidoporus lignosus* and *Phellinus noxius*. *European Journal of Forest Pathology* 16: 147-159.
- GISD. 2006.** Global Invasive Species Database. Invasive Species Specialist Group (ISSG), IUCN Species Survival Commission. Available on-line at: <http://www.issg.org/database/welcome/>. Accessed 8 August 2007.
- Hattori, T., Y. Abe, and T. Usugi. 1996.** Distribution of clones of *Phellinus noxius* in a windbreak on Ishigaki Island. *European Journal of Forest Pathology* 26: 69-80.
- Hodges, C. D. 2005.** EXFOR Database Pest Report: *Phellinus noxius*. USDA Forest Service. Available on-line at: <http://spfnic.fs.fed.us/exfor/data/pestreports.cfm?pestidval=50&langdisplay=english>. Accessed 19 October 2006.
- MycoBank. 2006.** MycoBank Fungal nomenclature website. Available on-line at: <http://www.mycobank.org>. Accessed 6 August 2007.
- Nandris, D., M. Nicole, and J. P. Geiger. 1987.** Variation in virulence among *Rigidoporus lignosus* and *Phellinus noxius* isolates from West Africa. *European Journal of Forest Pathology* 17: 271-281.
- Neil, P. E. 1986.** A preliminary note on *Phellinus noxius* root rot of *Cordia alliodora* plantings in Vanuatu. *European Journal of Forest Pathology* 16: 274-280.
- Nicole, M., J. P. Geiger, and D. Nandris. 1982.** Interactions hôte-parasite entre *Hevea brasiliensis* et les agents de pourriture racinaire *Phellinus noxius* et *Rigidoporus lignosus*: etude physio-pathologique comparée. *Phytopathologie Zeitschrift* 105: 311-326.

- Pegler, D. N., and J. M. Waterston. 1968.** C.M.I. Descriptions of Pathogenic Fungi and Bacteria No. 195: *Phellinus noxius*. CAB International/The Commonwealth Mycological Institute, London.
- Supriadi, E., M. Adhi, D. Wahyuno, S. Rahayuningsih, N. Karyani, and M. Dahsyat. 2004.** Brown root rot disease of cashew in West Nusa Tenggara: distribution and its causal organism. Indonesian Journal of Agricultural Science 5: 32-36.

# Phytoplasmas

## '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma pini'

D. Mackesy and M. Sullivan

Reviewer: R. Davis, ARS

### Scientific Name

'*Candidatus* Phytoplasma pini' (Schneider et al., 2005)

### Synonyms:

*Phytoplasma pini*, *Phytoplasma* sp. *PinG*, *Phytoplasma* sp. *PinP*

### Common Names

Pine witches' broom phytoplasma, phytoplasma PinY, pine shoot proliferation, *Pinus sylvestris* yellows

### Type of Pest

Phytoplasma

### Taxonomic Position

**Kingdom:** Bacteria, **Phylum:** Firmicutes, **Class:** Mollicutes, **Order:** Acholeplasmatales, **Family:** Acholeplasmataceae

### Reason for Inclusion in Manual

CAPS Target: AHP Prioritized Pest List - 2014

### Background Information

Phytoplasmas, formerly known as mycoplasma-like organisms (MLOs), are pleomorphic, cell wall-less bacteria with small genomes (530 to 1350 kbp) of low G + C content (23-29%). They belong to the class Mollicutes and are the putative causal agents of yellows diseases that affect at least 1,000 plant species worldwide (McCoy et al., 1989; Seemüller et al., 2002). These minute, endocellular prokaryotes colonize the phloem of their infected plant hosts as well as various tissues and organs of their respective insect vectors. Phytoplasmas are transmitted to plants during feeding activity by their vectors, primarily leafhoppers, planthoppers, and psyllids (IRPCM, 2004; Weintraub and Beanland, 2006).

Although phytoplasmas cannot be grown by laboratory culture in cell free media, they may be observed in infected plant or insect tissues by use of electron microscopy or detected by molecular assays incorporating antibodies or nucleic acids. Since biological and phenotypic properties in pure culture are unavailable as aids in their identification, analysis of 16S rRNA genes has been adopted as the major basis for phytoplasma taxonomy. The provisional taxonomic status of '*Candidatus*', used for incompletely described microorganisms, has been adopted for describing and naming distinct phytoplasmas (*i.e.*, '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma'). Several species (*i.e.*, '*Ca.* Phytoplasma' species) have been

named following established guidelines (IRPCM, 2004; Harrison et al., 2011; Davis et al., 2013; Quaglino et al., 2013).

Phytoplasmas are classified in a system of groups and subgroups based upon DNA fingerprints (RFLP patterns) of 16S rRNA genes (16S rDNA) (Lee et al., 1998, 2000). Each 16S rDNA RFLP group contains at least one phytoplasma species. For example, '*Candidatus Phytoplasma pini*' is classified in group 16SrXXI, subgroup A (16SrXXI-A).

A new '*Candidatus Phytoplasma*' species may be recognized if the nucleotide sequence of 1,200 bases of its 16S rRNA gene shares < 97.5 identity with that of all previously named '*Candidatus Phytoplasma*' species (IRPCM, 2004). If a phytoplasma shares  $\geq 97.5$  nucleotide sequence identity of 16S rDNA with any previously named species, the subject phytoplasma may be named as a distinct new species if significant biological or genetic properties distinguish the phytoplasma from already named species (IRPCM, 2004).

### **Pest Description**

'*Candidatus Phytoplasma pini*' (herein abbreviated as '*Ca. P. pini*') is associated with the 16S rRNA gene sequence accession AJ632155, with oligonucleotide sequences complementary to unique regions of the 16S rRNA gene [5'-GGAAATCTTTCGGGATTTTAGT-3' (positions 67- 88) and 5'-TCTCAGTGCTTAACGCTGTTCT-3' (positions 603-624)]. According to the phylogenetic analysis carried out by Schneider et al. (2005), the pine phytoplasma strains form a distinct branch and are only distantly related to other phytoplasmas (Firrao, 2005).

The closest relatives of '*Ca. Phytoplasma pini*', sharing 94.5% or less 16S rRNA gene sequence identity, are the phytoplasmas associated with diseases of rice ('*Ca. P. oryzae*'), coconut, and chestnut ('*Ca. P. castaneae*'), included in the 16SrIV or 16SrXI groups by Lee et al. (1998, 2000). The restriction map of the 16S rDNA gene deduced from the sequence suggests that specific RFLP patterns should result from the digestion, with the enzymes commonly used for the characterization of phytoplasmas (*AluI*, *RsaI*, *MseI*, *HhaI* and *HinfI*), of an amplification product obtained using general phytoplasma-specific primers. The reference strain is Pin127SR from *Pinus halepensis* (Firrao, 2005).

### **Biology and Ecology**

The biology of '*Ca. P. pini*' is currently not well understood. Like other phytoplasmas, it is an obligate intercellular parasite that occurs in the phloem sieve tubes of infected plants and likely the salivary glands of insect vectors. The insect vector has not yet been identified (CABI, 2007). In general, phytoplasmas are transmitted to plants in a circulative-propagative manner by phloem-feeding insect vectors. Their ingestion of sap from diseased plants is followed by an incubation phase lasting for one to several weeks, during which time these bacteria circulate, multiply, and parasitize various tissues and organs of their

respective vectors. Once salivary glands have been colonized, vectors are then capable of transmitting phytoplasmas during any subsequent feeding activity for their remaining lifespans (Weintraub and Beanland, 2006; Gitau et al., 2009).

Environmental and host factors that influence susceptibility to 'Ca. P pini' infection in conifers are currently unknown. There is variation in the colonization of the trees and in the concentration (titre) of the phytoplasma within the trees. A study by Kaminska et al. (2011) suggests that detectability of the phytoplasma fluctuates depending on the year or season of testing, even within the same tree. In addition, witches' broom symptomatic trees do not always test positive for the pathogen (Sliwa et al., 2008; Kaminska et al., 2011), suggesting that there are other causes of these growth abnormalities. Some of these results indicate that trees may have the ability to recover from or resist 'Ca. P pini' infection depending on environmental conditions.

'Ca. P pini' infected evergreen trees can be propagated by grafting (Sliwa et al., 2008). Other than that, there are currently no other verified mechanisms, except transmission by insects, for the spreading of this pathogen.

### Pest Importance

The increasing number of reported hosts and expanding known host range of 'Ca. P. pini' are cause for concern. The timber industry and the scenic beauty of forestland in each of the known host countries could be affected by this pathogen. For example, China exported a total of 26,777,117m<sup>3</sup> of forest products in 2003 (Sun et al., 2005). *Taxodium distichum* var. *imbricarium* is frequently used for wetland and riparian zone restoration in China (Huang et al., al., 2011). In Lithuania, timber accounts for 2% of all industrial production and engages 13% of the workforce (Valiunas et al., 2010). Germany is home to the largest timber reserves in Europe. At 25 million cubic meters, Germany's sawmill industry is the largest producer in the European



**Figure 67:** Shoot and needle malformation in infected *Picea pungens* (left two branches) compared to a healthy branch (right).

Reprinted from Journal of Phytopathology 159: Kamińska, M. and Berniak, H. 2011. Detection and identification of three 'Candidatus Phytoplasma' species in *Picea* spp. trees in Poland. Page 797, Copyright (2011), with permission from Elsevier.

economic area. Approximately 30 percent of German sawn timber production is exported worldwide. Based on the presence of 150,000 companies, annual sales of approximately €170 billion (\$221 billion), and almost 1.2 million employees, the German timber and forestry industry cluster is a key global player (Wood Germany, 2013). Croatia has forests covering 43% of its landmass, and total exports of wood products were valued at over \$336 million in 2004 (Motik, 2006).

### Symptoms

**Pine:** Yellowing, dwarfing/stunting, twisted needles (“form dense ball-like structures”), and prolific branching / proliferation of small shoots/twigs (i.e., witches' broom, Fig. 68), and little leaves are observed (Schneider et al., 2005).

**Spruce:** Shoot and needle malformation and stunted growth are the main symptoms observed (Kaminska and Berniak, 2011) (Fig. 67).



**Figure 68:** Witches' broom symptoms typical of 'Ca. P pini' infection in a *Pinus halepensis* tree in Cadiz, Spain. Photo courtesy of Juan Bibiloni. <http://mundani-garden.blogspot.com.es/2011/07/candidatus-phytoplasma-pini-it-makes.html>.

**Fir and Hemlock:** Witches' brooming and needle discoloration are the primary symptoms associated with the disease (Kaminska et al., 2011).

**Pond Cypress:** Necrotic little leaves, twig, and overall plant necrosis (tissue death) have been seen in China (Huang et al., 2011).

### Known Hosts

**Major hosts:** *Pinus halepensis* (Aleppo pine) and *Pinus sylvestris* (Scot's pine) (Schneider et al., 2005).

**Other hosts:** *Abies procera* (noble fir), *Picea pungens* (Colorado blue spruce), *Pinus banksiana* (Jack pine), *P. halepensis* (Aleppo pine), *P. mugo* (mountain or

mugo pine), *P. nigra* (European black pine), *P. tabuliformis* (Chinese pine), *P. sylvestris* (Scots pine), *Taxodium distichum* var. *imbricarium* (pond cypress), and *Tsuga canadensis* (Eastern or Canadian hemlock) (Sliwa et al., 2008; Huang et al., 2011; Kaminska and Berniak, 2011; Kaminska et al., 2011

### Known Vectors

At this time, no vectors have been confirmed for 'Ca. *P. pini*'.

### Known Distribution

**Europe:** Croatia, Czech Republic, Germany, Lithuania, Poland, and Spain (Schneider et al., 2005; Sliwa et al., 2008; Valiunas et al., 2010; Kaminska et al., 2011; Jezic et al., 2012).

**Asia:** China (Huang et al., 2011).

### Pathway

There is currently no known vector for 'Ca. *P. pini*'. However, phytoplasmas can also spread from infected propagative plant material. There are multiple reports of *Abies* sp., *Picea* sp., *Pinus* sp., *Taxodium distichum*/*Taxodium* sp., and *Tsuga* sp., propagative material being imported from countries known to have 'Ca. *P. pini*'. This includes Germany (25 shipments), China (180 shipments), Czech Republic (3 shipments), Poland (1 shipment), and Spain (3 shipments) (PestID, 2013). Based on the units used (g, kg, flask, and plant unit), it is likely that these shipments are composed of seed, cuttings, and/or plants based on the quantity. Phytoplasmas, however, are not known to be seed transmitted.

There have also been numerous shipments of lumber and logs of host species from countries known to have this phytoplasma. All wood products are subject to 7CFR319.40-5 (Logs, lumber, and other unmanufactured wood articles - importation and entry requirements for specified articles), which requires either heat or methyl bromide treatments. Heat and methyl bromide have been shown to have efficacy against phytoplasmas.

There are symptomless hosts, which make identification of this disease at the port of entry unlikely. There have also been many interceptions of plants for propagation from countries known to have 'Ca. *P. pini*' including Germany (13), China (30), Czech Republic (3), and Poland (5) that could harbor the pathogen.

### Potential Distribution within the United States

The United States is home to numerous known 'Ca. *P. pini*' host genera and species. Potential hosts are most prevalent in the western and northeastern United States. While there are several host species present in the United States, the potential of this phytoplasma to spread is very difficult to predict without knowledge of the vectors and their distribution.

## Survey

### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

The CAPS-approved survey method is to collect symptomatic plant tissue by visual survey.

\*For the most up-to-date methods for survey and identification, see Approved Methods on the CAPS Resource and Collaboration Site, at <http://caps.ceris.purdue.edu/>.

## Key Diagnostics

### **CAPS-Approved Method:**

Molecular: Follow instructions in [Phytoplasma sample submission for Cooperative Agricultural Pest Survey \(CAPS\) Program and Farm Bill Goal 1 surveys FY 2014](#).

\*For the most up-to-date methods for survey and identification, see Approved Methods on the CAPS Resource and Collaboration Site, at <http://caps.ceris.purdue.edu/>.

**Literature-Based Methods:** PCR and RFLP analysis has been developed to detect '*Ca. P. pini*' from plant material (Sliwa et al., 2008).

## Easily Confused Pests

At least two other phytoplasmas ('*Candidatus* Phytoplasma asteris' and the X-disease phytoplasma group) are known to infect *Picea* spp. with witches' broom symptoms (Kaminska and Berniak, 2011).

Kaminska et al. (2011) and Sliwa et al. (2008) tested several pines with typical visual symptoms of '*Ca. P. pini*' infection that ended up having no detectable presence of phytoplasma. This research suggests that there may be non-phytoplasma causes of ball-like structures and witches' broom symptoms in pine trees. Additionally, uneven colonization and concentration of phytoplasma within a given plant can make phytoplasma detection and identification more difficult.

## References

- Ahrens, U. and E. Seemuller. 1992.** Detection of DNA of plant pathogenic mycoplasma-like organisms by a polymerase chain reaction that amplifies a sequence of the 16S rRNA gene. *Phytopathology* 82(8): 828-832.
- Andersen, M. T., R. D. Newcomb, L. W. Liefting, and R. E. Beever. 2006.** Phylogenetic analysis of '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma australiense' reveals distinct populations in New Zealand. *Phytopathology* 96: 838-845.
- CABI. 2007.** Crop protection compendium: global module. Commonwealth Agricultural Bureau International, Wallingford, UK.  
<http://www.cabi.org/compendia/cpc/>.

- CABI. 2011, November 30.** Crop Protection Compendium: *Candidatus* Phytoplasma pini. Wallingford, UK: CAB International. Retrieved April 30, 2012, from <http://www.cabi.org/cpc/?compid=1&dsid=39956&loadmodule=data>.
- Davis R., Y. Zhao, E. L. Dally, I. –M. Lee, R. Jomantiene, and S. M. Douglas. 2013.** '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma pruni', a novel taxon associated with X-disease of stone fruits, *Prunus* spp.: multilocus characterization based on 16S rRNA, *secY*, and ribosomal protein genes. *International Journal of Systematic and Evolutionary Microbiology* 63:766-776.
- Deng S. and C. Hiruki. 1991.** Amplification of 16S rRNA genes from culturable and nonculturable mollicutes. *J Microbiol Methods* 14:53–61.
- Fiarro, G., K. Gibb, and C. Streten. 2005.** Short Taxonomic Guide to the Genus '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma'. *Journal of Plant Pathology* 87(4): 249-263.
- Franklin, J. F. 1990.** *Abies procera* Rehd. noble fir. In: Burns, Russell M.; Honkala, Barbara H., technical coordinators. *Silvics of North America. Volume 1. Conifers. Agric. Handb. 654.* Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service: 80-87.
- Godman, R. M. and K. Lancaster. 1990.** *Tsuga canadensis* (L.) Carr. eastern hemlock. In: Burns, Russell M.; Honkala, Barbara H., technical coordinators. *Silvics of North America. Volume 1. Conifers. Agric. Handb. 654.* Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service: 604-612.
- Gibb, K. S., F. E. Constable, J. R. Moran, and A. C. Padovan. 1999.** Phytoplasmas in Australian grapevines – detection, differentiation and associated diseases. *Vitis* 38(3): 107-114.
- Gitau, C. W., G. M. Gurr, C. F. Dewhurst, M. J. Fletcher, and A. Mitchell. 2009.** Insect pests and insect-vectored diseases of palms. *Australian Journal of Entomology* 48: 328-342.
- Harrison, N. A., D. Gundersen-Rindal, and R. E. Davis. 2011.** Genus I. "*Candidatus* Phytoplasma" gen. nov. *IRPCM*.
- Huang, S., A. K. Tiwari, and G. P. Rao. 2011.** '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma pini' affecting *Taxodium distichum* var. *imbricarium* in China [Abstract]. *Phytopathogenic Mollicutes*, 1(2): 91-94.
- IRPCM Phytoplasma/Spiroplasma Working Team – Phytoplasma Taxonomy Group (IRPCM). 2004.** '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma', a taxon for wall-less, non-helical prokaryotes that colonize plant phloem and insects. *International Journal of Systemic and Evolutionary Microbiology* 54: 1243-1255.
- Jezic, M., I. Poljak, M. Idzajt, and M. Curkovic-Perica. 2012.** First report of '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma pini' in Croatia [Abstract]. In C. Citti et al. (Eds.), *Book of Abstracts of the 19th Congress of the International Organisation for Mycoplasmaology*: 158-159. Retrieved January 2, 2013, from <http://bib.irb.hr/mzos/prikazi-rad?rad=590589>.
- Kamińska, M. and H. Berniak. 2011.** Detection and identification of three '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma' species in *Picea* spp. trees in Poland. *Journal of Phytopathology* 159:796–798.

- Kaminska, M., H. Berniak, and J. Obdrzalek. 2011.** New natural host plants of '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma pini' in Poland and the Czech Republic. *Plant Pathology* 60: 1023-1029.
- Lee, I. M., R. W. Hammond, R. E. Davis, and D. E. Gundersen. 1993.** Universal amplification and analysis of pathogen 16S rDNA for classification and identification of mycoplasma-like organisms. *Phytopathology* 83(8): 834-842.
- Lee, I. M., D. E. Gundersen-Rindal, R. E. Davis, and I. M. Bartoszyk. 1998.** Revised classification scheme of phytoplasmas based on RFLP analyses of 16S rRNA and ribosomal protein gene sequences. *International Journal of Systematic Bacteriology* 48(4): 1153-1169.
- Lee, I. M., R. E. Davis, and D. E. Gundersen-Rindal. 2000.** Phytoplasma: Phytopathogenic Mollicutes. *Ann. Rev. Microbiol.* 54: 221-255.
- McCoy, R. E., A. Caudwell, C. J. Chang, T. A. Chen, L. N. Chykowski, M. T. Cousin, J. L. Dale, G. T. N. de Leeuw, D. A. Golino, K. J. Hackett, B. C. Kirkpatrick, R. Marwitz, H. Petzold, R. C. Sinha, M. Sugiura, R. F. Whitcomb, I. L. Yang, B. M. Zhu, and E. Seemuller. 1989.** Plant diseases associated with mycoplasma-like organisms. In: *The Mycoplasmas*, Vol. 5. Whitcomb, R.F., and Tully, J.G. (ed.). Academic Press, New York.
- Motik, D. 2006.** Forest Products Market and Marketing in Croatia. From [http://www.unece.org/fileadmin/DAM/timber/workshops/2006/Balkan\\_DMotik.pdf](http://www.unece.org/fileadmin/DAM/timber/workshops/2006/Balkan_DMotik.pdf).
- PestID. 2013.** Pest Identification Database (PestID). United States Department of Agriculture, Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service, Plant Protection and Quarantine. Last accessed June 27, 2013. <https://moks14.aphis.usda.gov/agas/login.jsp>.
- Quaglino F., Y. Zhao, P. Casati, D. Bulgari, P. A. Bianco, W. Wei, and R. E. Davis. 2013.** '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma solani', a novel taxon associated with stolbur and bois noir related diseases of plants. *International Journal of Systematic and Evolutionary Microbiology* doi:10.999/ijs.0.044750-0
- Schneider, B., E. Torres, M. P. Martín, M. Schröder, H. –D. Behnke, and E. Seemüller. 2005.** '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma pini', a novel taxon from *Pinus silvestris* and *Pinus halepensis*. *International Journal of Systematic and Evolutionary Microbiology* 55: 303-307. Retrieved January 10, 2008, from <http://ijs.sgmjournals.org/cgi/content/abstract/55/1/303>.
- Seemüller, E., M. Garnier, and B. Schneider. 2002.** Mycoplasmas of plants and insects. in *Molecular Biology and Pathogenicity of Mycoplasmas*, S. Razin and R. Herrmann eds. Kluwer Academic/Plenum Publishers, Dordrecht, Netherlands Pgs. 91-116.
- Sliwa, H., M. Kaminska, S. Korszun, and P. Adler. 2008.** Detection of '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma pini' in *Pinus sylvestris* trees in Poland. *Journal of Phytopathology* 156(2): 88-92.
- Smart, C. D., B. Schneider, C. L. Blomquist, L. J. Guerra, N. A. Harrison, U. Ahrens, K. H. Lorenz, E. Seemuller, and B. C. Kirkpatrick. 1996.** Phytoplasma-specific PCR primers based on sequences of the 16S-23S

- rRNA spacer region. Applied and Environmental Microbiology 62(8): 2988-2993.
- Stange C., D. Prehn, and P. Arce-Johnson. 1998.** Isolation of *Pinus radiata* genomic DNA suitable for RAPD analysis. Plant Mol Biol Rep 16:1–8.
- Sun, X., L. Wang, and Z. Gu. 2005.** A brief overview of China's timber market. Forest Trends: [http://www.forest-trends.org/documents/files/doc\\_144.pdf](http://www.forest-trends.org/documents/files/doc_144.pdf).
- Valiunas, D., R. Jomantiene, A. Ivanauskas, D. Sneideris, J. Staniulis, R. E. Davis. 2010.** A possible threat to the timber industry: '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma pini' in Scots pine (*Pinus sylvestris* L.) in Lithuania, p. 38. In: Current status and perspectives of phytoplasma disease research and management (Bertaccini A., Lavina A., Torres E., Eds).- Sitges, Spain, February 1-2.
- Weintraub, P. G. and L. Beanland. 2006.** Insect vectors of phytoplasmas. Annual Review of Entomology 51: 91-111.
- White, D. T., L. L. Blackall, P. T. Scott, and K. B. Walsh. 1998.** Phylogenetic positions of phytoplasmas associated with dieback, yellow crinkle and mosaic diseases of papaya, and their proposed inclusion in '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma australiense' and a new taxon, '*Candidatus* Phytoplasma australasia'. International Journal of Systematic Bacteriology 48: 941-951.
- Wood Germany. 2013.** The German timber and forestry industry. From <http://en.woodgermany.com/node/104>.